DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 392 630 SE 057 860

TITLE	Looking at Earth from Space: Teacher's Guide with Activities for Earth and Space Science.
INSTITUTION	National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C.
REPORT NO	EP-303
PUB DATE	95
NOTE	357p.
PUB TYPE	Guides - Classroom Use - Teaching Guides (For Teacher) (052)
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC15 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	*Earth Science; Elementary Secondary Education; *Meteorology; *Satellites (Aerospace); Science Activities; Space Sciences

ABSTRACT

The Maryland Pilot Earth Science and Technology Education Network (MAPS-NET) project was sponsored by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) to enrich teacher preparation and classroom learning in the area of Earth system science. This publication includes a teacher's guide that replicates material taught during a graduate-level course of the project and activities developed by the teachers. The publication was developed to provide teachers with a comprehensive approach to using satellite imagery to enhance science education. The teacher's guide is divided into topical chapters and enables teachers to expand their knowledge of the atmosphere, common weather patterns, and remote sensing. Topics include: weather systems and satellite imagery including mid-latitude weather systems; wave motion and the general circulation; cyclonic disturbances and baroclinic instability; clouds; additional common weather patterns; satellite images and the internet; environmental satellites; orbits; and ground station set-up. Activities are listed by suggested grade level and include the following topics: using weather symbols; forecasting the weather; cloud families and identification; classification of cloud types through infrared Automatic Picture Transmission, (APT) imagery; comparison of visible and infrared imagery; cold fronts; to ski or not to ski (imagery as a decision making tool), infrared and visible satellite images; thunderstorms; looping satellite images; hurricanes; intertropical convergence zone; and using weather satellite images to enhance a study of the Chesapeake Bay. A list of resources is also included. (JRH)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

SE

Educational Product

Teachers — Grades 5–12

National Aeronautics and
Space Administration
**Office of Mission to
Planet Earth**

ED 392 630

LOOKING AT EARTH FROM SPACE

2

TEACHER'S GUIDE WITH ACTIVITIES FOR EARTH AND SPACE SCIENCE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)
☒ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it
☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality
- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy

057840

About This Publication

The Maryland Pilot Earth Science and Technology Education Network (MAPS-NET) project was sponsored by NASA to enrich teacher preparation and classroom learning in the area of Earth system science. Teachers who participated in MAPS-NET completed a graduate-level course and developed activities that incorporate satellite imagery and encourage the hands-on study of Earth.

This publication includes the *Teacher's Guide* that replicates much of the material taught during the graduate-level course and *Activities* developed by the teachers. Both are important elements in the series, **Looking at Earth from Space,** developed to provide teachers with a comprehensive approach to using satellite imagery to enhance science education.

The *Teacher's Guide* will enable teachers (and students) to expand their knowledge of the atmosphere, common weather patterns, and remote sensing. Because the Guide is designed to expand teachers' knowledge, it is divided into topical chapters rather than by grade-level. The *Activities* are listed by suggested grade level.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Teacher's Guide Acknowledgments

The *Teacher's Guide* was developed for the MAPS-NET project graduate course, *Atmospheric Observations from Space*, conducted at the University of Maryland, College Park, Department of Meteorology. It is a collaborative effort of NASA's MAPS-NET project; the Department of Meteorology, University of Maryland, College Park; and Maryland precollege teachers, with additional contributions noted. Special thanks to Dr. Gerald Soffen, Director, Goddard Space Flight Center for nurturing this project and series of publications. Special thanks to Ms. Theresa Schwerin, WT Chen & Company, who developed and directed the MAPS-NET concept. Special thanks to Dr. Robert Hudson, Chairman and Professor, Department of Meteorology, University of Maryland, College Park for his commitment to and active involvement in enhancing science education.

Editor, Writer, Illustrator, Ms. Colleen Steele, MAPS-NET Project Manager,
WT Chen & Company

Weather Systems and Satellite Imagery Chapter, and additional material
Mr. William F. Ryan, Department of Meteorology, University of Maryland, College Park

Graphic Design, NASA Printing and Design

We gratefully acknowledge the generous contributions of the following people in preparing this document: Dr. Philip Ardanuy, Research and Data Systems Corporation; Mr. William Bandeen, Hughes STX Corporation; Mr. Kevin Boone, Southern High School; Mr. Louis Caudill, NASA Headquarters; Mr. Austin Conaty, University of Maryland, College Park; Mr. Bill Davis, DuVal High School; Mr. Charles Davis, Dallas Remote Imaging Group; Ms. Claudia Dauksys, WT Chen & Company; Mr. John Entwistle, Damascus High School; Mr. Richard Farrar, Northern High School; Mr. Ron Gird, National Weather Service; Dr. George Huffman, Science Systems and Applications, Inc.; Dr. Nahid Khazenie, NASA Goddard Space Flight Center; Mr. Greg Helms, NASA Goddard Space Flight Center; Ms. Mary Hughes, NOAA NESDIS; Mr. Loren Johnson, Satellite Data Systems, Inc.; Dr. Jack Kaye, NASA Headquarters; Dr. David F. McGinnis, NOAA NESDIS; Captain David Miller, United States Air Force; Mr. Terry Nixon, Maryland Science Center; Ms. Carolyn Ossont, DuVal High School; Ms. Lisa Ostendorf, NASA Headquarters; Ms. EllaJay Parfitt, Southeast Middle School; Mr. Dale Peters, Linganore High School; Dr. Robert Price, NASA Goddard Space Flight Center; Mr. Martin Ruzek, Universities Space Research Association; Mr. Buzz Sellman, Dexter, Michigan; Dr. Owen Thompson, University of Maryland, College Park; Dr. Shelby Tilford, Institute for Global Environmental Strategies; Mr. John Tillery, Fairfax County Public Schools; Dr. Jeff Wallach, Dallas Remote Imaging Group; Ms. Linda Webb, Jarrettsville Elementary School; Mr. Allen White, New Market Middle School; and Mr. Tom Wrublewski, NOAA.

Satellite images courtesy of: Professor G.W.K. Moore, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario; Dr. Mohan K. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign; Space Science and Engineering Center (SSEC), University of Wisconsin, Madison; and Mr. David Tetreault, University of Rhode Island, Kingston, Rhode Island.

December 1994

Activities Acknowledgments

The *Activities* were developed by teachers participating in the Maryland Pilot Earth Science and Technology Education Network (MAPS-NET) project: Mr. Donald Allen, Hancock High School, Hancock, MD; Ms. Mary Ann Bailey, Crossland High School, Temple Hills, MD; Ms. Angeline Black, Kenmoor Middle School, Landover, MD; Mr. Russ Burroughs, Harford Day School, Bel Air, MD; Mr. Stu Chapman, Southampton Middle School, Bel Air, MD; Ms. Sarah Clemmitt, Montgomery Blair High School, Silver Spring, MD; Mr. Bill Davis, DuVal High School, Lanham, MD; Mr. Edward Earle, Norwood School, Bethesda, MD; Mr. John Entwistle, Damascus High School, Damascus, MD; Ms. Gayle Farrar, Southern Middle School, Oakland, MD; Ms. Renee Henderson, Forestville High School, Forestville, MD; Mr. Onyema Isigwe, Dunbar High School, Washington, DC; Ms. Eileen Killoran, Glenelg Country Day School, Glenelg, MD; Mr. Tony Marcino, Margaret Brent Middle School, Helen, MD; Ms. Karen Mattson, Ballenger Creek Middle School, Frederick, MD; Ms. Sue McDonald, Canton Middle School, Baltimore, MD; Mr. Bob Mishev, DuVal High School, Lanham, MD; Ms. Stacey Mounts, Ballenger Creek Middle School, Frederick, MD; Mr. Terrence Nixon, Maryland Science Center, Baltimore, MD; Ms. Carolyn Ossont, DuVal High School, Lanham, MD; Mr. Dale E. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, MD; Mr. Wayne Rinehart, North Hagerstown High School, Hagerstown, MD; Ms. Lonita Robinson, Suitland High School, District Heights, MD; Ms. Sandra Steele, Pikesville High School, Baltimore, MD; Mr. Hans Steffen, DuVal High School, Lanham, MD; Ms. Sushmita Vargo, Washington International School, Washington, DC; Ms. Linda Webb, Jarrettsville Elementary School, Jarrettsville, MD; Mr. John Webber, Aberdeen High School, Aberdeen, MD; Mr. Allen White, New Market Middle School, New Market, MD; Ms. Nancy Wilkerson, Prince George's County Public Schools.

Editor and Illustrator, Colleen Steele, WT Chen & Company

Meteorology Background and Terms, Mr. William Ryan, University of Maryland

Graphic design, NASA Printing and Design

Special thanks to Dr. Gerald Soffen, Director, Office of University Programs, Goddard Space Flight Center for nurturing this series of publications.

We gratefully acknowledge the generous contributions of the following people in preparing this document: Mr. Louis Caudill, NASA Headquarters; Ms. Claudia Dauksys, WT Chen & Company; Dr. Robert Hudson, University of Maryland; Dr. George Huffman, Science Systems and Applications, Inc.; Dr. Jack Kaye, NASA Headquarters; Dr. Nahid Khazenie, NASA Goddard Space Flight Center; Captain David Miller, United States Air Force; Ms. Theresa Schwerin, WT Chen & Company; and Mr. John Tillery, Fairfax Public Schools.

Satellite images courtesy of: Mr. Geoff Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium, Washington, DC; Mr. Charles Davis, Dallas Remote Imaging Group, Hampstead, MD; Mr. Dale Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, MD; Dr. Mohan K. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign, IL.; Space Science and Engineering Center, University of Wisconsin, Madison; and Mr. David Tetreault, University of Rhode Island, Kingston, Rhode Island.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Matrix, National Science Education Standards 1
Looking at Earth from Space 2
NASA's Mission to Planet Earth 3
Sample Uses for Direct Readout Images and Data in Earth Science Study 5
Weather Systems and Satellite Imagery 7
  Introduction to Mid-Latitude Weather Systems 9
    geosynchronous and polar-orbiting satellite views of Earth
    GOES image of wave pattern
    the comma cloud
  Wave Motion and the General Circulation 17
    differential heating of Earth
    Intertropical Convergence Zone
    Ferrel and Hadley cells
    Coriolis effect and general circulation
    baroclinic stability/instability
  Cyclonic Disturbances and Baroclinic Instability 24
    polar front theory
    baroclinic theory
    jet streams, jet streak
    divergence
    upper air information and charts
  Clouds 44
    saturation pressure of an air parcel
    dew point temperature, relative humidity
    advection
    adiabatic assumption
    adiabatic cloud formation
    cloud identification
  Additional Common Weather Patterns 55
    coastal storm development
    Mesoscale Convective Systems
    hurricanes
  Satellite Images and the Internet 61
    obtaining images and data via the internet
    sources of meteorological images
Environmental Satellites 65
Orbits 105
Ground Station Set-up 117
Resources 123
  Bulletin Boards
  Federal Agencies and Programs
  National Aeronautics and Space Administration

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Organizations
Vendors
Weather Forecast Office Locations
Internet

Activities 147

Using the Activities 149

Imagery from Environmental Satellites 150

Activities

Grade Level

4-6 Using Weather Symbols 151

4-6 Forecasting the Weather: Satellite Images & Weather Maps 161

6-8 Cloud Families 171

6-8 Cloud Identification 183

5-8 Classification of Cloud Types Through Infrared APT Imagery 190
Background: Clouds

8 Comparison of Visible and Infrared Imagery
Background: APT Imagery 213

8 Right Down the Line: Cold Fronts 223

8 To Ski or not to Ski (Imagery as a Decision-Making Tool) 229

9 Infrared and Visible Satellite Images
The Electromagnetic Spectrum 233

9 Understanding a Thunderstorm 242

7-12 Animation Creation (Looping Satellite Images) 255

7-12 Wherefore Art Thou, Romeo? (Studying Hurricanes) 257
Background: U.S. Geostationary Environmental Satellites
Background: Hurricanes

9-12 A Cold Front Passes 265

9-12 Will There be a Rain Delay? (Forecasting) 272

9-12 Seasonal Migration of the ITCZ 280
Background: Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ)

9-12 Using Weather Satellite Images to Enhance a Study of the Chesapeake Bay 288

Glossary 309

Bibliography 327

Index 335

SCIENCE CONTENT STANDARDS

This publication responds to the following content standards proposed in the *Draft National Science Education Standards*[1]. Note that this is not a comprehensive list of the standards, and includes only those relevant to this publication.

Content Standards, Grades 5-8

Science as inquiry	Physical science	Life science	Earth and space science	Science and technology	Science in personal and social perspectives	History and nature of science	Unifying concepts and processes
Abilities related to scientific inquiry Understanding about scientific inquiry	Properties and changes of properties in matter Motions and forces Transformations of energy	Populations and ecosystems Diversity and adaptations of organisims	Structure of the Earth system Earth in the solar system	Understanding about science and technology	Populations, resources and environments Natural hazards Risks and benefits Science and technology in society	Science as a human endeavor Nature of science	Order and organization Evidence, models, and explanation Change, constancy, and measurement

Content Standards, Grades 9-12

Science as inquiry	Physical science	Life science	Earth and space science	Science and technology	Science in personal and social perspectives	History and nature of science	Unifying concepts and processes
Abilities related to scientific inquiry Understanding about scientific inquiry	Chemical reactions Forces and motions Interactions of energy and matter	The interdependence of organisms	Energy in the Earth system	Understanding about science and technology	Personal and community health Natural resources Environmental quality Natural and human-induced hazards Science and technology in local, national, and global challenges	Science as a human endeavor Nature of scientific knowledge	Order and organization Evidence, models, and explanation Change, constancy, and measurement

---

Draft *National Science Education Standards*, National Research Council (National Academy Press, November 1994), V-14,15

LOOKING AT EARTH FROM SPACE

The launch of the first environmental satellite by the United States on April 1, 1960, dramatically changed the way we observe Earth and the frequency of those observations. Looking at Earth from space meant that monitoring the atmosphere was transformed into a global capability and perspective. Isolated local information became a component in a worldwide view of the atmosphere. The polar ice caps and the large areas of Earth's surface covered by water could remain inaccessible to ground observers, but that did not preclude information from being obtained by remote sensors.

Sophisticated technology enables and challenges us to:

- observe the changing Earth system,
- identify the changes caused by nature and those effected by humans,
- understand those interactions,
- assess the impact of those changes, and
- eventually, predict change.

Technology provides constantly improving tools for conducting this task, but scientific knowledge, observation, assessment, and prediction are the objectives that drive it forward.

Remote sensing is the ability to acquire information about an object or phenomena by a device that is not in physical contact with that object. Direct readout is the capability to acquire information directly from environmental satellites. Users of ground station equipment can obtain real-time data from environmental satellites. Data can be displayed on a personal-computer screen as images of Earth (similar to those seen on television weather forecasts). This exciting capability is impacting the way many students now study Earth, and providing many with experience using first-hand satellite data.

The practical utilization of technology has real merit in preparing students for future careers. But more importantly, direct readout technology transforms them into explorers. This experience can spark interest in science and math, further understanding of our planet, and provide a clearer perspective of our individual and collective responsibilities as caretakers of Earth. It underscores the importance of international cooperation for observing Earth and developing strategies to preserve it.

This *Teacher's Guide* was developed by the NASA-sponsored Maryland Pilot Earth Science and Technology Education Network (MAPS-NET) project. MAPS-NET, in partnership with the University of Maryland, College Park, Department of Meteorology, implemented a science-based utilization of direct readout to study Earth. The MAPS-NET materials enhance both teacher preparation and existing school curriculum. Participating Maryland precollege teachers developed activities and contributed to both the course content and the development of this *Teacher's Guide*. Their emphasis on curriculum relevancy and classroom implementation was the leading influence in shaping the information presented in this manual.

This Guide was designed for teachers (as background, for training, or for classroom application) and focuses on the study of meteorology, with application to satellite imagery. Segments on topics such as environmental satellites, orbital prediction, and setting-up environmental satellite ground stations are included. Each chapter may have independent classroom application, as well as contributing to a comprehensive understanding of looking at Earth from space.

NASA'S MISSION TO PLANET EARTH

The perspective from space is a unique one, providing a global view that is available in no other way. While scientists of the past were limited by the types of observations available, today's scientists use measurements collected from a number of perspectives. Data from space-based instruments have become an integral tool for studying our global environment. For example, remotely-sensed data indicating ocean temperature helps explain changes in polar ice, ocean vegetation, and global weather patterns. Global ozone measurements from space were the key to discovering the ozone hole. Studies of ocean color provide information about ocean vegetation, pollution, changes in ocean chemistry, and subtle changes in climate.

NASA's Mission to Planet Earth (MTPE) has evolved from international concern about our environment and the need to mount a global effort to study the causes of climate change. This program is dedicated to understanding the Earth system — how the land, water, air, and life interact and how humans are affecting this system. MTPE is pioneering the study of global climate change and is laying the foundation for long-term environmental and climate modeling and prediction. MTPE is focusing on climate changes—those changes that could occur on time scales of decades to centuries—and possibly within our lifetimes.

This effort involves gathering long-term global measurements of the Earth system using spacecraft, aircraft, balloons, and ground-based observations. The gathered data is used to build complex computer models that simulate the processes governing the Earth system. These models will ultimately serve as prediction tools for future global changes, providing information necessary for making informed decisions about the environment.

A number of MTPE satellites are collecting data. Two major research satellites are the Upper Atmospheric Research Satellite (UARS) and the Ocean Topography Experiment (TOPEX/ POSEIDON). UARS, launched September 1991, is investigating the Earth's upper atmosphere and the effects of human activities on stratospheric ozone levels.

Understanding the dynamics of ocean circulation and its role in climate change is the main goal of TOPEX/POSEIDON, a joint effort between NASA and the French Space Agency, launched in August 1992. Oceanographers are using data from TOPEX/ POSEIDON to study climatic phenomenon such as El Niño, a recurring event that brings devastating weather to several global regions, including heavy rains and flooding to California, colder than normal winters across the United States, and severe droughts and dust storms to Australia. Insights gained from the TOPEX/POSEIDON investigation will not only advance our basic science knowledge, but will also aid in mitigation of economic and environmental impacts related to climate.

The centerpiece of MTPE is the Earth Observing System (EOS). EOS will consist of a series of small- to intermediate-sized spacecraft, planned for launch beginning in 1998. These satellites will provide global measurements over an eighteen-year period. Measurements for this period or longer are needed to assess the impact of natural changes (e.g. El Niño events and the solar cycle) versus human-caused changes (e.g., pollution, urbanization). EOS satellites will carry a suite of instruments designed to study global climate change, focusing on the following key research areas:

1. The role of clouds, radiation, water vapor and precipitation.
2. The primary productivity of the oceans, their circulation, and air-sea exchange.
3. The sources and sinks of greenhouse gases and their atmospheric transformations.
4. Changes in land use, land cover, primary productivity, and the water cycle.
5. The role of polar ice sheets and sea level.
6. The coupling of ozone chemistry with climate and the biosphere.
7. The role of volcanoes in climate change.

In addition to EOS and research satellites such as UARS and TOPEX, MTPE will include Earth Probes — discipline-specific satellites with instruments that will gather observations before the launch of the EOS platforms. Earth Probes will include the Tropical Rainfall Measuring Mission (TRMM), Sea-Viewing Wide Field Sensor (SeaWiFS), which will measure ocean vegetation, reflights of the Total Ozone Mapping Spectrometer (TOMS), and a NASA scatterometer designed to measure ocean surface winds (NSCAT).

Data from these missions will be complemented by other datasets. Space Shuttle experiments; Landsat data; data from U.S., European, and Japanese-operated polar and geostationary environmental satellites; and ground-based observations from ships, buoys, and surface instruments all contribute to MTPE.

MTPE Information is not only critical for scientific research, but can also play an important role in science education. Through educational materials such as *Looking at Earth from Space*, NASA encourages teachers to use a space perspective to spark their students' imagination, and capture their interest in and knowledge of Earth system science.

SAMPLE USES FOR DIRECT READOUT IMAGES AND DATA IN EARTH SCIENCE STUDY

Biology and Agriculture

- use sea surface temperature to determine location of various species of fish
- determine probable crop production (cropics)
- land management
- correlate rainfall and vegetation vigor
- study effects of acid rain on vegetation

Geology

- identify land formations, coast lines, mountains, lakes
- determine areas of water sheds
- locate active volcanoes
- monitor Earth resources
- compare water and land temperatures
- identify renewable and non-renewable resources
- study how Earth evolves over time

Meteorology

- produce daily weather reports, monthly averages, annual comparisons
- develop weather forecasts
- track severe storms
- study upper air circulation and jet streams
- measure snow and ice areas
- compare Earth and satellite views of clouds
- develop cloud cover indexes for regions of the Earth
- compare seasonal changes of a specific region
- identify weather fronts

Oceanography

- study sea surface temperatures (currents)
- predict fish harvest based upon sea surface temperatures
- conduct time studies comparing erosion, land formations

WEATHER SYSTEMS AND SATELLITE IMAGERY

This chapter provides a theoretical and technical discussion of how satellite images can be used to understand the most common weather pattern observed in the northern mid-latitudes of Earth.

This chapter was prepared by William F. Ryan, University of Maryland, College Park, Department of Meteorology.

WEATHER SYSTEMS AND SATELLITE IMAGERY

Section 1 Introduction to Mid-Latitude Weather Systems 9
  geosynchronous and polar-orbiting satellite views of Earth
  GOES image of wave pattern
  the comma cloud

Section 2 Wave Motion and the General Circulation 17
  differential heating of Earth
  Intertropical Convergence Zone
  Ferrel and Hadley cells
  Coriolis effect and general circulation
  baroclinic stability/instability

Section 3 Cyclonic Disturbances and Baroclinic Instability 24
  polar front theory
  baroclinic theory
  jet streams, jet streak
  divergence
  upper air information and charts

Section 4 Clouds 44
  saturation pressure of an air parcel
  dew point temperature, relative humidity
  advection
  adiabatic assumption
  adiabatic cloud formation
  cloud identification

Section 5 Additional Common Weather Patterns 55
  coastal storm development
  Mesoscale Convective Systems
  hurricanes

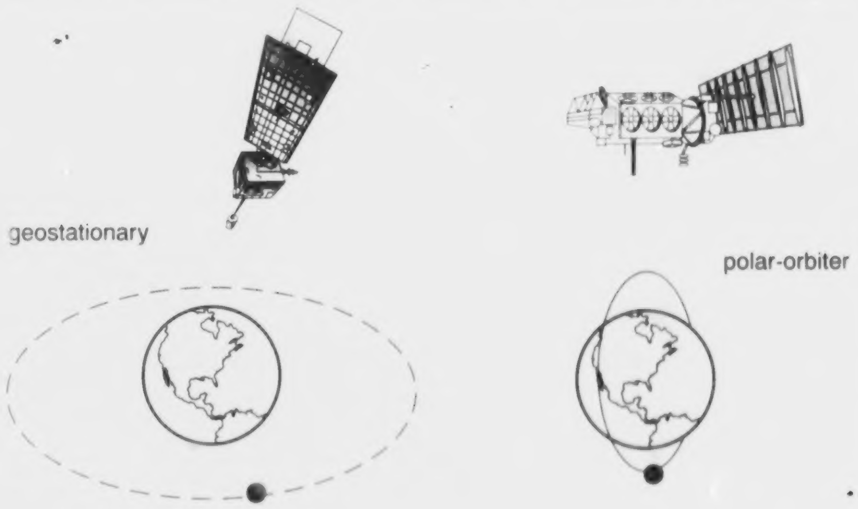
Section 6 Satellite Images and the Internet 61
  obtaining images and data via the internet
  sources of meteorological images

INTRODUCTION TO MID-LATITUDE WEATHER SYSTEMS

Section 1

One of the first applications of data and images supplied by satellites was to improve the understanding and prediction of weather. The object of this chapter is to use satellite images and meteorological concepts to describe the most common weather patterns of a portion of the Earth's atmosphere. In this chapter, we will concentrate on the northern mid-latitudes, the area of the Earth between 30 and 60 degrees north latitude, and the extratropical cyclone which brings the changes in weather that we experience in these latitudes.

In figure 1a (page 10), a full disc image of the Earth taken from the GOES* satellite is shown. The region of the mid-latitudes is distinguished by the wave-like structure of the clouds that are observed. The length, amplitude, and number of these waves have remarkable variation. In addition, the waves evolve over time and space. In figure 2 (page 12), a GOES image of the continental United States shows a close-up of one mid-latitude wave. An even closer view can be obtained from a polar-orbiting satellite.



* Two major types of meteorological satellites

Environmental (also known as meteorological or weather) satellites are unmanned spacecraft that carry a variety of sensors. They scan the Earth and electronically transmit acquired information back to Earth. Two types of meteorological satellite systems provide direct readout service. The satellite systems are geostationary and polar-orbiting, named for their orbit types. The satellite images in this chapter are from U.S. Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellites (GOES), and U.S. polar-orbiting satellites (NOAA-series). See the chapter on satellites for more information.

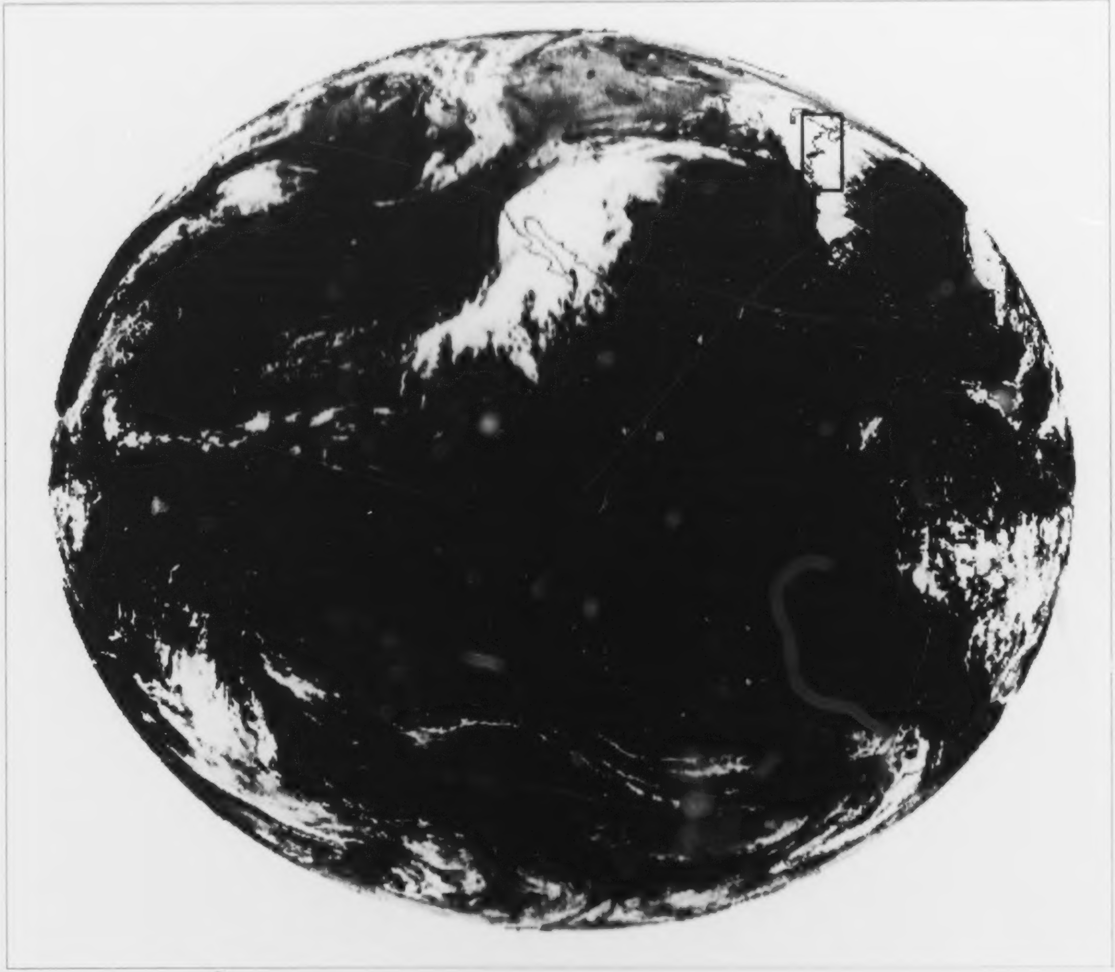


figure 1a. GOES 7 image, December 5, 1994, 1800
image courtesy of SSEC, University of Wisconsin-Madison
rectangle indicates location of polar-orbiter image in figure 1b

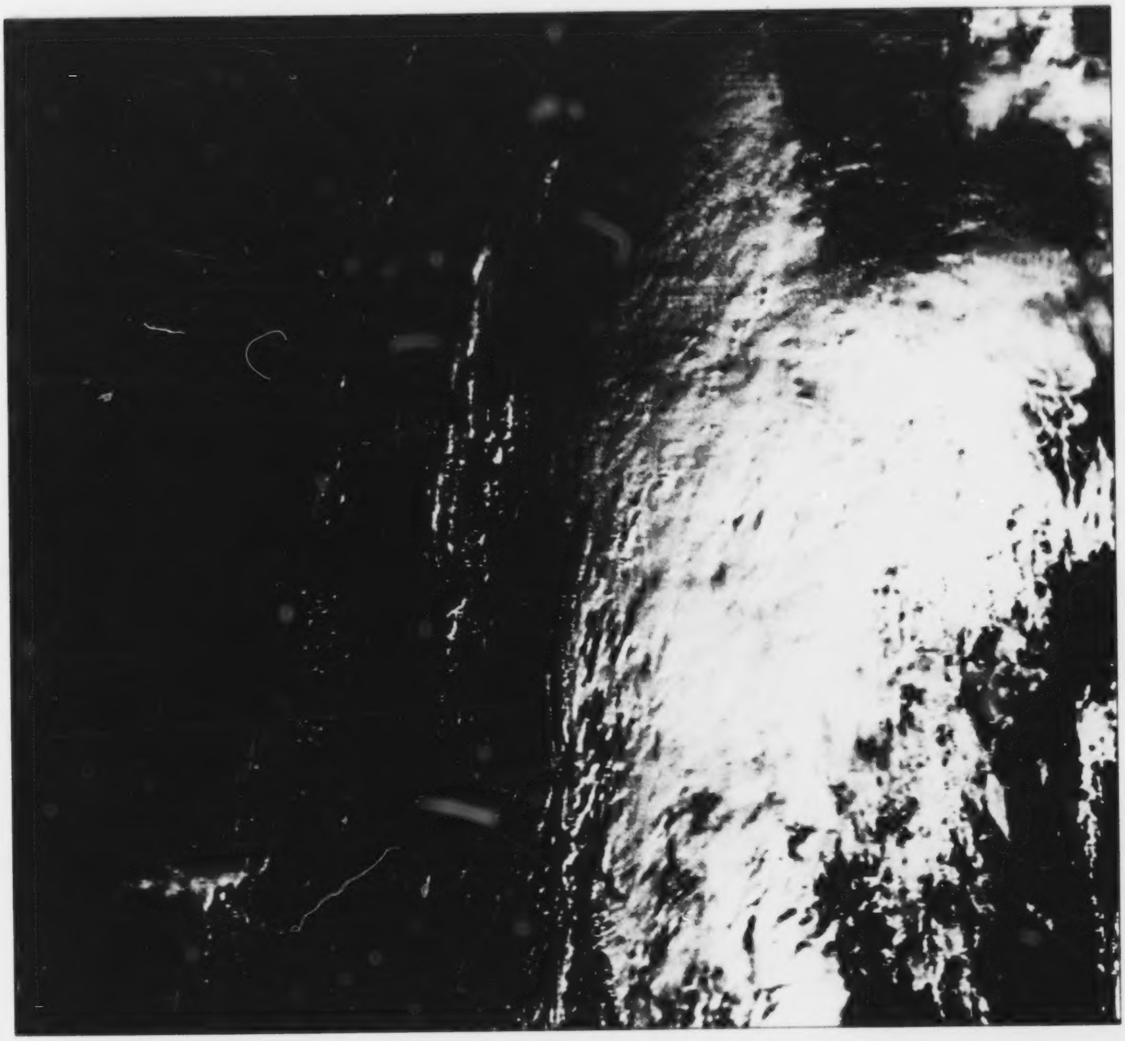


figure 1b. Polar-orbiting satellite image for December 5, 1994.
image courtesy of D. Tetreault, University of Rhode Island

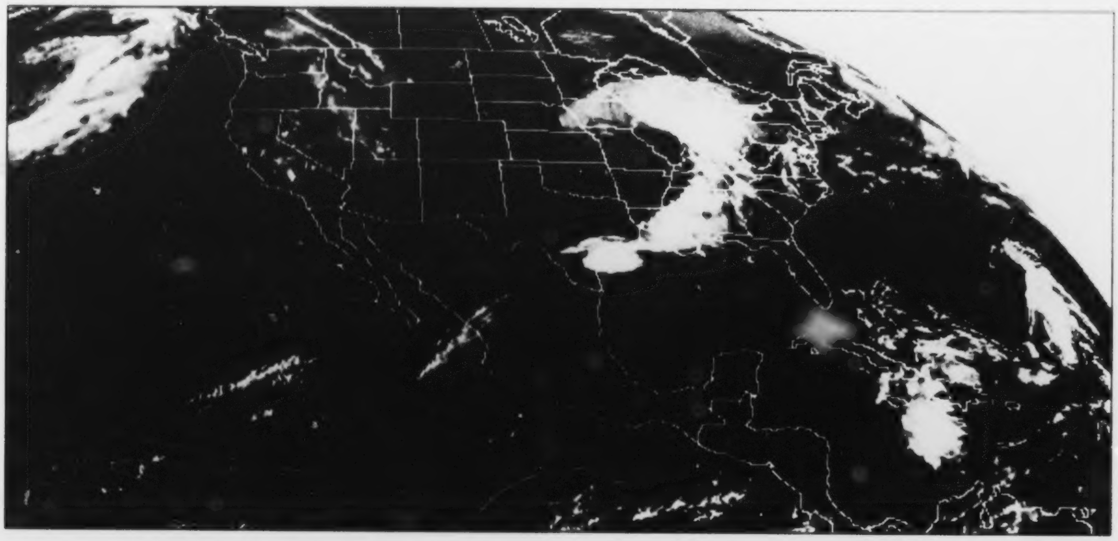


figure 2. GOES image of wave pattern in U.S. April 30, 1700 UTC.
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Because the GOES image has a very wide field of view, it is able to observe the extratropical cyclone in its entirety. The polar orbiter can often observe only a portion of the entire wave, although the resolution of individual clouds is much more precise in the polar-orbiter image. The greater frequency of the GOES image (once per hour) also provides the ability to closely observe the evolution of weather features. GOES images are now readily available on the Internet. Information about obtaining images electronically is included in Section 6 of this Chapter and in the Resources section.

Because wave motion is so important to weather prediction, meteorologists have devised standard terminology for discussing wave structure. An idealized wave is shown in figure 3. Waves tend to be quasi-horizontal. The top/northern-most extension of the wave is a **ridge**, the jagged line in figure 3 is the **ridge axis**. In general terms, weather conditions beneath the ridge axis are dry and storm free. The bottom/southern-most extension of the wave is the **trough**, it has a **trough axis** represented by the dashed line. As will be shown in section 3, the area just ahead (east) of the trough axis is the preferred location for storm development. The area to the west of the trough is usually cool and dry.

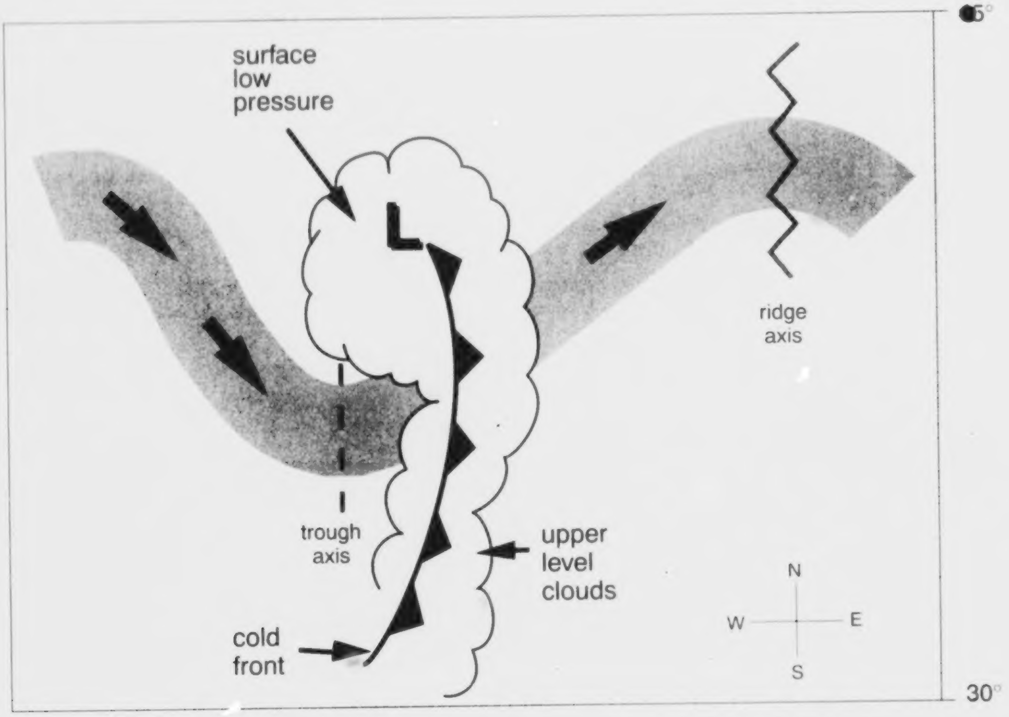


figure 3. common mid-latitude weather pattern: comma cloud

Weather disturbances in the vicinity of atmospheric waves, like ocean waves near the beach, have a life cycle in which they initiate, amplify, break, and then dissipate. As a mid-latitude cyclone moves through its life cycle, certain characteristic cloud shapes develop that can be observed from space. At the mature stage, when the weather associated with the wave is most intense, the satellite signature is the spiral-shaped **comma cloud** and the weather system associated with it is a cyclone or cyclonic disturbance (figure 4a).

There is often confusion associated with the term cyclone. **Cyclone** refers to large-scale closed circulations in the atmosphere whose direction of rotation is counter clockwise in the Northern Hemisphere. Cyclones in the tropics, such as hurricanes, are referred to as tropical cyclones. Cyclones in the upper latitudes are called **extratropical**, or mid-latitude, cyclones. In this chapter, cyclone, or cyclonic disturbance will be used solely to refer to extratropical weather disturbances, which are the characteristic weather developments in the mid-latitudes.

The length of the wave, which often contains a comma cloud as in figure 3, is usually several thousand kilometers. This is generally referred to as the **synoptic** scale. This scale of wave is common in the northern mid-latitudes. There are many important smaller scale events that can very usefully be observed by satellites, these will be discussed later. These smaller-scale events are generally termed **mesoscale** and include both hurricanes and the massive Great Plains thunderstorm systems that can spawn destructive tornadoes. For most of this section, we will look carefully at the larger synoptic scale waves and the extratropical cyclones associated with them.

synoptic scale
Scale of atmospheric motion that covers the range of hundreds of kilometers to several thousand kilometers in the horizontal. An example of synoptic scale meteorological phenomena are extratropical cyclones and high pressure systems.

mesoscale
Scale of atmospheric motion that covers the range from a few kilometers to several hundred kilometers—in the horizontal. Examples of meteorological effects that occur in the mesoscale are squall lines and sea breeze fronts.

If we see a comma cloud as in figure 4a (page 15), what can we say about the weather associated with it? If we watch or listen to broadcast meteorologists, we often hear about approaching cold or warm fronts which are displayed on the screen in blue and red lines (figure 4b, page 16). Commonly used weather symbols are shown in the glossary on page 322. In a general sense, the western edge of the tail of the comma marks the location of the cold front. A warm front is often associated with the head of the comma. Where the two fronts intersect is often the location of the area of lowest surface pressure—which marks the center of the cyclone. Around this center of low pressure, lines of equal pressure or isobars radiate outward. As we will see in more detail later, wind flow is generally parallel to the isobars and therefore circulate counter-clockwise about the center of low pressure.

We can make certain preliminary guesses about the current weather and the changes that will occur in the next few hours based solely on the comma cloud pattern. In this case, the area behind the cold front is relatively cold and dry with winds from the west or northwest. The area ahead of the cold front is usually moist and warm (the **warm sector**) with winds from the south and southwest. Along the frontal boundaries lie cloud bands which are associated with rainy conditions. The clouds along the cold front often contain isolated, vertically-developed clouds with thunderstorms and brief, heavy rain. Along the warm front are layered clouds at various altitudes with little vertical development. Surface conditions are overcast, perhaps with rain.

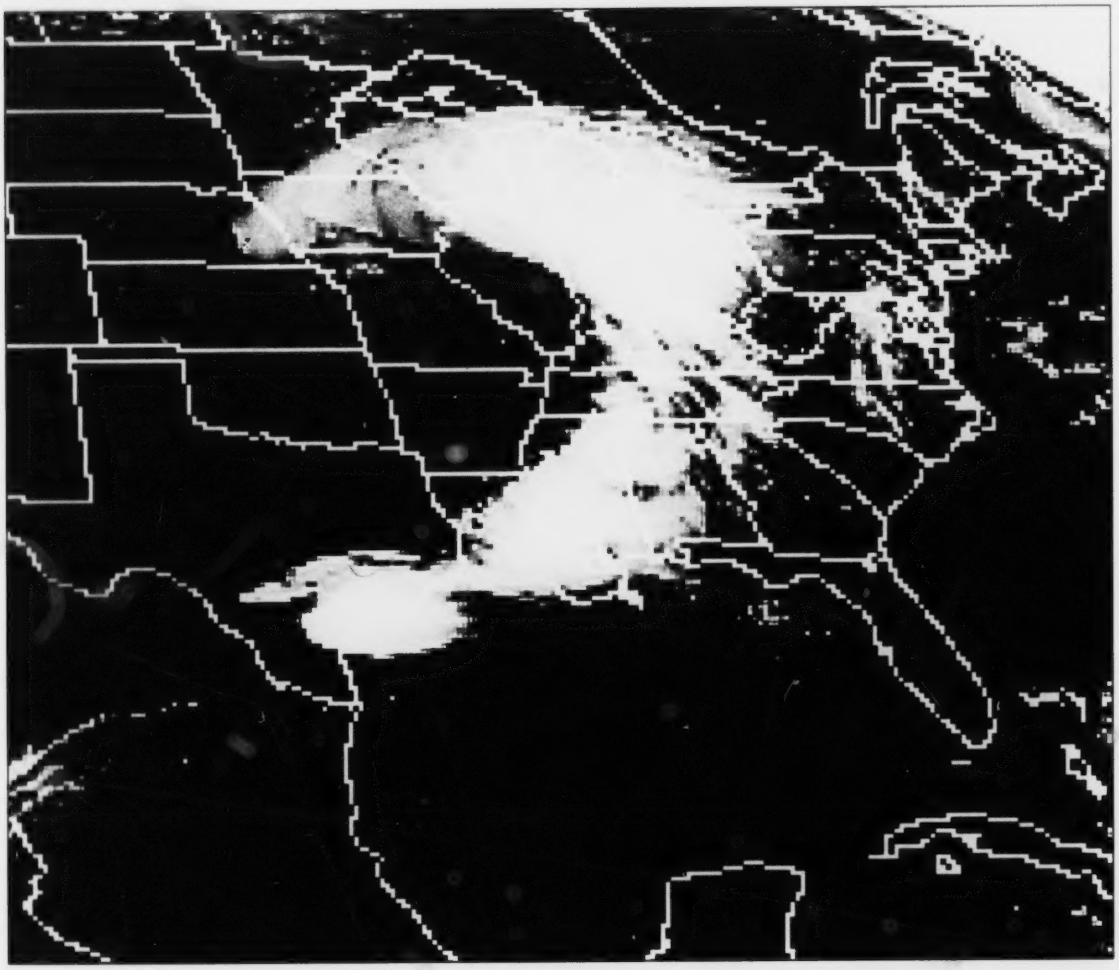


figure 4a. GOES image April 30, 1994 1200 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign
comma cloud system

22

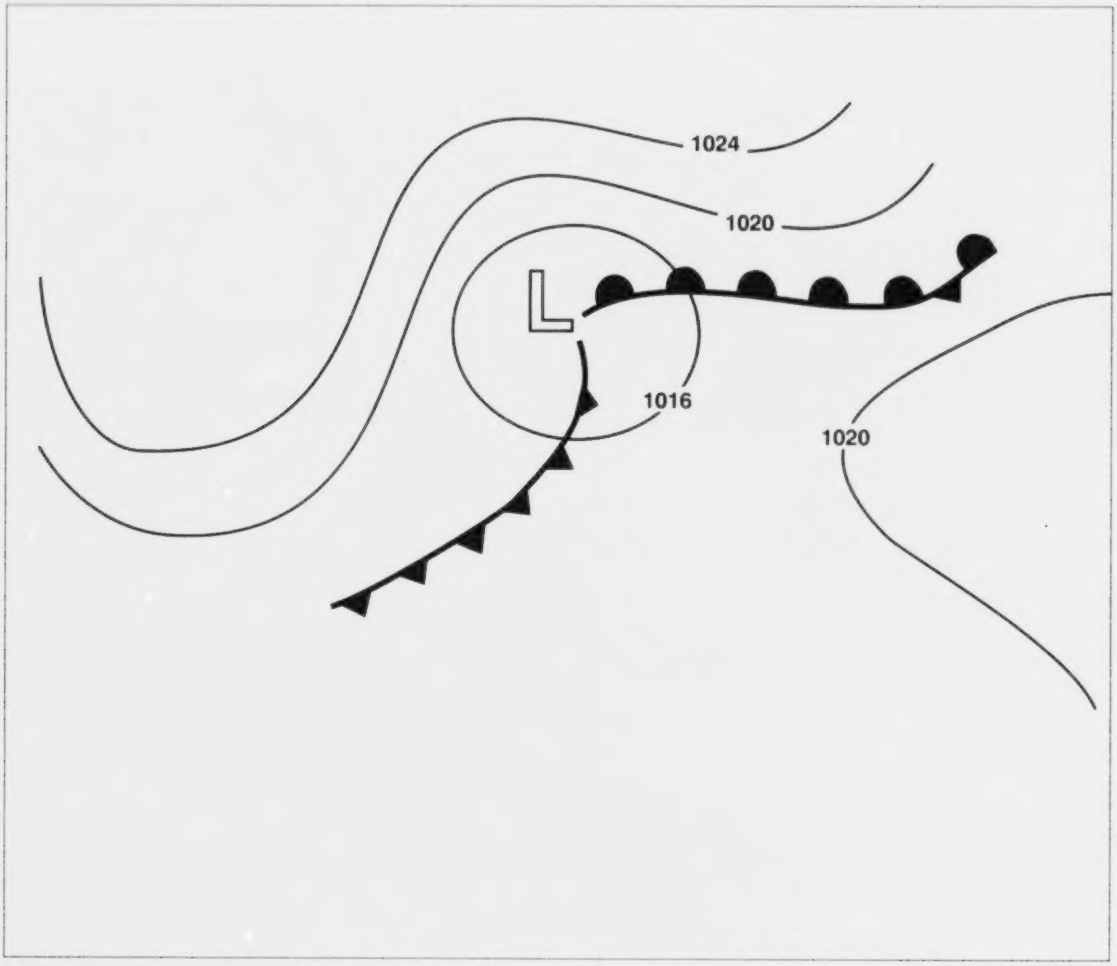


figure 4b. Surface pressure field and fronts
Can be copied onto a transparency and overlaid on figure 4a

In the next sections we will describe in qualitative terms how extratropical cyclones develop and the satellite signatures associated with them. A standard theoretical model will be used to answer questions about the initiation and development of these storms. Keep in mind that there are other weather phenomena that do not fit this model of extra-tropical cyclones yet do result in important weather effects. These phenomena are on a scale that can be readily observed by polar-orbiting satellites and will be discussed in section 5.

WAVE MOTION AND THE GENERAL CIRCULATION

Section 2

The weather patterns that we experience in the northern midlatitudes are driven by the unequal heating of the Earth's surface. The tropical latitudes (23°S - 23°N) receive more energy input than the higher latitudes. Because the amount of heat energy reradiated by Earth back into space is approximately the same anywhere on the globe, the energy imbalance is mainly due to two factors (figure 5).

- First, the Sun's rays are nearly perpendicular to the surface near the equator. As a result, they travel a shorter distance through the dense lower atmosphere and are less likely to be reflected or dissipated.
- Second, the tropical regions receive more of the Sun's energy per unit area due to the curvature of the Earth.

The presence of waves and weather disturbances in our latitudes is a result of the Earth-atmosphere system attempting to restore balance to the system by transporting excess energy from the south to the north.

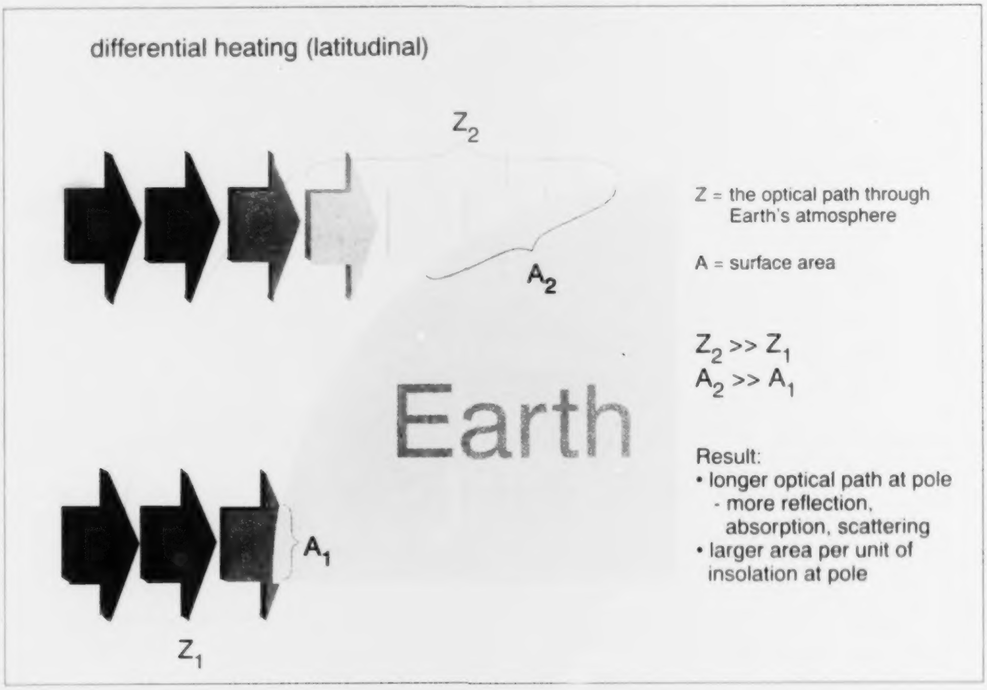

differential heating (latitudinal)
Z_2
A_2
Earth
A_1
Z_1
Z = the optical path through Earth's atmosphere
A = surface area
$Z_2 >> Z_1$
$A_2 >> A_1$
Result:
• longer optical path at pole
- more reflection, absorption, scattering
• larger area per unit of insolation at pole

figure 5.

The general circulation of the atmosphere—the average motion of the winds around the globe—is also driven by the differential heating of the Earth. In the simplest terms, excess heating near the equator causes the air to expand or swell over the equatorial regions. Upward motion associated with this heating is typically concentrated in a relatively narrow band named the **Inter-Tropical Convergence Zone** (ITCZ). The satellite signature of the ITCZ is a band of clouds, usually tall thunderstorms (cumulonimbus), that circles the oceans near the equator (figure 6). The position of the ITCZ varies seasonally, moving northward during the northern summer and moving south during the northern winter. The ITCZ forms as a result of moist air rising under the influence of strong surface heating. Upward motion along the ITCZ is limited to approximately 15 kilometers by the presence of the stratosphere. The stratosphere, which is kept very warm by its abundance of ozone efficiently absorbing solar radiation, acts as a lid on the lowest portion of the atmosphere—the troposphere (figure 7, page 19). For practical purposes, all the weather that we experience occurs in the troposphere .

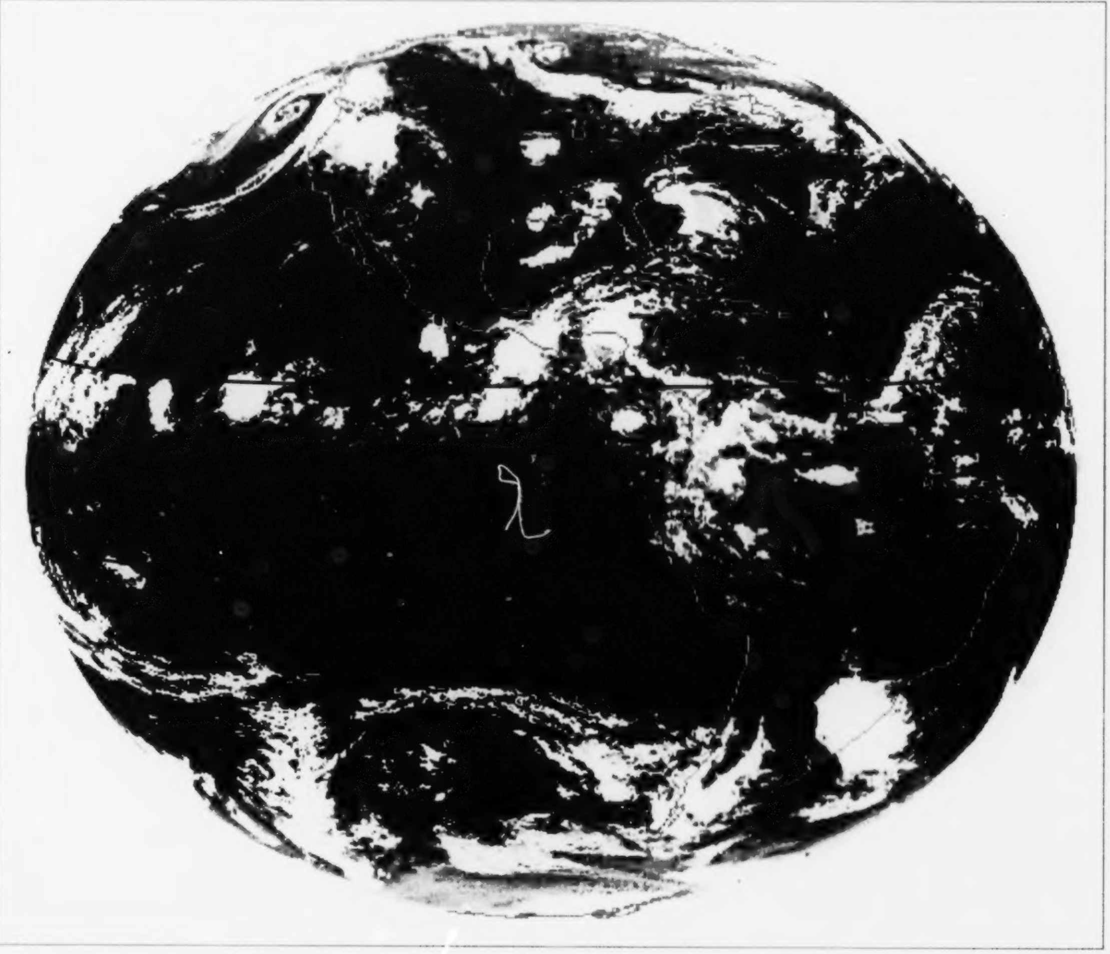


figure 6. ITCZ: Full disc GOES image with 10°N-10°S indicated.
image courtesy of the SSEC: University of Wisconsin-Madison

The air that rises in the vicinity of the ITCZ must spread out, or diverge, at the top of the troposphere. In the simplest case (figure 8b, page 20), we could assume that the Earth has a one-cell circulation in which the air lifted at the ITCZ travels north until it reaches the cold polar regions and then sinks. This would be a direct way to restore the system to balance. However, due to complex effects, the circulation associated with the differential heating of the atmosphere is not a simple one-cell circulation from equator to pole. Instead, a more complex multi-cell structure acts to transport heat energy from the equator to the poles.

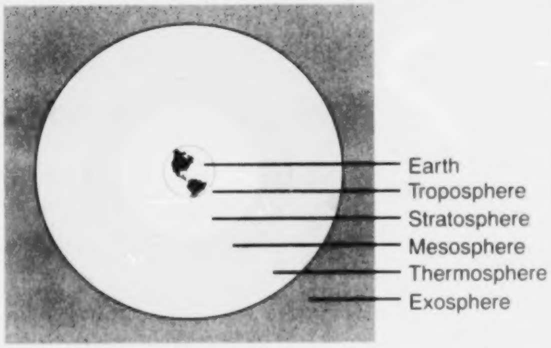
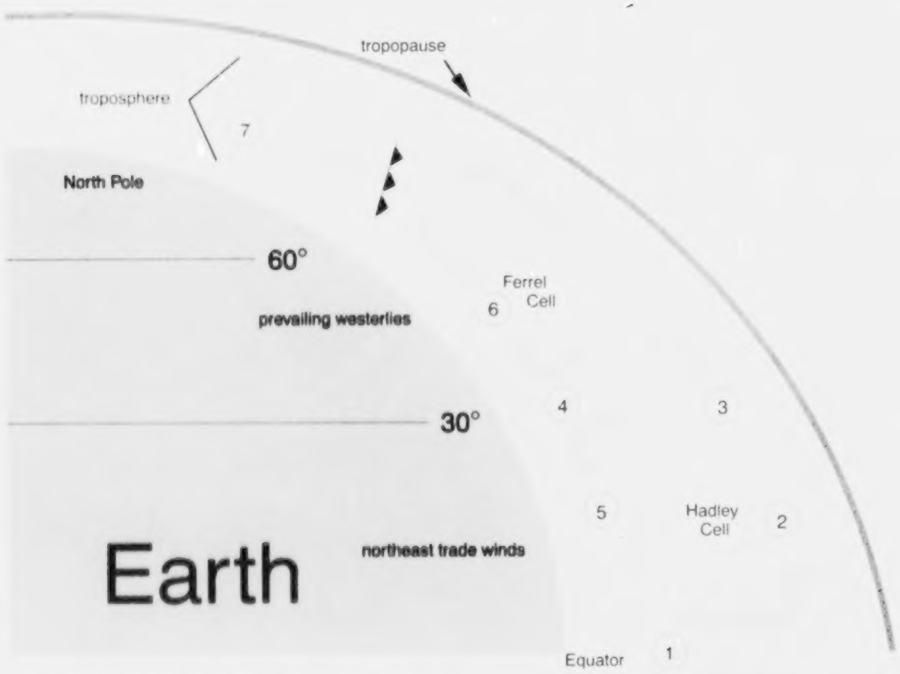

Earth
Troposphere
Stratosphere
Mesosphere
Thermosphere
Exosphere

figure 7.


tropopause
troposphere
7
North Pole
60°
Ferrel
Cell
6
prevailing westerlies
30°
4
3
5
Hadley
Cell
2
Earth
northeast trade winds
Equator
1

How is energy transported poleward?

Simplified View of General Circulation

The rising air near the ITCZ 1 diverges at the top of the troposphere and some portion travels north 2 . As the air moves north it radiates energy into space and cools. As it cools it becomes more dense and sinks 3 . The area of sinking motion, or subsidence, occurs near 30 N. A region with strong subsidence is typically very clear and warm with light winds. The subsiding air reaches the surface and branches outward 4 with the northern branch traveling north 6 and the southern branch traveling south to complete Hadley cell circulation 5 . The northern branch collides with cold, dense polar air moving south 7 . This area, marked by the cold front symbol (▲▲▲) is often the location of frontal zones and cyclonic disturbances.

figure 8a. Simplified View of General Circulation

In figure 8a (page 19), a simplified description of the general circulation of the atmosphere in the Northern Hemisphere is given. The area of interest for this section is the northern latitudes where the northward branch of the Ferrel cell (point 6) interacts with polar air moving south (point 7). Instabilities associated with the coexistence of these warm and cold air masses are responsible for the wave motion that is characteristic of the weather in mid-latitudes. The general circulation shown in figure 8a has several distinct circulation regions, or cells. The horizontal air motion associated with these cells, however, is not directly north-to-south **(meridional flow)** because the air is flowing over a rotating sphere (see figure 8b).

Ferrel and Hadley cells

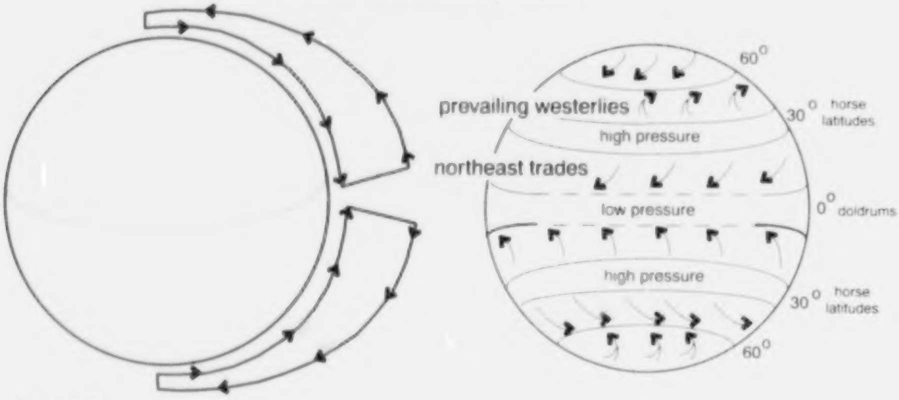


figure 8b

Hadley cell
Single-cell model of circulation that assumes Earth is uniformly covered with water, that the Sun is always directly over the equator, and that the Earth does not rotate. Circulation consists of a closed loop with rising air over the equator and sinking air over the poles. Named after 18th century meteorologist, George Hadley.

Ferrel cell
Each hemisphere of the rotating Earth has three cells to redistribute energy. The middle cell, named for American meteorologist William Ferrel, is completed when surface air from the horse latitudes flows poleward toward the polar front.

Surface high pressure is located at the poles and near 30° latitude, low pressure exists over the equator and 60° latitude.

Because the Earth is rotating, our point of view about local motions—our frame of reference—is rotating as well (figure 9, page 21). Although this motion is imperceptible to us, if we observe Earth from a vantage point in space, the Earth rotates beneath us from right to left (counterclockwise). As an example of the effect of the Earth's rotation on relative motion, figure 9 shows a baseball (or parcel of air) moving northward at high speed from point A to B. If the length of the trip is long enough, the Earth will rotate under the baseball (or parcel of air). Although the baseball continues moving north relative to our geostationary point of view, when the path of the baseball (or air parcel) is traced on the Earth's surface, it appears to have curved to the right. The apparent force which accounts for such curved motion in a rotating frame of reference is called the Coriolis effect. The Coriolis effect accounts for the large scale horizontal winds that are driven by the general circulation of the atmosphere.

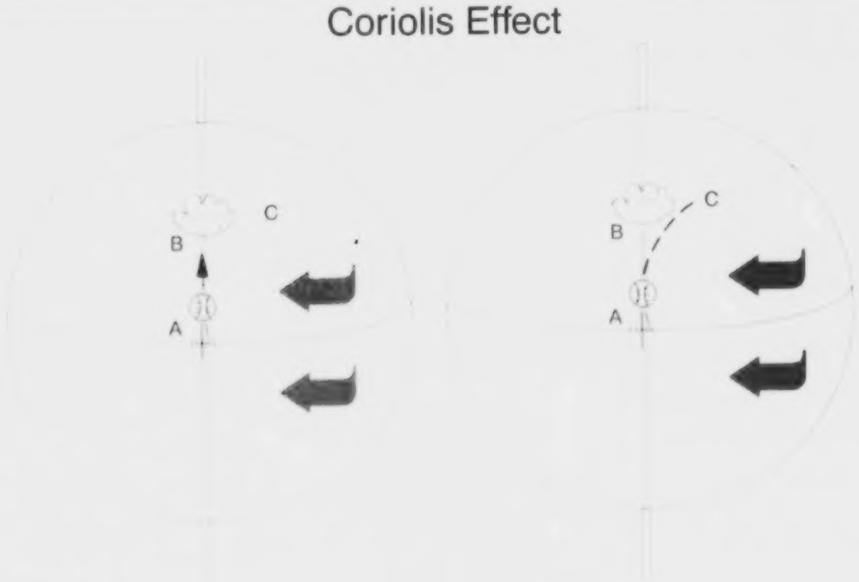


figure 9

The Coriolis effect has several important characteristics.

1. The Coriolis effect is a deflecting force. It acts at right angles to wind direction but does not affect wind speed.
2. The strength of the Coriolis effect is proportional to wind speed.
3. The Coriolis effect deflects winds to the right in the Northern Hemisphere. Thus northerly moving winds are bent eastward and southerly moving winds are bent westward. The reverse is true in the Southern Hemisphere (winds are deflected to the left, meaning northerly moving winds are bent westward and southerly moving winds are bent eastward.)
4. There is no effect at the equator.

The influence of the Coriolis effect on general circulation gives us the prevailing wind regimes that were observed by sailors centuries ago. For example, the winds that move from north to south from the lower latitudes into the ITCZ are deflected to the right (westward) and produce the northeast **trade winds**, observed in the Caribbean and Hawaii (figure 10, page 22). The winds that move south-to-north in the midlatitudes are deflected to the right and form the prevailing westerlies in this area.

Now that we understand the overall circulation patterns of the atmosphere, we can return to the energy balance issue; the transport of heat from the equator to the poles. The southernmost cells of the general circulation (Hadley and Ferrel) are fairly efficient in transferring heat directly from the tropical regions. In the mid-latitudes, the general circulation and the Coriolis effect combine to produce conditions less favorable to energy transfer. The mid-latitude, westerly winds are opposed by easterly winds produced by polar air sliding southward (figure 10). Due to differences in density, the two air masses do not readily mix and the transfer of warm air poleward is retarded. How then is heat transported poleward across the mid-latitudes to restore balance to the system?

The mechanism which transports energy poleward in the mid-latitudes is the cyclonic disturbance. On satellite images, the distinct **comma cloud** pattern associated with these storms indicates the energy transfer. The process by which the transfer of warm air poleward occurs is summarized in qualitative terms in figure 11 (page 23). The process begins with the transport of warm air to the mid-latitudes. As noted above, this air mass does not readily mix with denser polar air. Over time, the west winds in the mid-latitudes continue to absorb heat transported northward and a strong latitudinal **temperature gradient** develops with increasingly warm air bordering on cold polar air. As the gradient becomes progressively stronger, a small disturbance, which is often associated with the movement of smaller scale waves and the structure of the jet stream, begins to amplify. Over time, a large wave develops which sweeps warm air poleward and finally heat is exchanged. The latitudinal temperature gradient decreases and stable conditions return.

Earth's weather patterns are a result of the unequal heating of the Earth's surface. The tropical latitudes receive more energy from the Sun than the higher latitudes.

Averaged over Earth, incoming radiation from the Sun approximately equals outgoing Earth radiation. However, this energy balance is not maintained in all latitudes—the tropics experience a net gain, the polar regions a net loss.

The Earth-atmosphere system attempts to restore balance to the system by transporting excess energy from the equatorial regions to the poles.

Differences in pressure within the atmosphere cause air to move—wind to blow.

General atmospheric circulation represents average air flow around the world. Actual winds at any location may vary considerably from this average.

Wind direction is given as the direction from which the wind is blowing, i.e., a north wind blows from north to south.

Coriolis Effect & General Circulation

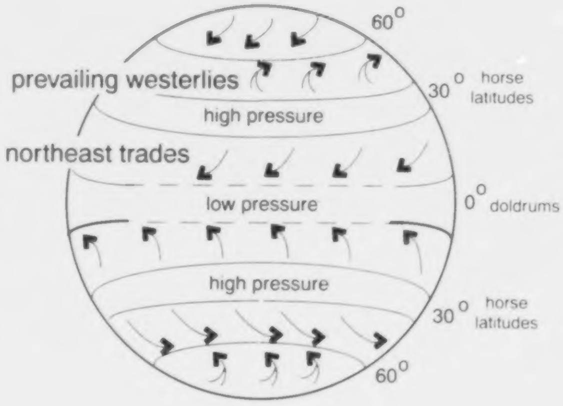
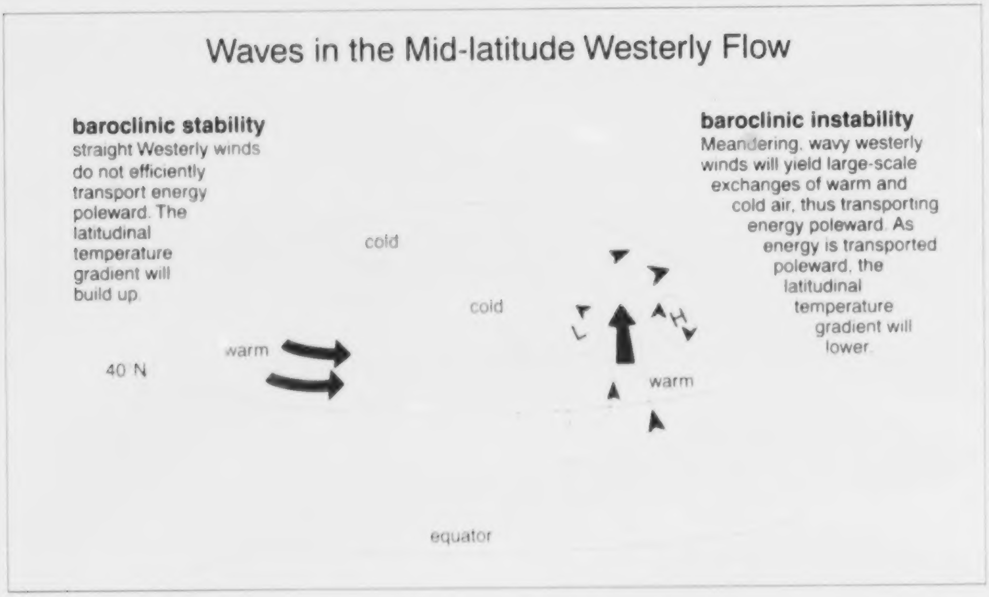


figure 10.


Waves in the Mid-latitude Westerly Flow
cold
cold
warm
40 N
L
H
warm
equator

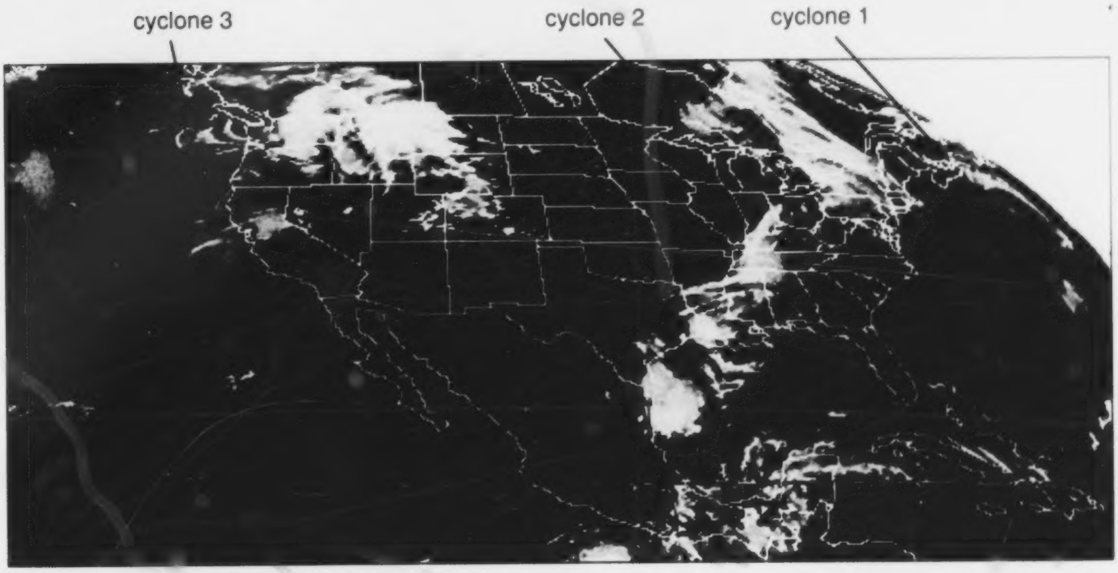
baroclinic stability
straight Westerly winds do not efficiently transport energy poleward. The latitudinal temperature gradient will build up.

baroclinic instability
Meandering, wavy westerly winds will yield large-scale exchanges of warm and cold air, thus transporting energy poleward. As energy is transported poleward, the latitudinal temperature gradient will lower.

figure 11. adapted from the course materials of Dr. Owen Thompson, University of Maryland

The cycle shown in figure 11 is idealized and occurs in many different permutations with a variety of regional effects. At any given time, several examples of the process can be observed on GOES images (figure 12).

figure 12. GOES image, May 15, 1994, containing several cyclones, image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign


cyclone 3
cyclone 2
cyclone 1

CYCLONIC DISTURBANCES AND BAROCLINIC INSTABILITY

Section 3

In this section, the wave motion that is characteristic of the weather in the mid-latitudes is investigated in more detail. A pattern of regular storms in the mid-latitudes has been known for many years (see historical note on page 25). However, the first modern paradigm for describing the development of mid-latitude disturbances did not appear until the time of World War I. At that time, Vilhelm Bjerknes— a noted hydrodynamicist, his son Jacob, and other Norwegian scientists set up a research facility in Bergen, Norway. Because of the war, all sources of weather data were cut off. To prepare local forecasts, the group—later known as the Bergen School, set up a dense observational network across Norway. The data collected from this network was used to develop what has come to be known as the polar front theory. This theory postulated the existence of the now-familiar warm and cold fronts, as well as the three-dimensional motions associated with them. Although many of the concepts associated with the polar front theory had already existed or been hinted at, the scientists of the Bergen School created a complete and coherent three-dimensional picture of the life cycle of extra-tropical cyclones.

The data upon which this theory was based was primarily a network of surface observations, supplemented by limited upper air data. The polar front theory predates many observing systems in use today including the global upper air observation network, radar, and satellites. However, the basic insights contained in this paradigm still form part of the current understanding of extratropical cyclone development and are a useful place to begin to understand what we see on the satellite images.

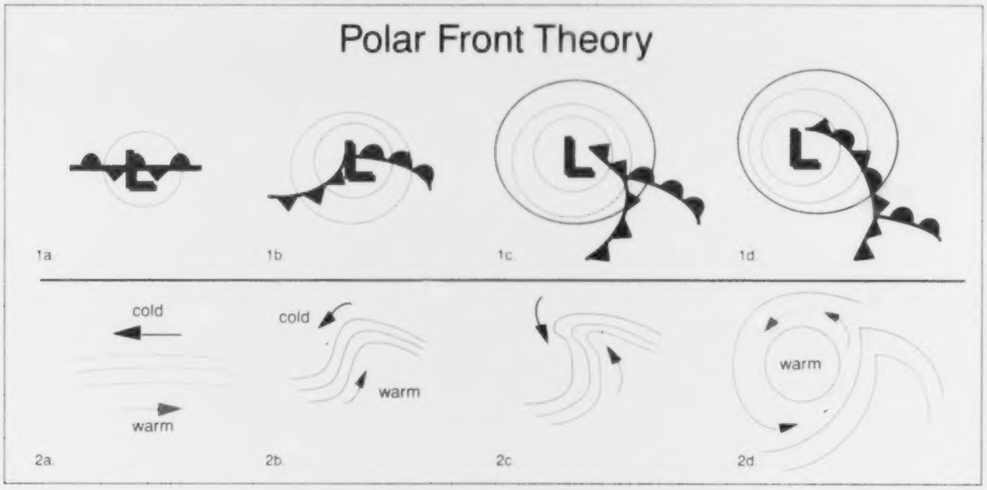


figure 13. panel 1, a-d four-stage pressure and front fields
panel 2, a-d four-stage wind and temperature field

The evolution of the wave as described by the polar front theory is shown in figure 13. The symbols for fronts are shown in the *Glossary* under **weather symbols**. The wave passes through several distinct stages with characteristic surface weather phenomena associated with each stage.

- In stage 1a. and 1b., a stationary polar front exists in a region of locally lower pressure (pressure trough) between two air masses. Cool polar air is to the north and warmer tropical air to the south. This is a local expression of the stable condition shown in figure 11 (page 23) regarding the general circulation.

- A kink or open wave forms in stage b with low pressure at the center of the wave. The inverted V-shape in stage b now contains the familiar cold and warm fronts. The cold front moves faster and eventually catches up to warm front.

- The top of the inverted V becomes closed in stage c. This is the **occlusion stage** of a mature system, the storm is now intense with a distinct comma shaped cloud pattern associated with it.

- As the occlusion progresses in stage d, the main area of warm, moist air becomes isolated from its source. The storm will spin about itself and slowly dissipate. This isolated area of warm air (warm **eddy**) in stage d is an example of the poleward transfer of heat that acts to restore the Earth system to balance.

Historical Note

Advances in the field of meteorology have paralleled general technological advances. The invention of the telegraph in 1845 allowed, for the first time, the rapid communication of weather data and the ability to create timely weather maps. The day-to-day weather motions revealed by these charts provided the ability to provide short-term forecasts. The first regular storm warnings were issued in the Netherlands in 1860. As the network of surface observations increased, and theoretical understanding improved, the first general theory of wave development, the polar front theory, was introduced in the early 20th century (1917–1922).

The shortcoming of weather analysis up to the early 1920's was the dearth of observations of upper air conditions. However, advances in radio technology and associated improvements in storage battery technology made possible the invention of the radio meteorograph (radiosonde). Inexpensive radiosondes were the key to the development, during the period from 1920–1950, of a global network of regular upper air observations. The data from this network stimulated theoretical investigations of the physics of the atmosphere culminating, just after the Second World War, in the work of Jule Charney and Arnt Eliassen. These scientists, working independently, adapted the general equations of hydrodynamics to provide the possibility of a mathematically manageable description of three-dimensional atmospheric motion.

The problem with theoretical investigations of atmospheric motion was the inability to carry out the immense number of calculations involved in solving the equations of motion. The advent of the general purpose (programmable) computer in the early 1950's finally surmounted this problem and allowed rapid and significant advances in meteorology. In fact, the first peacetime use of a multipurpose electronic digital computing machine (the Electronic Numerical Integrator and Computer or ENIAC) was to predict weather. In the following years, advances in semi-conductor technology has made computers more powerful and able to solve more complex forecast problems.

However, any computer forecast is dependent upon the data used as input. While a dense network of observations existed over the land areas of the Northern Hemisphere, many remote areas of the globe—particularly the oceans—were not routinely observed. The satellite era, beginning in the early 1960's, provided the capability for global weather observations. These observations further improved computer forecasts.

In the future, advances in observations, computing technology, and remote sensing will continue to drive advances in forecast meteorology, particularly in the areas of longer range (greater than 6 day) forecasts and local, severe weather forecasts. The information now becoming available from Doppler radars and the new generation of geosynchronous satellites will also improve the theoretical understanding of the atmosphere.

The polar front theory gained general acceptance by World War II because it was able to explain the observed weather associated with mid-latitude disturbances. In figure 14a, vertical cross-sections through the cold and warm fronts are shown. The cloud patterns that are associated with the different regions of the disturbance are a function of the vertical structure of the atmosphere at each location. The cold front is characterized by cool, dense air which burrows under warm, moist air. As we will see in more detail later, rapid lifting and cooling of moist air produces the thunderstorms that frequently accompany frontal passages, and are often large enough to be fully detected by satellite images. Conversely, the warm front consists of warm air rising gradually over slightly cooler air. This slowly rising air produces layered, or stratiform, clouds.

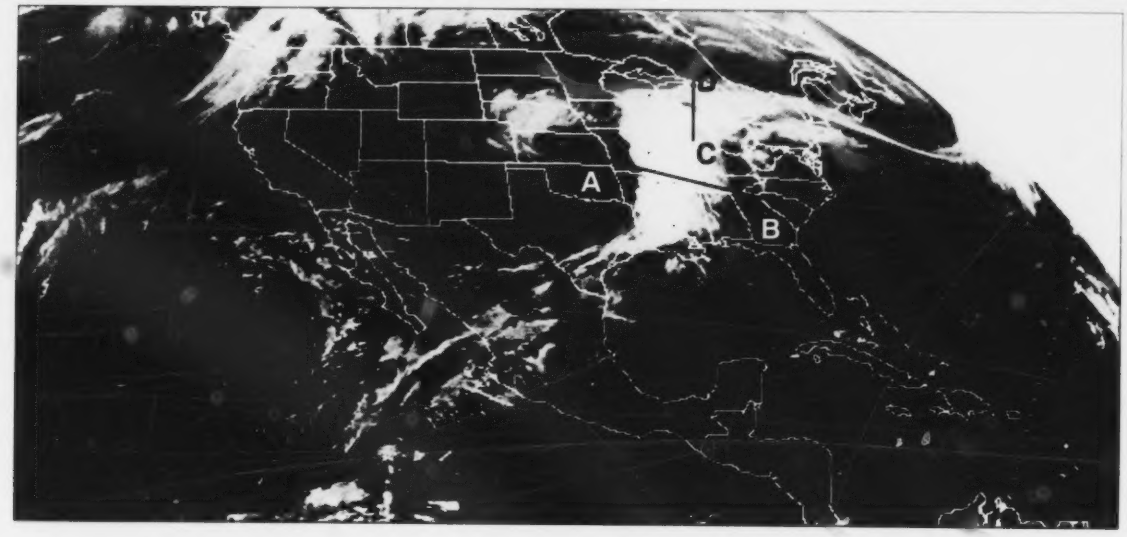


figure 14a. GOES image of cyclone, April 12, 1994 0100 CDT.
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign
Cross sections are A-B (cold front) and C-D (warm front)

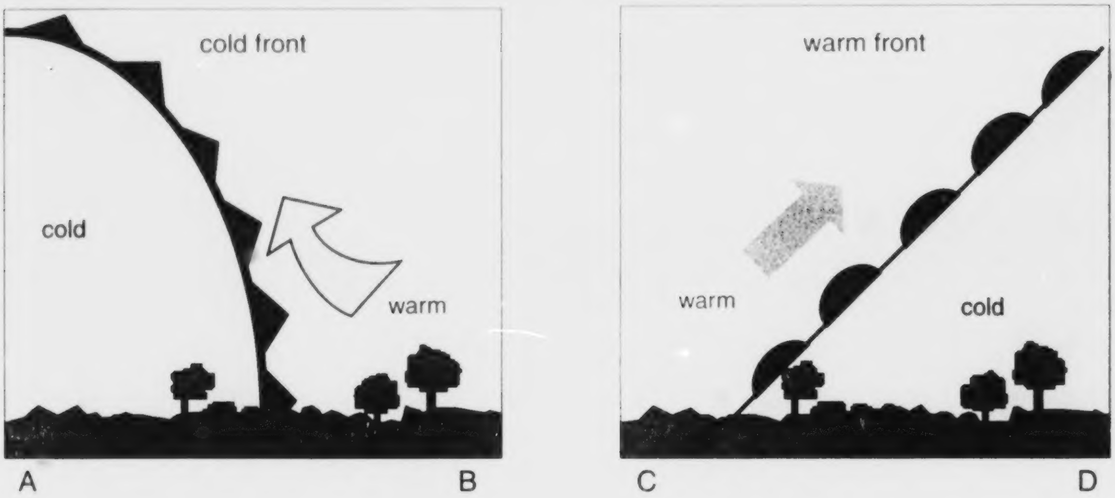


figure 14b. Panels are cross sections of A-B and C-D, in figure 14a

The most striking aspects of the development of extratropical cyclones, as explained by the polar front theory, are the rapid lowering of pressure and the counter-clockwise rotation of winds about the center of low pressure. This distinct air motion is reflected in the comma cloud system that we observe from satellites, and is produced by four basic forces:

1. pressure gradient force (PGF),
2. Coriolis effect,
3. centrifugal force, and
4. friction

In general, the motion of wind is from high pressure to low pressure. The center of the mid-latitude cyclone is an area of low pressure. As a result, air at the surface converges toward that location. The Coriolis effect, as discussed in section 2, deflects the incoming wind to the right (in the Northern Hemisphere), to produce a counterclockwise rotation (figure 15, page 28). If the area of low pressure is roughly circular, the rotation will be counterclockwise.

At distances of greater than 1 kilometer from the surface, the PGF and Coriolis effect are in balance for relatively straight-line flow (in curved flow, the centrifugal force must also be considered). The PGF, a constant force, initially accelerates a parcel of air toward lower pressure (figure 15a). As the parcel's speed increases, the Coriolis effect deflects it to the right in proportion to the speed of the parcel. The parcel eventually reaches a velocity in which balance is achieved and no net force is exerted on the parcel. At this point, there is no further acceleration and the velocity of the parcel is constant. The air flow is parallel to the isobars (lines of equal pressure-15b). This balance of PGF and Coriolis forces is called the **geostrophic wind (Vg) assumption**. Above the Earth's surface, where frictional effects are negligible, this assumption is a valid approximation.

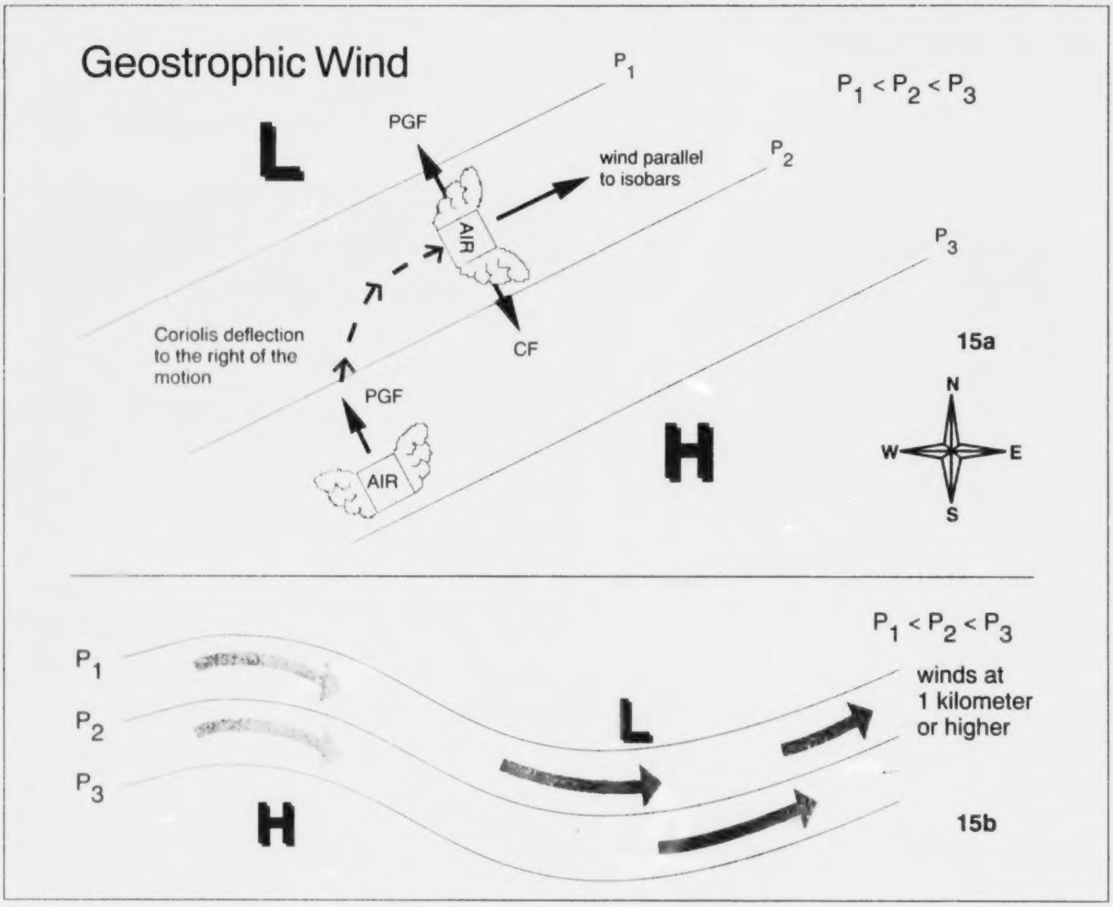
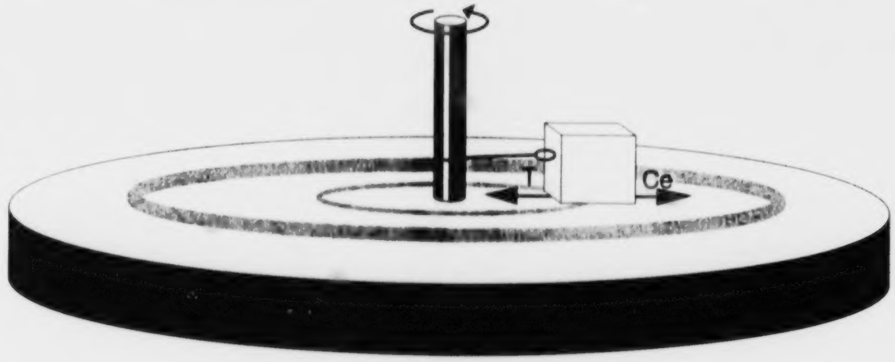

Geostrophic Wind
P1
P1 < P2 < P3
L
PGF
wind parallel to isobars
P2
AIR
P3
Coriolis deflection to the right of the motion
CF
15a
PGF
N
W
E
S
AIR
H
P1 < P2 < P3
P1
winds at 1 kilometer or higher
P2
L
P3
H
15b

figure 15.

In sharply curved flow, the geostrophic assumption is no longer completely valid. It is observed that air flow around curved ridges and troughs is still geostrophic in direction (parallel to lines of equal pressure). But the observed wind speeds are not equal to that predicted by the geostrophic assumption. Wind speed around a low pressure trough is slower than predicted by the geostrophic assumption and winds around a high pressure ridge are stronger than predicted by the geostrophic assumption. To explain this difference in speed but not direction, we must consider centrifugal force. Centrifugal force is, like the Coriolis effect, an apparent force that is used so that Newton's laws can be applied in a rotating frame of reference. An example is shown in figure 16. A block of wood is tied to the center of a rotating platform. To an observer outside the rotating platform, the block moves in a circle with force provided by the tension on the line (T in the figure). However, to an observer on the platform, the block is at rest. To account for the tension on the string, an apparent outward force— called the centrifugal force (Ce)—must be introduced.



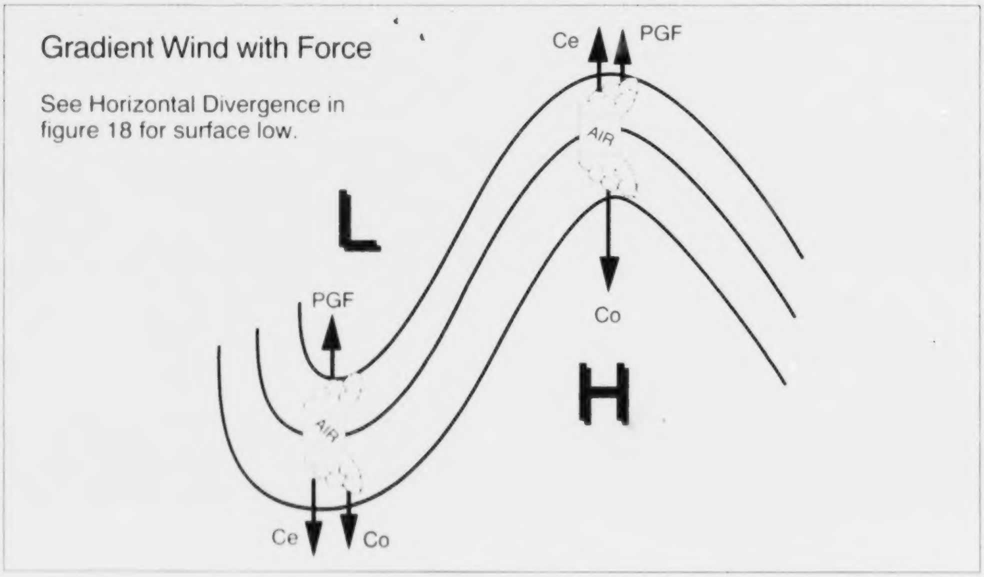
Example of centrifugal force, block of wood and rotating platform

figure 16.

The effect of the centrifugal force on winds that curve around high and low pressure centers is shown in figure 17 (page 30) and provides a clue to the most likely location for the development of cyclonic disturbances. The centrifugal force is directed outward from the center of the curved motion. Near the center of low pressure, the centrifugal force (Ce) opposes the PGF in this region and in order for the air parcel to continue moving parallel to the isobars, the Coriolis effect (Co) must be reduced. Because the Coriolis effect is proportional to wind speed, the speed of the air parcel is less than it would be for straight flow. The flow around a low pressure center is slower than expected or sub-geostrophic. The reverse effect occurs at the top of the ridge. Here the centrifugal force reinforces the PGF and requires a stronger Coriolis effect, and stronger winds, to balance. The flow here is faster than would be expected for straight flow (supergeostrophic). As a result, an air parcel accelerates as it moves from the base of the trough to the top of ridge. This acceleration creates an area of horizontal divergence ahead of (east of) the trough. That is, air is leaving the shaded area (in figure 18, page 30) faster that it enters, so that the mass of air within the shaded area decreases. This reduction in mass is an area of horizontal divergence. Areas of divergence lead to vertical motion and are a key region for development of mid-latitude cyclones (figure 3, page 13).

Near the surface, a different sort of balance occurs. Here the winds do not flow parallel to lines of equal pressure (isobars) but tend to cross the isobars at an angle slightly toward lower pressure (figure 19, page 31). This is a result of friction acting on the parcel of air. Friction decreases velocity so that the Coriolis effect (Co), which is proportional to velocity, decreases. The PGF, which is a constant force, becomes more dominant relative to the Coriolis effect, and air is drawn toward the center of low pressure. This flow across isobars accounts for the tight spiral near the heart of the comma cloud. It also accounts for converging air near the center of the cyclonic disturbance.

The polar front theory was able to account for the wind fields we have just discussed as well as provide a mechanism for the transfer of heat toward the pole. The polar front theory, based on surface observations, had shortcomings which became clearer as new observational techniques were developed. As upper air soundings became more widespread and frequent, it was observed that frontal zones could exist for long periods of time without becoming unstable and that strong cyclonic disturbances could occur without preexisting frontal zones.

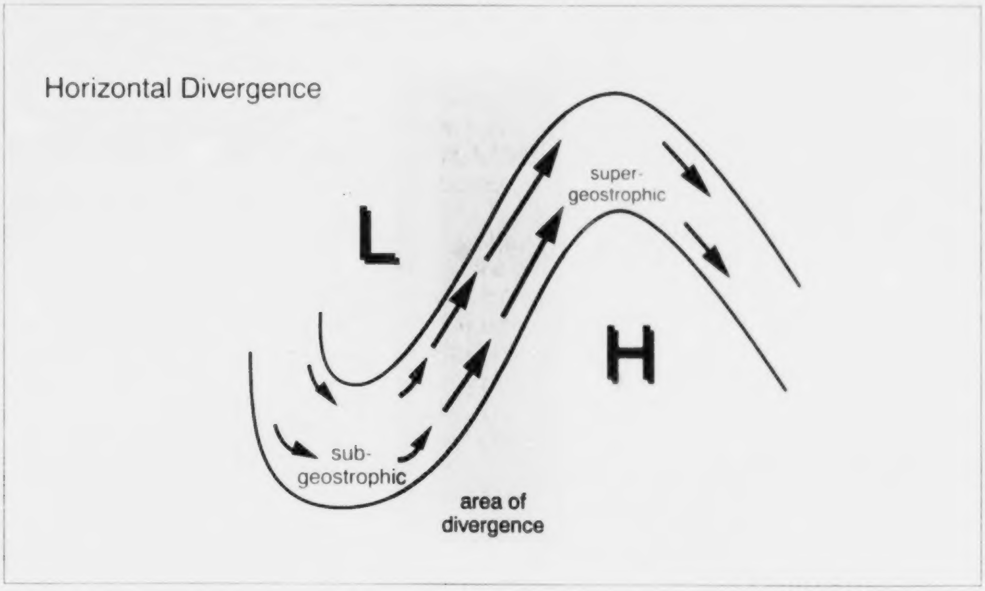

Gradient Wind with Force

See Horizontal Divergence in figure 18 for surface low.

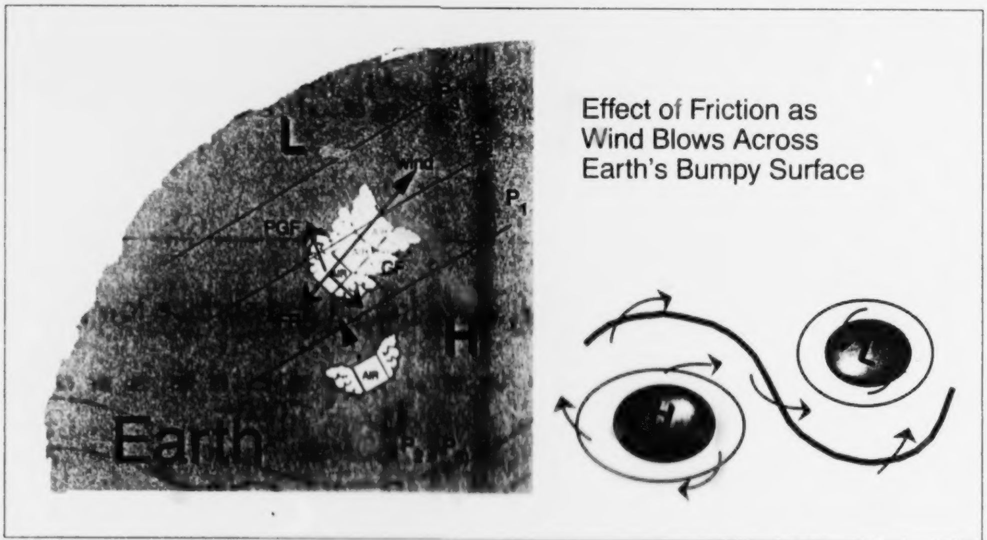
Ce
PGF
AIR
L
PGF
Co
H
AIR
Ce
Co

figure 17 centrifugal force affects wind around high pressure and low pressure differently

figure 18 mid-latitude cyclones tend to develop in the shaded area


Horizontal Divergence

super-geostrophic
L
H
sub-geostrophic
area of divergence



Effect of Friction as
Wind Blows Across
Earth's Bumpy Surface

figure 19. surface winds and friction

The theoretical explanation of the development of cyclones that succeeded the polar front theory was first introduced in the 1940's. This theory, termed the **baroclinic theory,** identified instabilities in the upper level westerlies as the key to cyclone development. The baroclinic theory is better able than the polar front theory to predict when and where mid-latitude cyclones will develop. With the advent of satellite observations in the 1960's, the basic insights of the baroclinic theory were confirmed although, as will be explained in section 5, satellites have also identified large weather-making systems that are not fully explained by baroclinic processes.

While the baroclinic theory is quite complex and cannot be fully described here, we can point to the key factors that result in extra-tropical cyclone development and the manner in which they interact. Through satellite images and surface and upper air charts (all now routinely available on the Internet), these factors can be identified and tracked so that simple, but often accurate, forecasts of cyclone development can be made.

Historical Background

Serial ascents of balloon-borne **meteorographs** in the late 1920's and early 1930's were able to provide clues regarding the upper-air conditions associated with cyclonic disturbances. These showed the vertical extent of the frontal zones - rather than abrupt discontinuities between air masses - and some indication of upper level wave structure. After the Second World War, a **radiosonde** network that spanned the globe was set up which allowed for daily analysis of upper air patterns. This allowed, for the first time, routine observation of the strength and extent of the polar jet stream.

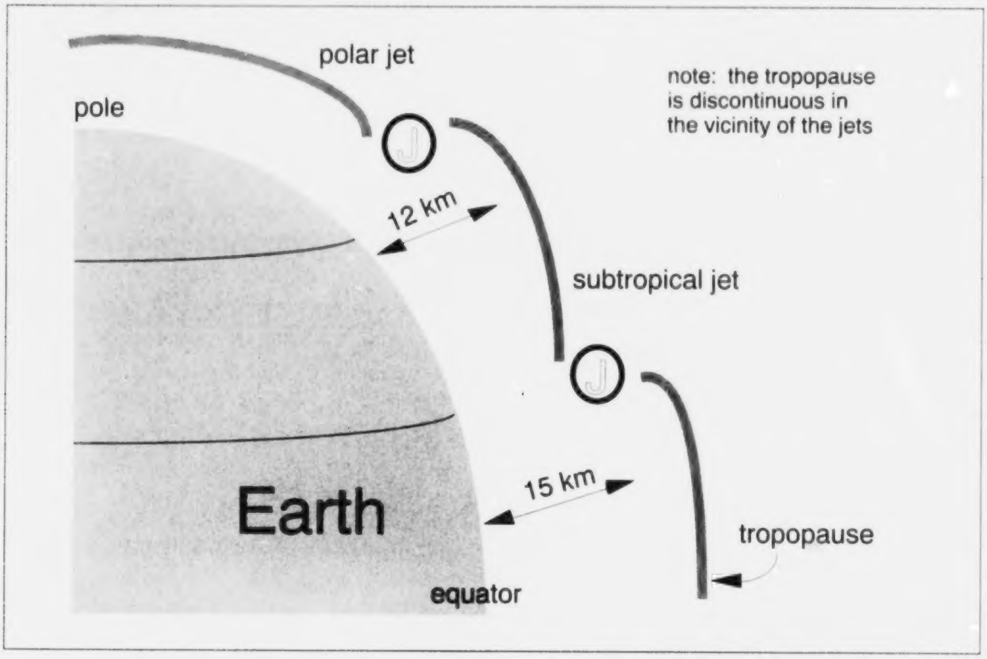
With the advent of routine upper air observations, it was found that cyclonic disturbances tend to occur just ahead (east) of the base of the trough (figure 3) and that these upper air waves—which are quasi-horizontal—amplify along with the developing

The interaction of the short wave trough with the surface low pressure center is shown in figure 20 (page 32). In figure 20a, the initial state is drawn. In this situation, there may or may not be a stationary front present. Often there is only an area with latitudinal temperature gradient present in the region shown by a stationary front in figure 20a. The short wave begins circulating through the longer wave pattern in figure 20b. The short wave is identified by a kink, or constriction, within the overall, large scale, wave. As will be discussed below, upper air charts at 500mb (~ 5km above ground) or 700 mb (~ 3km) will typically show the location of any short wave troughs. In figure 20c, the short wave travels into the area with either a stationary front or latitudinal temperature gradient. At this point, the surface pressure falls quickly and the classic wave form (compare figure 13) is present. The interaction of the short wave with the surface low pressure center causes the large scale wave to amplify rapidly (figure 20d). The short wave trough thus acts to energize the entire wave train and heat transfer, as discussed in section 2.

Large scale instabilities, or waves, in the westerly flow in the mid-latitudes which are triggered by the passage of the mid-tropospheric short wave troughs through a region of strong temperature gradients can be further enhanced by circulations resulting from accelerations in the jet stream at the top of the troposphere.

The jet stream is a semi-continuous belt of strong upper level winds that encircle the globe with wave-like meanders. The jet stream can best be described as a ribbon of high speed winds located at the top of the troposphere (10–15 km). At this height, the tropopause marks the limit of the troposphere and the beginning of the stratosphere. The jet is not continuous but has segments that are thousands of kilometers in length, hundreds of kilometers in width, but only one to five kilometers deep.

figure 21


polar jet
pole
note: the tropopause is discontinuous in the vicinity of the jets
J
12 km
subtropical jet
J
15 km
Earth
tropopause
equator

On the average, there are two jet streams present in the Northern Hemisphere (figure 21, page 33). The polar jet is found in latitudes 30°-60°N. The subtropical jet is located between 20-40° N and has a distinct cloud signature which is evident on satellite images (figure 22). An important characteristic of jet streams is that wind speed is not uniform within the jet. There exists a jet core or streak which contains the maximum winds. The location and movement of the jet **streak** is a key factor in cyclone development.

The jet streak moves along the jet stream in a manner similar to the way a short wave trough moves through the long wave pattern. Jet streaks move slowly relative to the wind parcels that travel along the jet stream. Jet streaks are analogous to constricted areas in a river. A parcel of air traveling along the jet stream will overtake the jet streak and be temporarily accelerated before exiting the region.

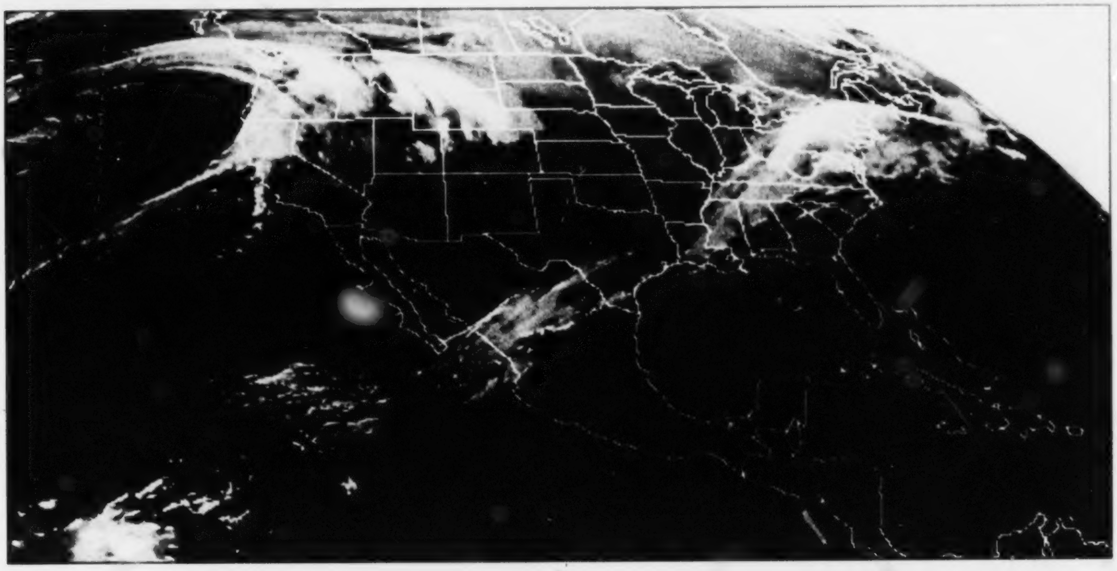


figure 22. GOES image, January 7, 1994, 1100 CST
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

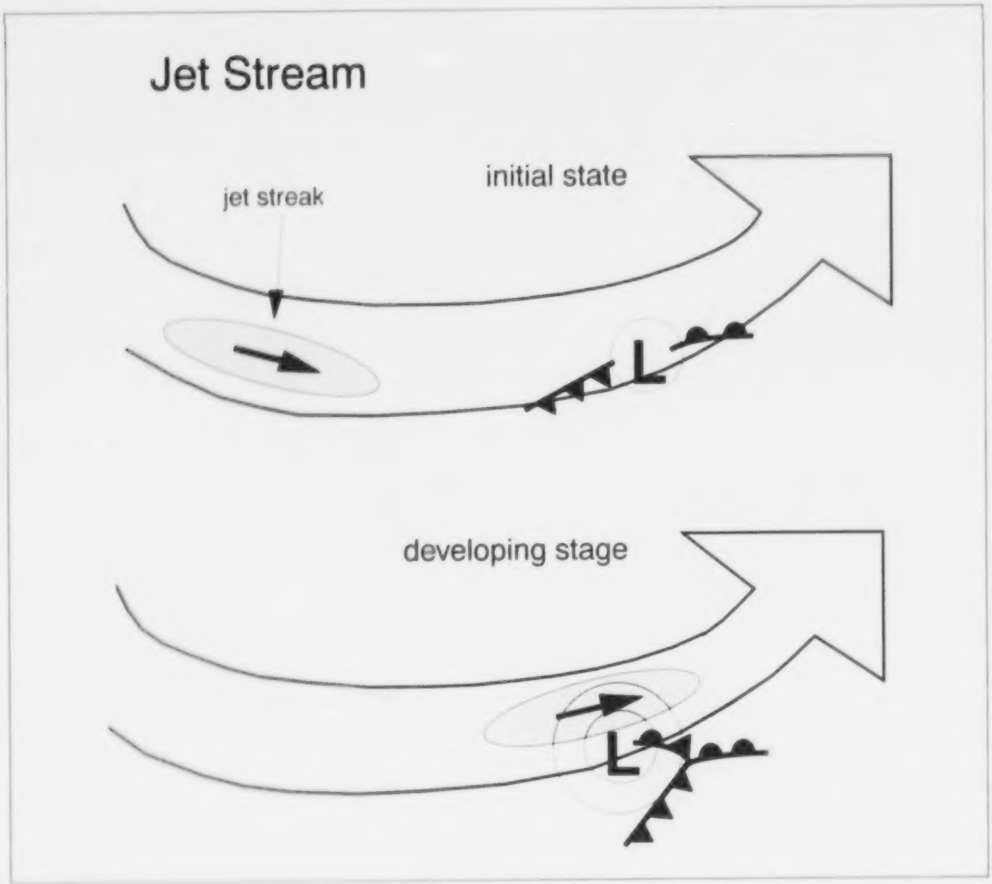


figure 23

When the surface jet streak is near the surface low pressure center, the surface pressure rapidly decreases

The accelerations within the jet streak act to increase upward air motions. Because upward motion is limited at the top of the troposphere, the air then moves outward (or diverges) similar to the tropopause's effect on convection at the ITCZ. The net result of this upward motion in the vicinity of the jet streak is to decrease the mass of air beneath it. This results in lower surface pressure. When the jet streak moves close to a region with a developing surface cyclone, the effect is to further decrease pressure and enhance the cyclonic circulation (figure 23)

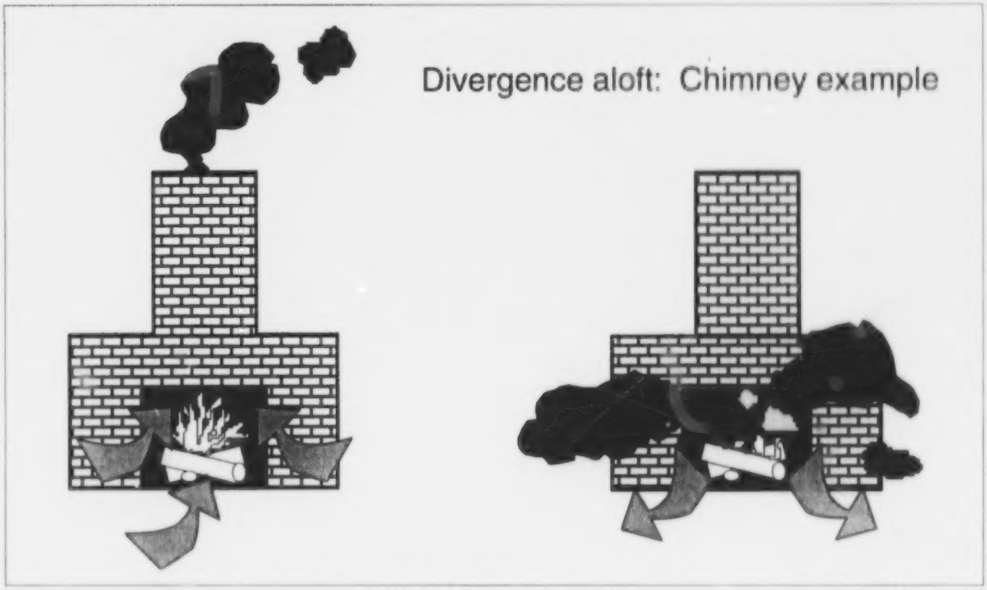


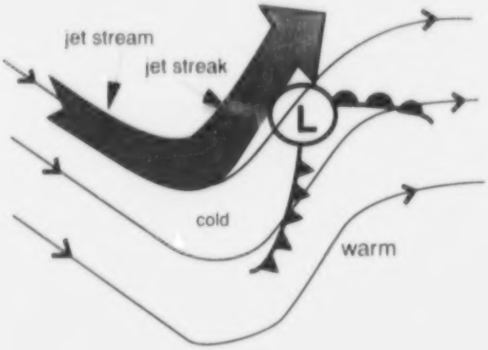
figure 24.

Divergence associated with jet streak circulations can be compared to a chimney. If the chimney flue is open, smoke escapes and more air is drawn in to feed the fire. If the flue is closed, smoke backs up into the fireplace and no new air feeds the fire. As a fire needs an open flue to grow, a deepening low pressure system must contain a deep region of divergence (figure 24).

figure 25.

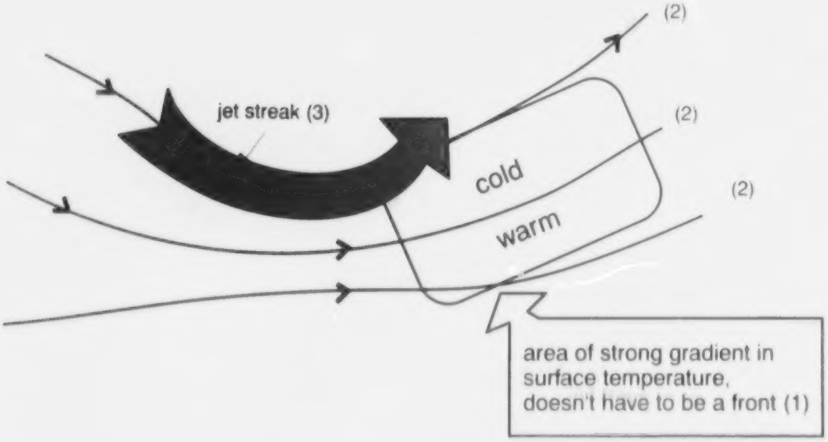
Mature Extratropical Cyclone

1. At surface:
   - cold front with strong temperature gradient
   - low pressure center
2. In mid-troposphere:
   - amplified wave
   - cloud system in comma form
3. At tropopause:
   - jet stream with embedded jet streak
   - cloud free zones
   - north of comma cloud and behind cold front shows position of jet steam



For understanding satellite images and the current and future weather associated with them, the factors discussed above point to information that is helpful to a full analysis. The cloud patterns from a GOES image, or series of GOES images, will show the longer wave pattern with troughs and ridges, as well as any pre-existing cyclones. A surface map will show the existence of low pressure centers, surface cold and warm fronts, as well as any stationary fronts or regions with strong temperature gradients. A chart of the mid-troposphere (500 or 700 mb) will show the location of short wave troughs that may be embedded in the large scale flow. Finally, an upper air chart (200 or 300 mb) will show the location of the jet stream and any jet streaks that are present. With this information, the presence of a mature extratropical system is easily recognized (figure 25) and areas conducive to new cyclone formation can be identified (figure 26).

Possible Cyclone Development


(2)
jet streak (3)
(2)
cold
(2)
warm
area of strong gradient in surface temperature, doesn't have to be a front (1)

1. At surface
   - region of strong temperature gradient (often a stationary front)
2. In mid-troposphere
   - long wave trough just upstream (west) of area of strong surface temperature gradient
   - short wave trough embedded in larger-scale wave
3. At tropopause
   - jet stream advances from west with embedded jet streak

figure 26.

A sequence involving several extratropical cyclones is shown in figures 27 a–f (pages 38–43). In figure a, a mature cyclone, centered in central Quebec, was exiting North America on April 10, 1994. The cold front associated with it is moved into northern New England. The front was fairly weak at this stage in its evolution; as it trailed into the central United States it became nearly stationary. Along the stationary front in Oklahoma, Nebraska and Missouri, a slight curvature was present in the cloud shield. This curvature was the first sign of the development of the next cyclone in the series.

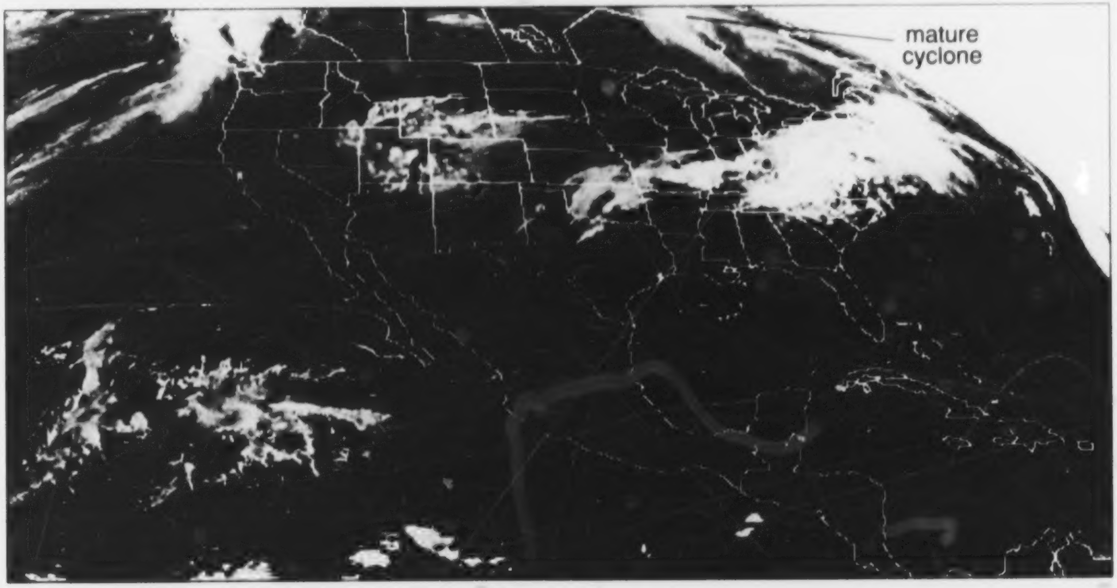


figure 27a. GOES image, April 10, 1994, 1200 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

In figure *b*, a polar-orbiter image from April 11th showed the front passing through the mid-Atlantic states and moving out to sea. Note that the cloud deck along the front is not well-developed, a sign that the front is weakening. To the west, however, a considerable amount of cirrus was present suggesting thunderstorms and significant convective activity.

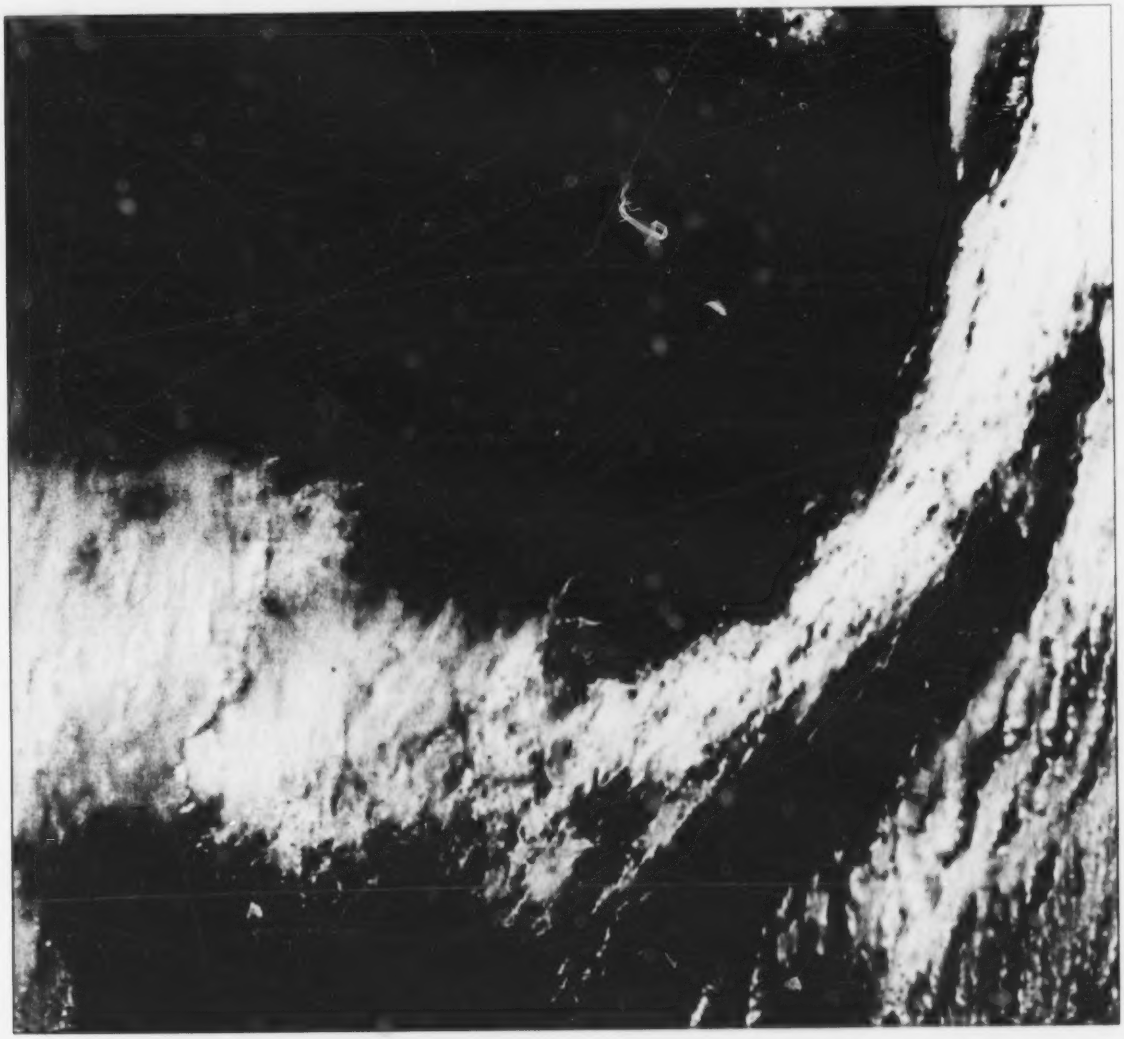


figure 27b. NOAA 10 (AM) image, April 11, 1994
image courtesy of D. Tetreault, University of Rhode Island

45

In figure c, the beginning comma cloud circulation is seen in a GOES IR image from April 11th. This circulation, centered roughly over Kansas, began in the curved area noted the previous day. The cloud shield associated with this circulation is extensive.

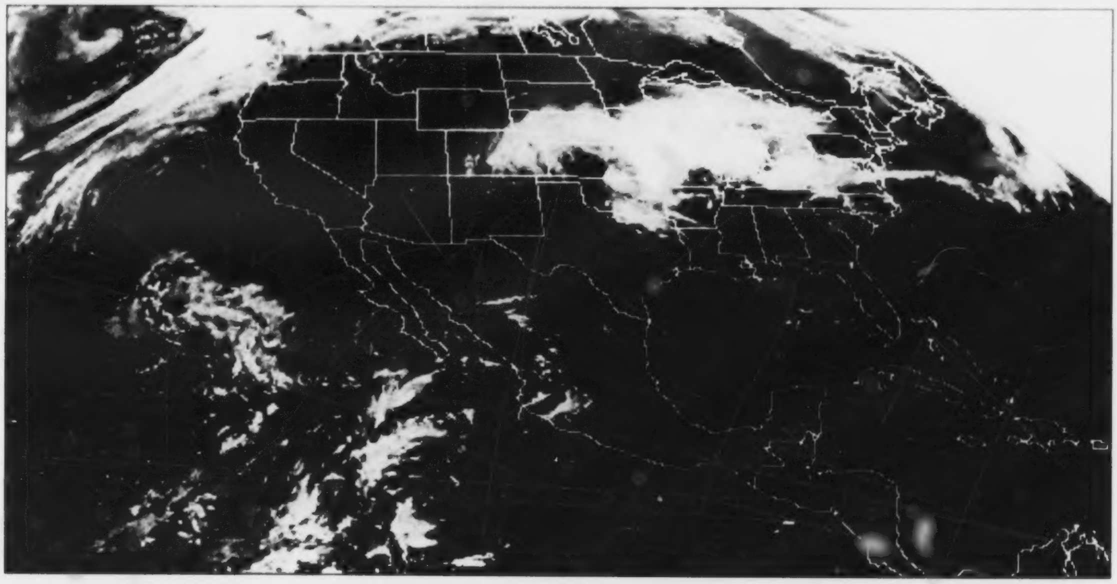


figure 27c. GOES image, April 11, 1994, 0900 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

On the following day, figure *d*, the comma cloud was fully formed. The cloud stretches from Iowa through eastern Texas. The head of the comma is less distinct although it is visible over Kansas and Nebraska.

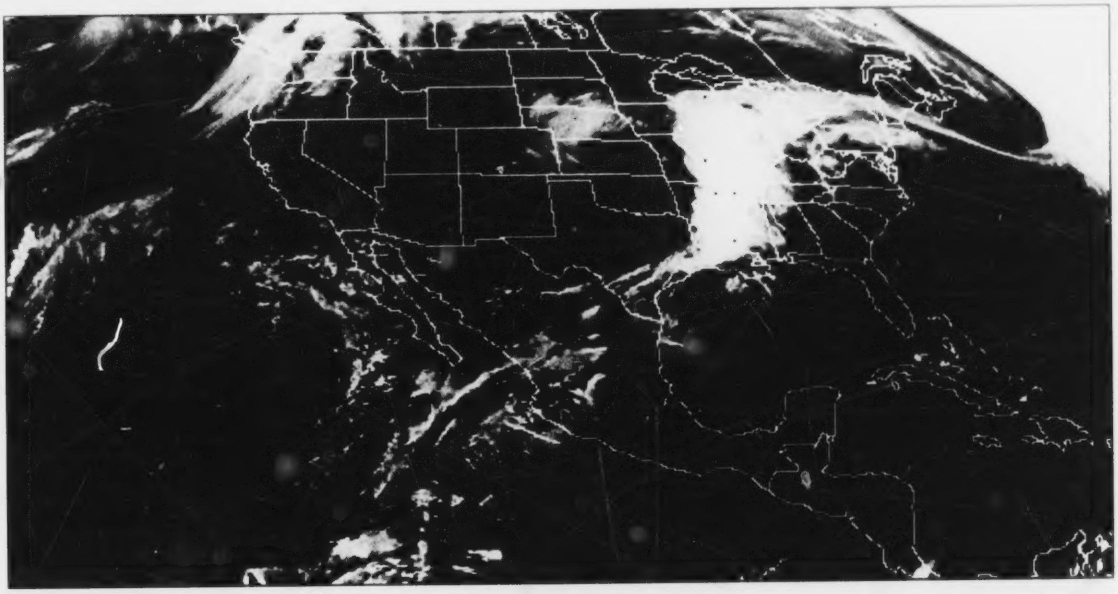


figure 27d. GOES image, April 12, 1994, 1AM CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Two days later, on April 14th, this cyclone followed its predecessor and moved into the Atlantic Ocean. The polar orbiter image (figure *e*) shows the location of the front. Note that the cloud features are better resolved (sharper, more detailed) in the polar-orbiter images than in the corresponding GOES image in figure *27f*. Images from the newest GOES satellites will be higher resolution and will provide more detailed images. See the *Satellites* chapter for more information.

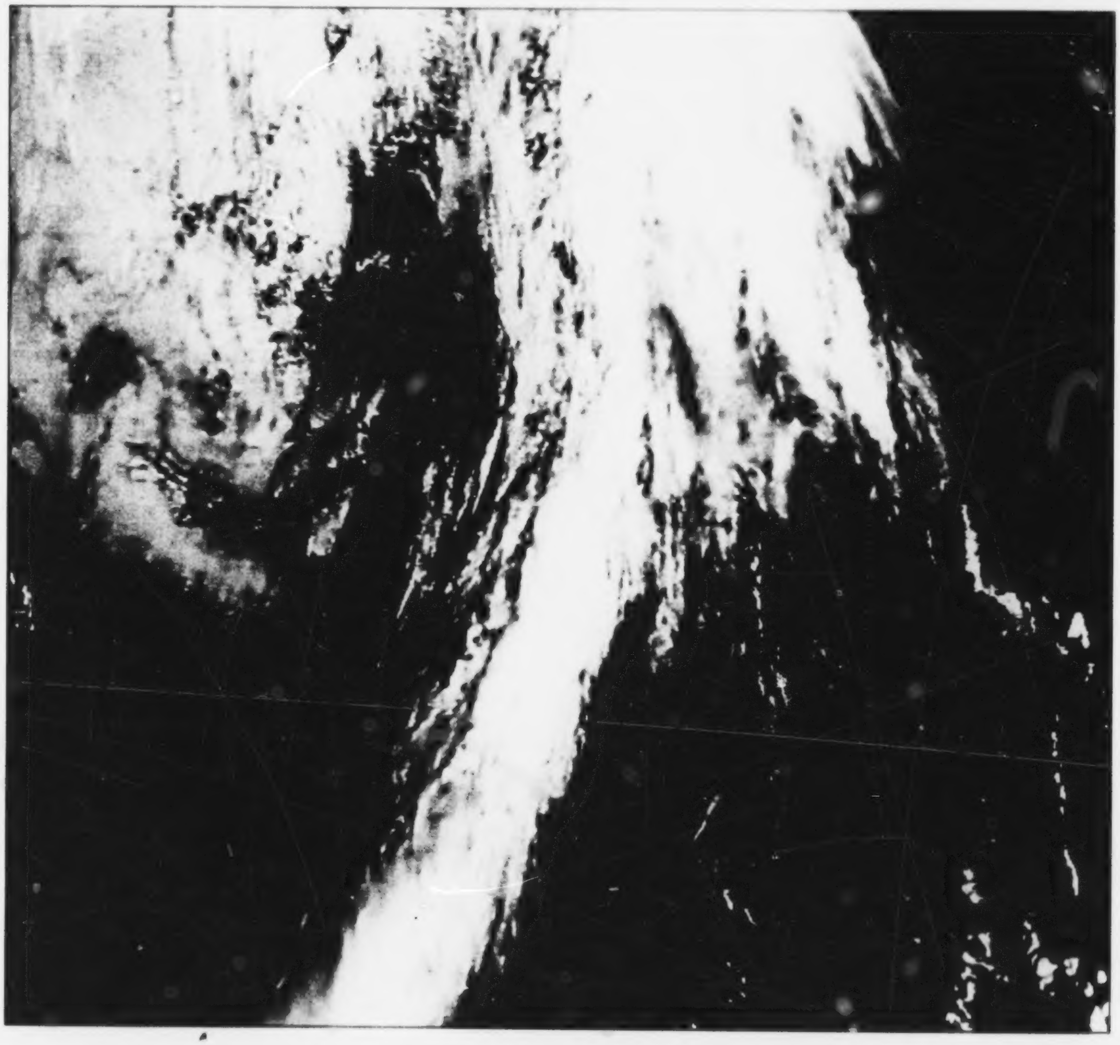


figure 27e. NOAA 10 (AM) image April 14, 1994
image courtesy of D. Tetreault, University of Rhode Island

48

This sequence of several cyclones following each other is fairly common. As the initial cyclone weakens, the trailing (western) portion of its cold front will become stationary. This stationary front is a region of strong temperature gradients. The appearance of the next upper air wave and jet streak is often sufficient to start the cyclone formation process again.

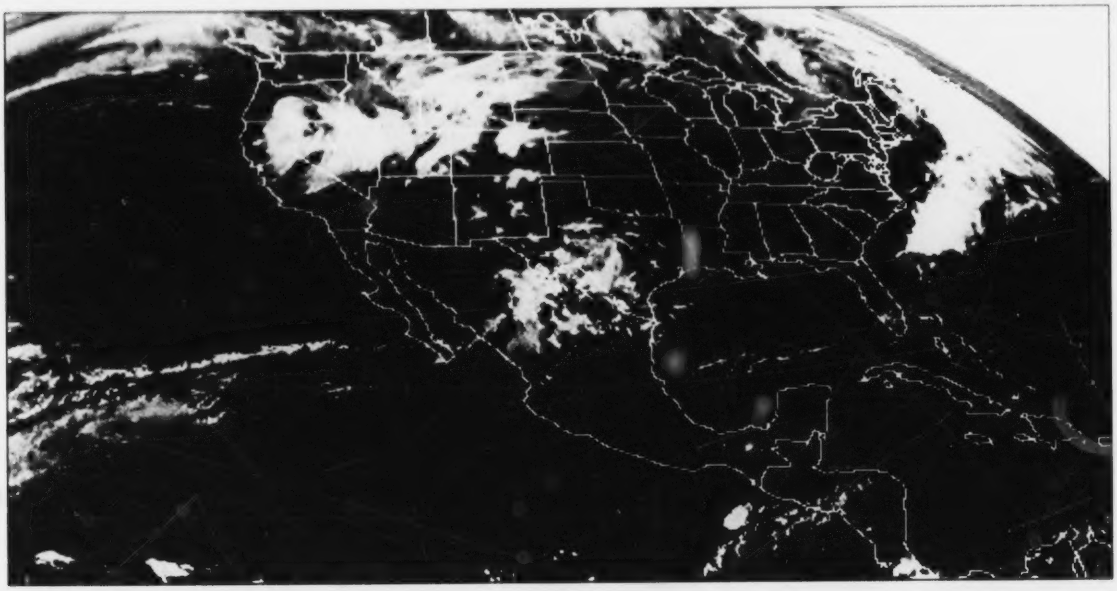


figure 27f. GOES image, April 14, 0600 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Section 4

In this section, cloud formation is explained and typical clouds types that are associated with midlatitude cyclones are described. The cloud features within a mature cyclonic disturbance are typically organized in a **comma** form. Specific cloud types can be identified with polar orbiter images and, to a lesser extent, GOES images.

Air is comprised mainly of nitrogen and oxygen, but also contains a small amount of water vapor. Clouds form when a parcel of air is cooled until the water vapor that it contains condenses to liquid form. Another way of saying this is that condensation (clouds) occur when an air parcel is **saturated** with water vapor.

The amount of moisture in a parcel of air is expressed in a variety of ways. The standard scientific measure is the partial pressure of water vapor. Partial pressure simply refers to the pressure exerted by only the water vapor part of the air parcel. The standard unit of measurement is **millibars** (mb) and is typically a small fraction of total atmospheric pressure. The water vapor content can also be expressed as a mass mixing ratio, that is, the mass of water vapor per total mass of air. Mixing ratio is usually expressed as grams H_20 per kilograms air.

The partial pressure of water vapor at the point of condensation is termed the saturation pressure (e_s). The saturation pressure of any air parcel is proportional to temperature and is described by the Clausius-Clapeyron equation, figure 28.

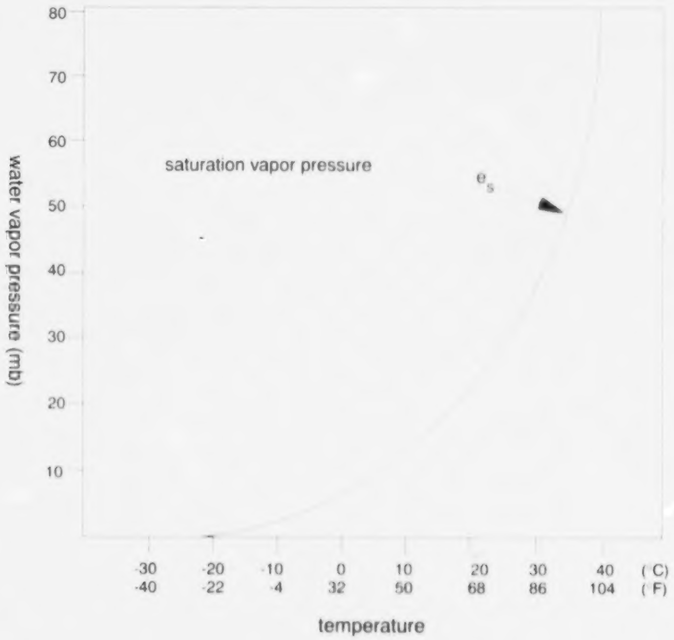
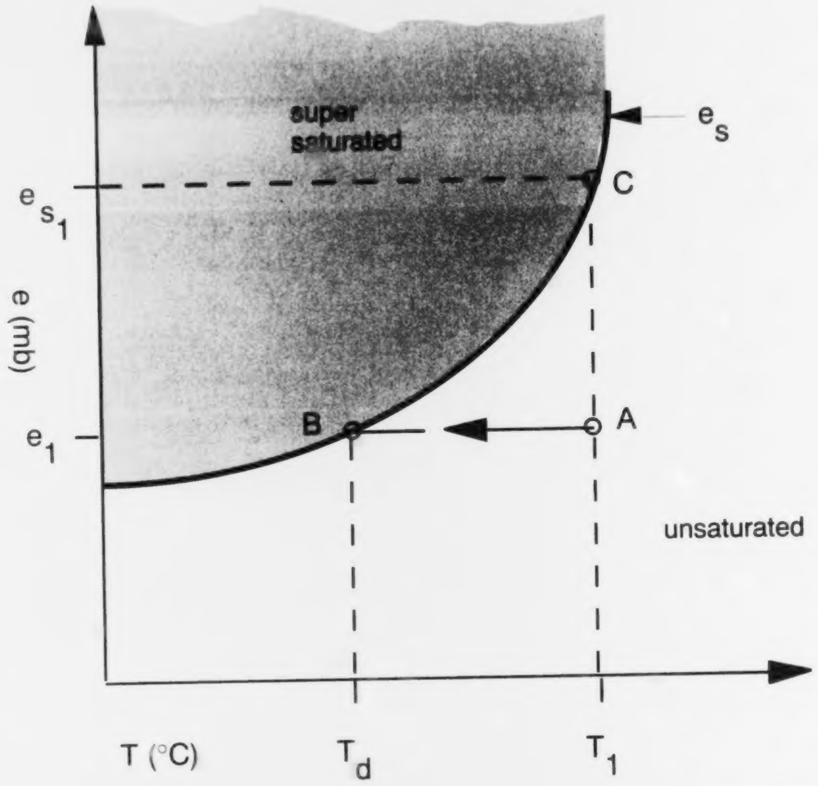


figure 28. Clausius-Clapeyron Equation indicates the dependence of saturation vapor pressure on temperature. It is derived from the first law of thermodynamics.

Dew Point Temperature (T_d)



If ambient conditions are: $T = T_1$, $e = e_1$,
then the system is not at equilibrium with respect to H_2O,
that is $e_1 < e_s$ for temperature $= T_1$.

But what happens if we cool the air, with e_1 constant, so that $T = T_d$?

figure 29.

An example illustrating cloud formation is given in figure 29. The starting point for the parcel of air is Point A. At this temperature (T_1) and water vapor pressure (e_1), the parcel of air is not saturated with respect to water vapor. That is, it is positioned below and to the right of the saturation line (e_s). If the parcel is cooled with no change in moisture, it will move along the line A-B. When it reaches point B, its vapor pressure (e_1) is equal to the saturation vapor pressure (e_s) for that temperature (T_d) and condensation occurs. The temperature at point B is known as the dew point temperature or dew point.

The ratio of the vapor pressure at Point A to the saturation vapor pressure for the initial temperature (Point C)— expressed in percent — is the relative humidity. As the parcel cools along the line A-B, its relative humidity increases. When temperatures cool in the evening, with little change in local moisture levels, relative humidity increases and reaches a peak just before sunrise.

For a given temperature (T_1):

$$\frac{\text{vapor pressure at Point A}}{\text{saturation vapor pressure for Point C}} = \text{relative humidity (\%)}$$

Clouds may occur when air is cooled to near its dew point. There are three ways to cool air to its dew point:

1. advection of warm air over a cold surface
2. mixing air parcels of different temperature and moisture
3. lifting of air to higher levels

advection
The horizontal transfer of any atmospheric property by the wind.

- First, horizontal motion **(advection)** of warm and moist air over a cool surface will cause the air parcel to cool and condensation to occur. This is how advection fog forms.
- Mixing parcels of different temperature and moisture can also result in cloud formation. The mixing cloud is another application of the Clausius-Clapeyron equation (figure 30). Parcels A and B are both in the unsaturated region of the graph. Parcel A is warm and moist and Parcel B is cool and dry. When they are equally mixed, the final parcel has a vapor pressure equal to the saturation vapor pressure (e_s) and condensation occurs. Jet aircraft contrails are an example of this type of cloud.
- A third way to cool air to its dew point is by lifting. Because pressure and accordingly, temperature, decrease rapidly with height, a rising parcel of air will cool rapidly.

Mixing Clouds

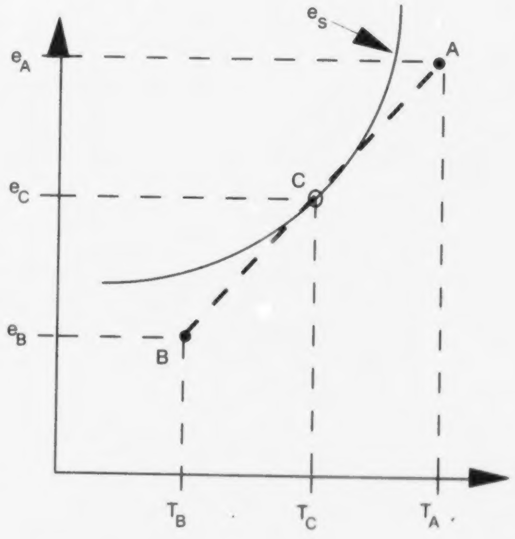


figure 30.

Cloud Condensation Nuclei

In the atmosphere, clouds can form at relative humidities of less that 100%. This is due to the presence of minute (0.1 - 2 micrometers in radius) water-attracting (hygroscopic) particles. Water vapor will stick to, and condense on, these particles to form clouds—hence the particles are termed cloud condensation nuclei (CCN).

CCN occur naturally in the atmosphere. Major sources of CCN are:

- volcanoes - dust and sulfate particles
- oceans - sea salt particles
- phytoplankton - sulfate particles
- wildfires - soot and dust

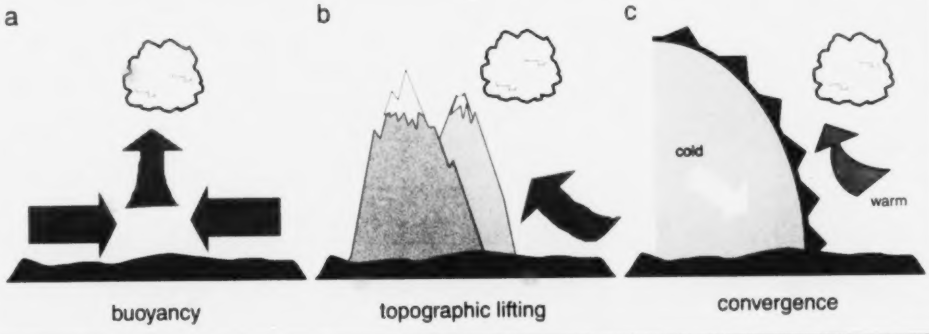
CCN can also result from man's activities. In particular, CCN occur as a byproduct of any combustion process. This includes motor vehicles emissions, industrial activity, and controlled fires (*slash and burn agriculture*).

The effect on CCN concentrations on climate is an area of continuing research. For example, if greenhouse-gas-induced-global warming occurs, sea surface temperature (SST) will increase. Will this result in increased emission of sulfates from phytoplankton? If so, will this significantly affect CCN concentrations over the oceans? Will increases in CCN concentrations result in increased cloud cover? Will this in turn lead to a cooling effect that will modulate the warming trend?

The most common ways to lift a parcel of air are: buoyancy, topographic lifting, and convergence. Buoyant lifting results from surface heating. This is a common manner of cloud formation in the summer. Buoyancy lifting is also called convection and occurs when local warm areas heat the air near the surface (figure 31a). The warm air is less dense than the surrounding air and rises. The rising air will eventually cool to its dew point and form a fair-weather cumulus cloud.

figure 31.

The most common ways to lift a parcel of air are:



Air that is forced into, or over, a topographic barrier will also rise and cool to form clouds (figure 31b). This occurs near mountain ranges. For example, warm and moist air from the Gulf of Mexico can be pushed northwestward and up the eastern slope of the Rockies to form extensive cloud decks.

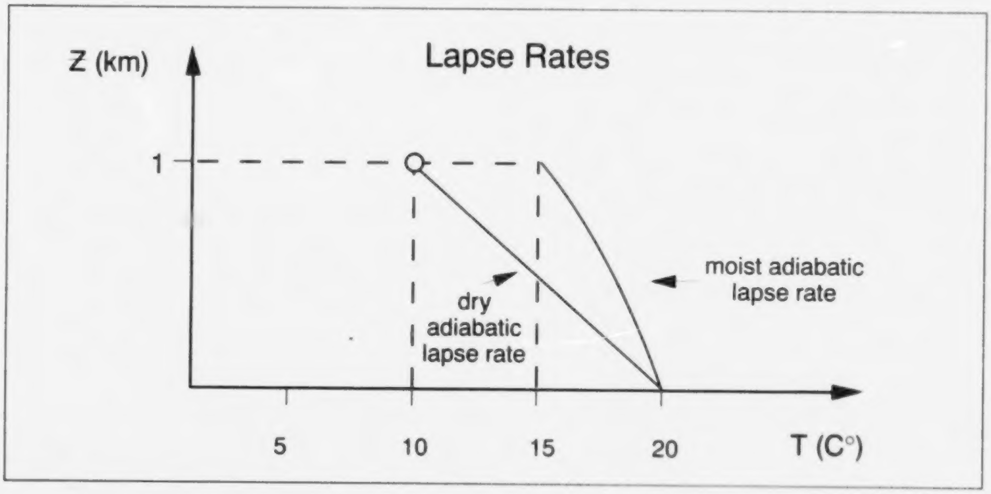
Finally, lifting occurs where there is large scale convergence of air (figure 27c, page 40). Cold fronts are a location of strong convergence as cold, dense southward moving air displaces warmer air. Convergence can also occur on smaller scales along the leading edge of the sea or bay breeze boundaries.

The formation of clouds is an application of the First Law of Thermodynamics. According to the First Law, a change in the internal energy of a system can be due to the addition (or loss) of heat or to the work done on (or by) the system. In the atmosphere system, the change of internal energy is measured as a change in temperature and the work done is manifested as a change in pressure. Because air is a relatively poor conductor of heat energy, the assumption is made that the parcel of air upon which work is being done is insulated from the surrounding environment. This is the **adiabatic** assumption. For a rising air parcel, the change in internal energy is therefore due entirely to pressure work with no addition or loss of heat to the surrounding environment. A simple relationship for temperature change for a rising parcel of air can then be determined. This change of temperature with height is the dry adiabatic lapse rate of -9.8°C per kilometer.

adiabatic
The process without transfer of heat, compression results in warming, expansion results in cooling.

Air is, of course, not entirely dry and always contains some water vapor which can condense as the air parcel rises and cools. Condensation creates clouds and affects the temperature and vertical motion of the parcel. During condensation, heat is released

figure 32.



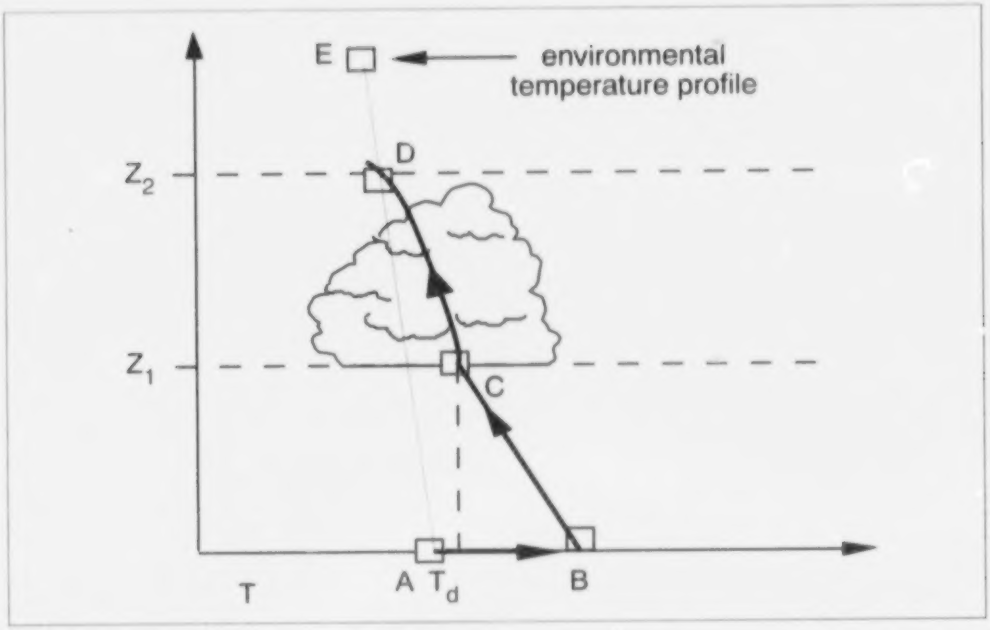


figure 33.

(latent heat of condensation). This addition of heat to the system violates the adiabatic assumption. The rate of cooling of an ascending air parcel undergoing condensation is, therefore, less than for dry air. The lapse rate for air under these conditions is the moist adiabatic lapse rate and is approximately -5° C per kilometer (figure 32).

The process by which clouds are formed adiabatically can be summarized using buoyancy clouds as an example. In figure 33, a parcel of air (point A) is heated by the surface and its temperature increases (point B). Because it is warmer than the surrounding measured air temperature, the air parcel cools dry adiabatically as it rises (line BC). At the height (Z_1) at which the parcel cools to its dew point (T_d) temperature, condensation occurs and heat is released. Because the parcel remains warmer than the environment temperature (line AE) it continues to rise but cools at a slightly slower rate (moist adiabatic lapse rate). The parcel will continue to rise until its temperature is less than the measured air temperature that surrounds it (Z_2). At this point, vertical motion ceases and the cloud top height (Z_2) is attained.

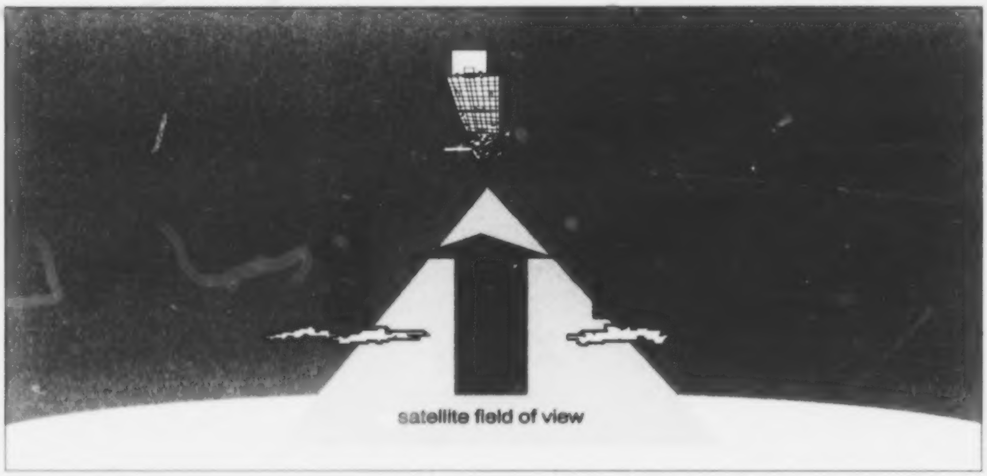
Many of the clouds formed by the processes noted above can be observed by satellite. The mid-latitude cyclones that are the focus of this chapter contain a subset of cloud types. These clouds are organized into common patterns which are described below.

Clouds are initially classified into types based on their height. They are then subclassified based on their shape. While the shape of a given cloud type can often be adequately observed by satellite, determination of cloud height can be difficult. In order to fully determine cloud shape and height, both visible and infrared satellite images are useful. Shape or appearance of clouds can be determined from a visible image, but temperature—and, by inference, height—are best determined by infrared images.

As noted in the Satellites chapter, GOES and polar orbiting satellites return both visible and infrared (IR) images. Visible images are created by sunlight reflected from cloud tops. Smooth cloud tops will give a much different reflected signal than clouds that are irregularly shaped. However, two layers of smooth, thick clouds will reflect sunlight in a similar manner making relative height determination difficult. In some cases, if the layers overlap and the sun angle is aligned properly, shadows will reveal the height differences. In most cases, the best way to determine cloud top height is by the use of infrared imagery. Infrared sensors detect the radiation emitted by clouds. Because temperature decreases with height in the troposphere, higher clouds will appear colder (or whiter) on the satellite images. If image enhancement software is available, the differences can be accentuated.

Some types of clouds are not observed well by satellites. Small clouds, such as fair weather cumulus, are simply too small to be resolved by the satellite sensors. Clouds which are thin or scattered also may not be observed well (figure 34). For a thin or scattered cloud, a GOES infrared detector will receive infrared radiation from both the colder cloud fragments, and in the clear spaces—from the warmer Earth. When the total radiation is averaged, the satellite will see clouds that appear warmer due to this heterogeneous field of view.

figure 34.



Prior to looking at images it is important to be familiar with the clouds. Clouds most often associated with mid-latitude cyclones are listed below and discussed in the following paragraphs.

Upper Level Clouds (6–12 km): Cirrus (Ci), Cirrostratus (Cs), Cirrocumulus (Cc), Cumulonimbus (Cb)

Mid Level Clouds (2–6 km): Altostratus (As), Altocumlus (Ac)

Low Level clouds: Stratus (St), Stratocumulus (Sc), Cumulus (Cu)

The highest clouds are cirroform clouds. These clouds are made up of ice crystals and are found at 6–12 km. This group includes cirrus clouds, which are observed from the surface as thin hooks and strands. While cirrus clouds are easily observed from the surface, they are usually so thin that they are difficult to detect by satellite. In strong thunderstorms, however, strands of thicker cirrus clouds are often visible as outflow at the top of the thunderstorm (as in figure 27b). Cirrus clouds are very helpful in determining the direction of upper-level winds. The cloud strands, when visible, are oriented parallel to the upper level winds. Dense cirrus decks can be observed in visible images as streaks or bands and can be distinguished from lower clouds by the shadow they cast below. In the infrared image (27b), the denser cirrus are very bright because of their cold temperature, but can be subject to the effects of a heterogeneous field of view.

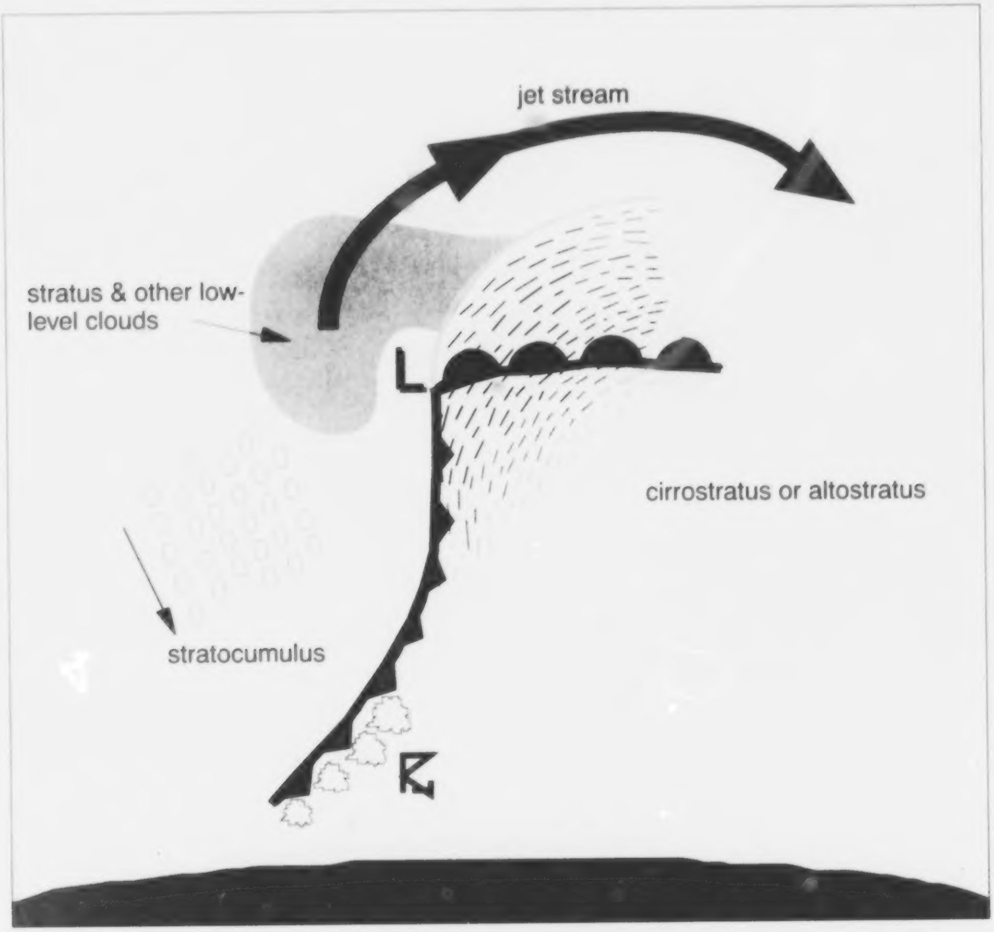


figure 35. Clouds Associated with Extratropical Cyclones

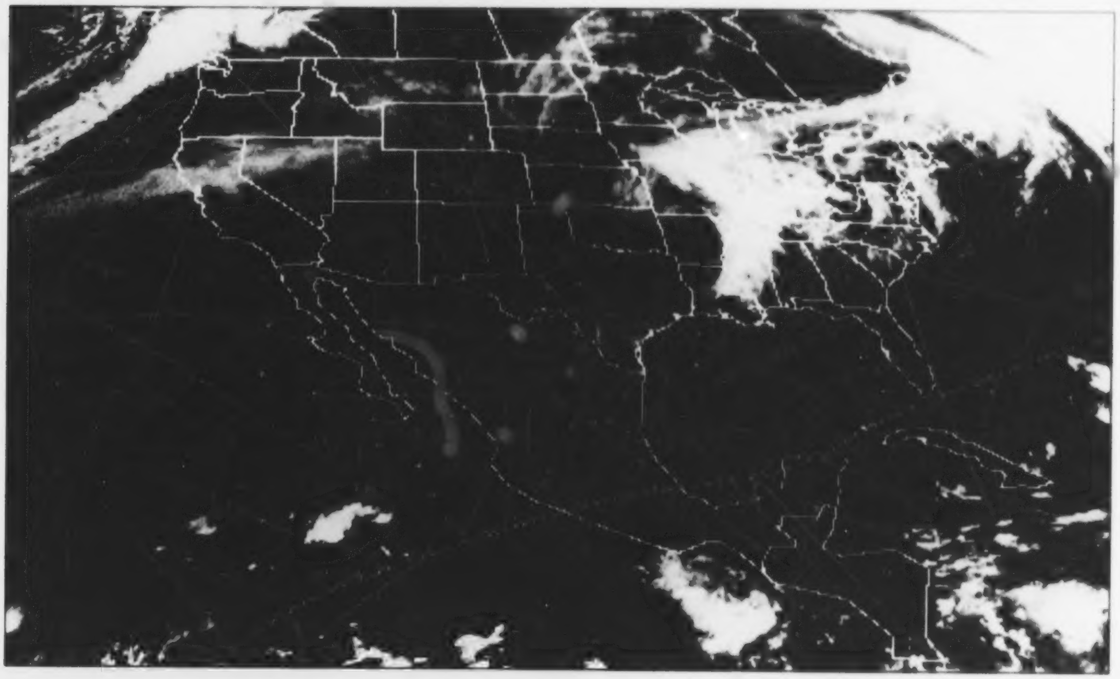


figure 36a. GOES infrared image, November 5, 1994
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

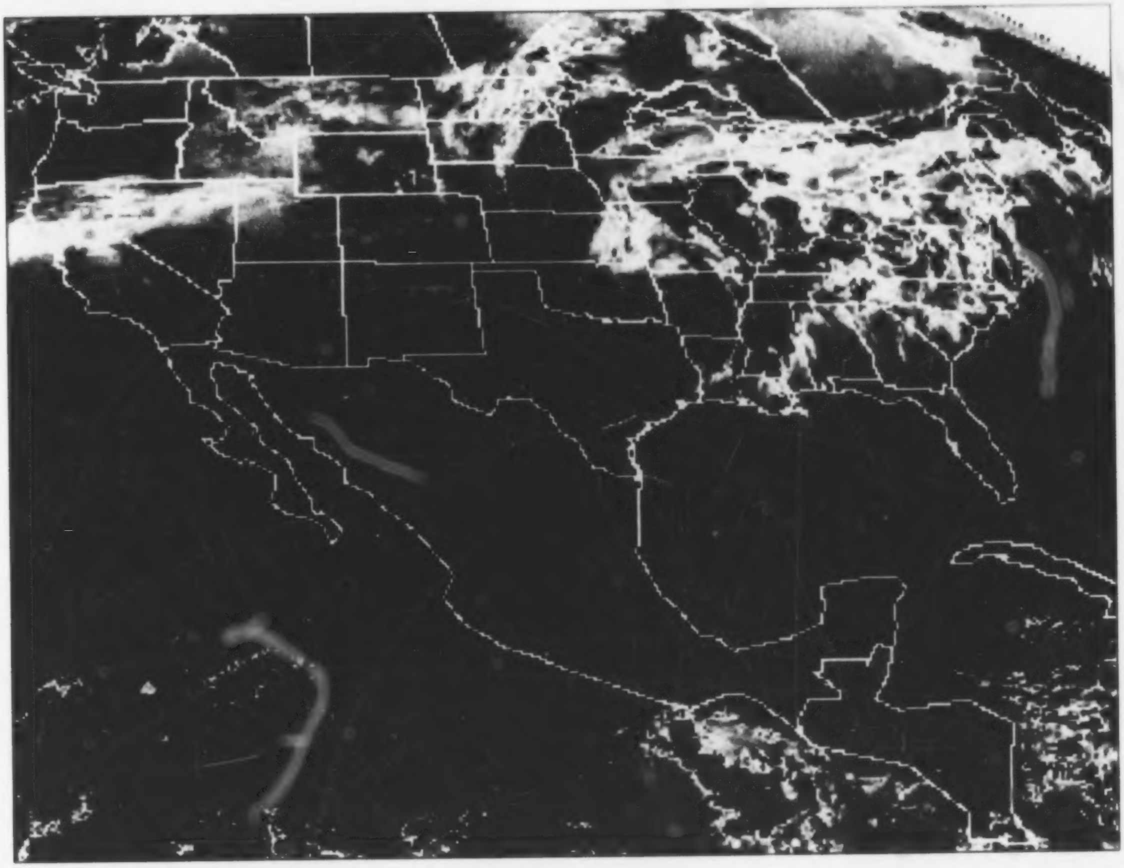


figure 36b. enhanced GOES infrared image, November 5, 1994
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

The clouds typically associated with extratropical cyclones are illustrated in figure 35. Clouds that make up the bulk of the comma cloud seen in satellite images are the cirrostratus clouds. As shown in figure 35, the mature comma cloud has an extensive deck of cirrostratus clouds. The GOES IR image in figure 36a is an example of the illustration in figure 35. The western limit of the cirrostratus deck typically marks the position of the surface cold front. In this case, it is found in Missouri, eastern Arkansas, and central Louisiana. The northern limit of the cirrostratus typically marks the southern edge of the jet stream. This is found across Minnesota and Lake Superior. In figure 36b, the IR image is enhanced to show the cirrostratus cloud region in black. Note that there are whiter regions embedded within the cirrostratus deck, particularly in central Alabama. These are very high cirrus clouds associated with cumulonimbus clouds that have formed along the cold front.

The final form of upper level clouds are cirrocumulus. These small puffy clouds are usually too small to be resolved by the satellite or subject to contamination effect. If the cirrocumulus are large and extensive enough, they are distinguished from cirrostratus by a lumpy texture.

Mid-level clouds, which are found at heights of 2–6 km, frequently resemble the upper level clouds although they tend to be composed of liquid water droplets rather than ice. Altostratus clouds, like cirrostratus, are usually found in association with midlatitude cyclones. Often the only way to distinguish mid-level from upper level clouds is by using software to enhance infrared images, as in figure 36b. In the visible, altostratus is quite similar to higher or lower stratiform clouds and may only be distinguished if shadows are present. Altocumulus clouds also accompany midlatitude disturbances but are typically covered, as are altostratus, by higher clouds. The altocumulus clouds are often found in association with altostratus decks and can be distinguished by a lumpier appearance.

The lowest level clouds also contain cumuloform and stratiform variants. Fair weather cumulus, the "popcorn" clouds seen on fair days, are often below the resolution of regional satellite images. When the cumulus clouds grow into towering cumulus or thunderstorms (cumulonimbus), their high tops and isolated rounded shape are easily identifiable. Cumulonimbus often form along the leading edge of the cold fronts that are associated with cyclones. Stratocumulus forms by the spreading out of cumulus clouds or breaking up of stratus decks. Large decks of stratocumulus are often found off the West Coast of the United States. Stratocumulus cloud lines often form off the East Coast of the United States after the passage of a cold front. Stratus clouds are low-based clouds with uniform features and are difficult to distinguish in the visible from altostratus.

Fog, the lowest of all clouds, can often be observed from satellites. On visible images, fog is relatively featureless and difficult to distinguish from higher stratus clouds. If the fog is located over land, either along the coast or in mountain valleys, it can sometimes be detected by the manner in which it follows ground contours. For example, the fog bank may follow the contours of a bay or harbor, or branch into mountain valleys. The branching effect is a good way to distinguish mountain fog from snow cover. Fog can be difficult to observe in infrared images because its temperature is often very close to ground temperature. It can, at times, be even warmer!

ADDITIONAL COMMON WEATHER PATTERNS

Section 5

Cyclonic weather disturbances are the most common mid-latitude weather pattern. This type of disturbance occurs in all seasons, although they are more vigorous in the late fall to early spring. Examples of the mid-latitude cyclone cloud shield were given in figures 2 (page 12), 4a (page 15), 14a (page 26), 27d (page 41), and 36a (page 52). The development of these systems can be explained by the interaction of low-level temperature gradients with disturbances in upper level winds and accelerations in the jet stream. Other weather-making systems that can be observed by satellite in the mid-latitudes are of an entirely different scale and form. These non-standard events have geographic and season patterns that make them useful for study during the school year.

In the fall and winter months, strong cyclonic storms develop rapidly off the East Coast of the United States. These coastal storms, often called northeasters, are a peculiar type of cyclonic disturbance. They occur most often in the winter months and are associated with heavy snowfall events along the East Coast. These storms initially develop as a small wave in the eastern Gulf of Mexico or along the southeastern coast of the United States. Like other cyclonic disturbances, these coastal storms are associated with low level temperature gradients as well as disturbances in upper level winds and accelerations in the jet stream. What is peculiar about these storms is the speed with which they develop. In figures 37–39 (pages 55 and 56), the development of a strong coastal storm is shown over a 24 hour period. Note that the circulation around the center of the storm is very intense. Note also the presence of a mature extratropical cyclone off the northwest coast of the United States.

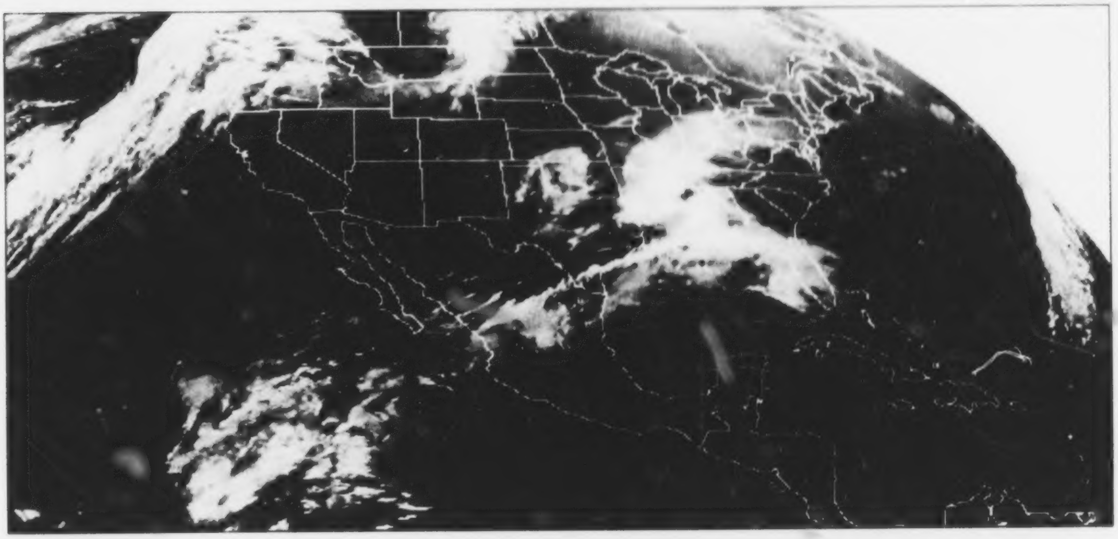


figure 37. Time series of coastal storm development.
GOES image, March 1, 1994, 0300 CST
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

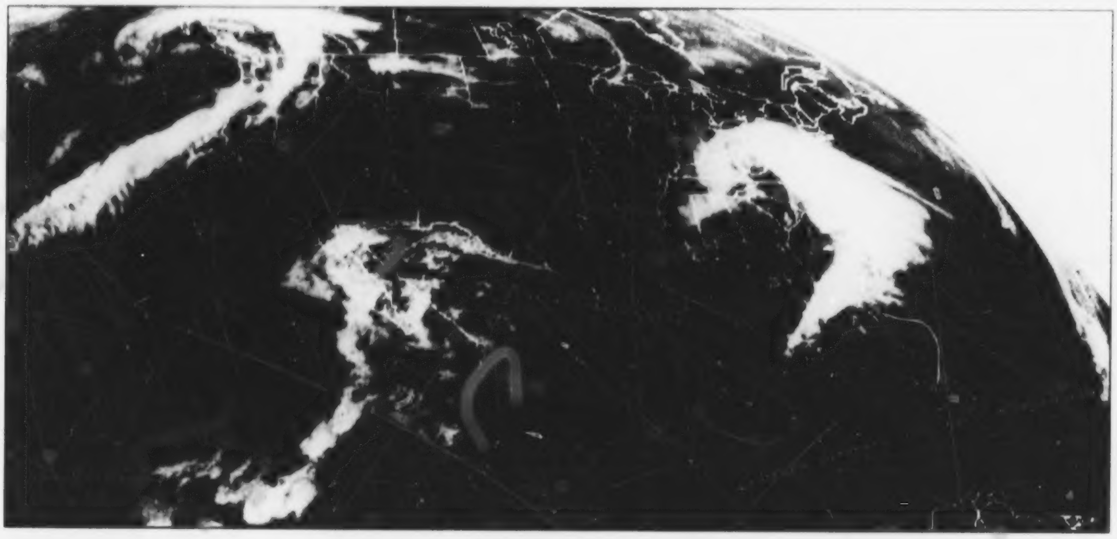


figure 38. Time series of coastal storm development.
GOES image, March 2, 1994, 1100 CST.
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

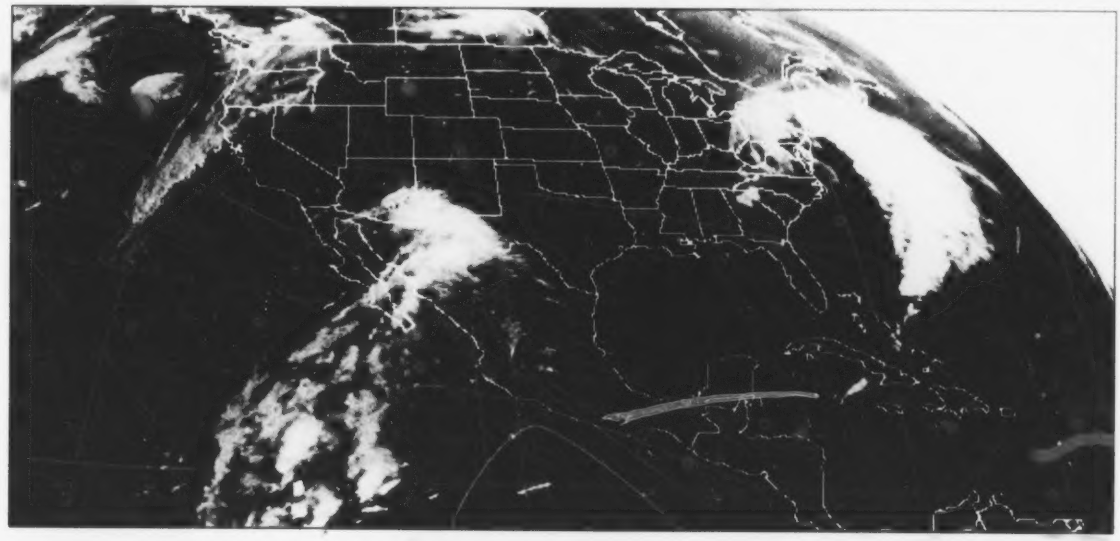


figure 39. Time series of coastal storm development.
GOES image, March 3, 1994, 0300 CST.
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Another remarkable aspect of these storms, in addition to their rapid development, is the extent of snowfall associated with them. These heavy snowfalls are made possible by the collision of very warm, moist, maritime air with very cold and dry air of continental origin. The coastal storms usually develop after a very intense cold front has crossed the eastern United States leaving cold Canadian air along the eastern seaboard. This cold dense air can be trapped, or "dammed," between the coast and the Appalachian Mountains to the west and remain in place for several days. The coastal storm, which often begins as a wave along the remnants of the original cold front, moves up the coast parallel to the offshore Gulf Stream. Because the wind field around the storm is counterclockwise (cyclonic), warm, moist Gulf Stream air is driven into and, being less dense, over the cold air dammed along the coast. The moisture wrung out of the ascending air passes through the colder layer below and creates the mixture of rain, snow, sleet and freezing rain that is typical of these storms. Along the coast, the cold air layer is thinner, if present at all, and the precipitation falls as rain. Further inland, the cold air may be thick enough to freeze the precipitation as it hits the ground (freezing rain) or as it falls toward the ground (sleet). As the ground rises into the Appalachians, the precipitation will be mainly snow.

The forecasting of these coastal storms has improved over the last several years with advances in computing power and improvements in weather forecast models. As a rough guide, any time a strong Canadian cold front crosses the East Coast during the winter months and becomes stationary across the northern Gulf of Mexico, there is a possibility for this coastal storm development.

During the spring months, the focus for severe and unusual weather shifts to the central United States. This is the season of tornadoes in the Great Plains. Again there is a clash of air masses. In this case, warm air from the Gulf of Mexico advances northward where it collides with southward moving cold polar air. While the systems that produce severe weather in this season are generally variations on the classic comma cloud cyclonic disturbance, there are also smaller scale (mesoscale) systems that produce heavy rainfall and severe weather. These systems, called **Mesoscale Convective Systems** (MCS), come in various shapes—from the familiar line squall to the nearly circular **Mesoscale Convective Complex** (MCC). The latter system has a unique satellite signature and is very common over the Great Plains in the spring and early summer. During the Flood of 1993, a considerable number of MCSs occurred in the Midwest.

Several MCCs are shown in figures 40a and b (page 58). The MCC is an organized group of thunderstorms that initiates late in the afternoon from a localized area and develops throughout the night before dissipating late the next morning. In figure a, taken at 0100 CDT, two mesoscale systems are present over Iowa and Nebraska. Note the size of the cloud shield associated with each system. These systems initiated late the previous afternoon from a small group of thunderstorms. These MCC's persist throughout the early morning or even through the next night and (figure b) can migrate considerable distances before dissipating.

These systems often recur over several days and can account for significant local rainfall. During the flood of 1993, mesoscale systems occurred frequently during the summer months. A great deal of research continues regarding the organization and development of these systems. For example, figure 40c (page 59) shows another large MCC occurring the night after the storms in figures 40a and b.

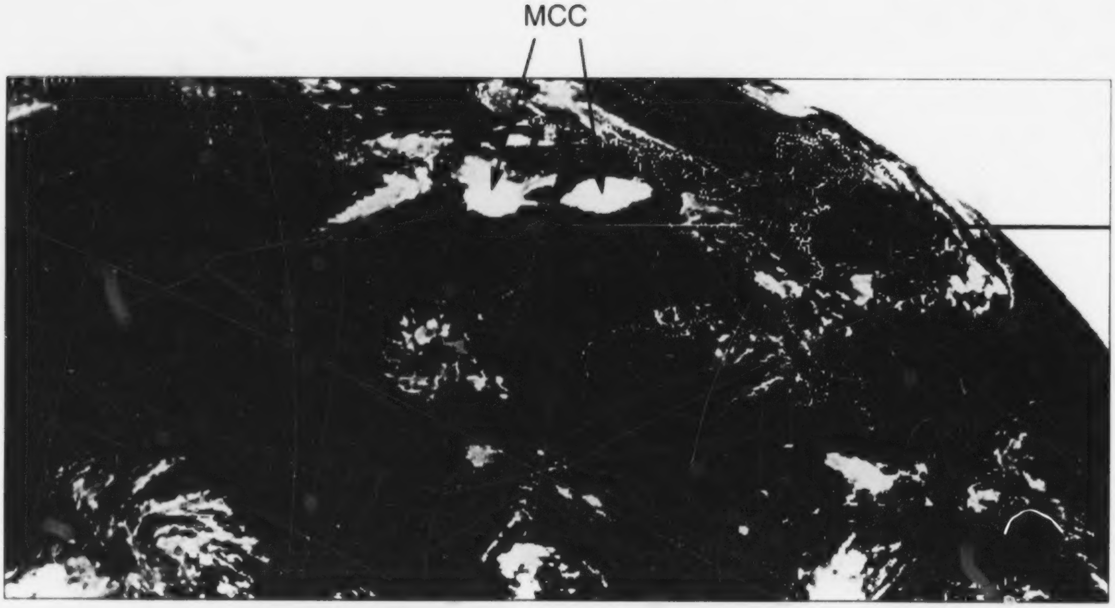


figure 40a. MCC
GOES 7, IR. July 24, 1993–0100 CDT.
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

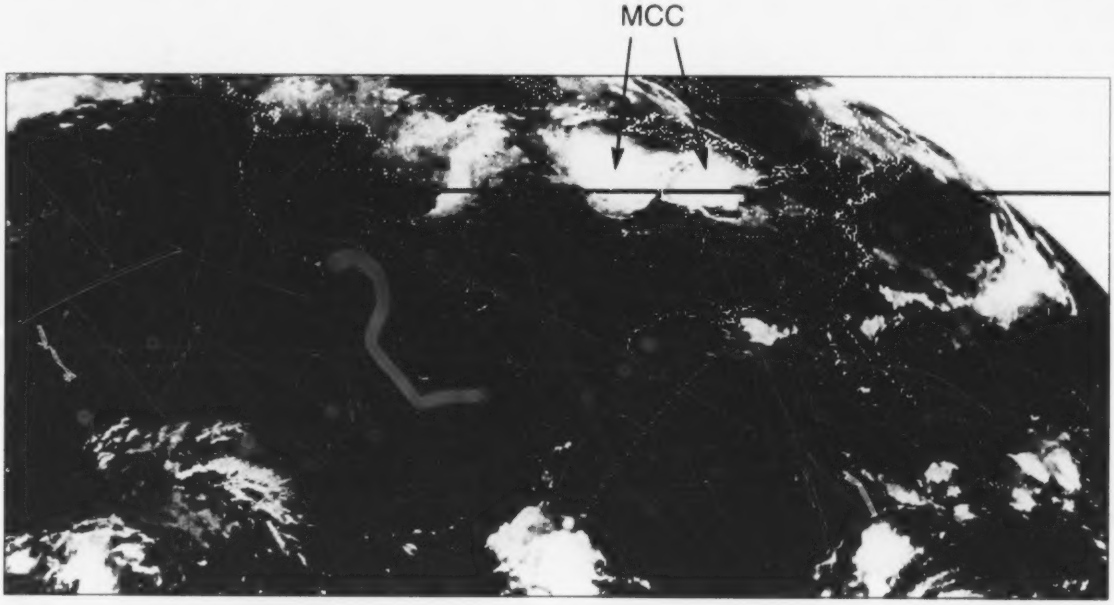


figure 40b. MCC
GOES 7, IR. July 24, 1993–0700 CDT.
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

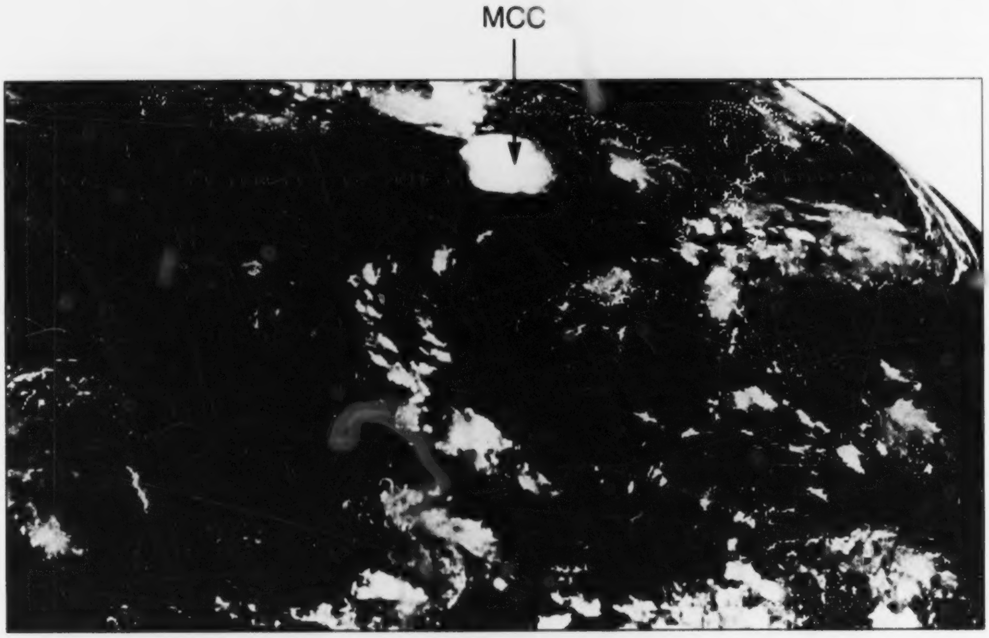


figure 40c. MCC
GOES 7, IR. July 25, 1993–2200 CDT.
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

During summer and fall months, the most arresting weather developments are tropical hurricanes. Because hurricanes travel long distances during their lifetimes, the best way to observe them is through a series of GOES images. Hurricanes are observed in the eastern Pacific in the summer months and become frequent in the Atlantic during the late summer and early fall. The strongest Atlantic hurricanes typically develop from waves in the easterly trade-wind-flow off the coast of Africa. Clusters of convective clouds with cold tops can be seen in GOES IR images and can then be tracked across the Atlantic. As the hurricane moves closer to land, polar-orbiter images can be used to resolve the finer scale of the hurricane, including the bands of clouds that circle around the core (*eye*) of the hurricane. In figure 41 (page 60), a polar orbiter image of Hurricane Emily is shown off the coast of North Carolina.

noise

Reception of satellite images is often affected by local sources of interference—noise. Common sources of interference are household appliances, motors (heating and cooling, vacuum cleaners, etc.), radio and aircraft transmissions, automobiles, and fluorescent lights. The higher the frequency, the less susceptible the receiving equipment is to noise (geostationary reception is less affected than polar-orbiting satellite reception). On satellite images, interference typically appears as horizontal stripes. Examples of noise appear in figures 40a and 40b.

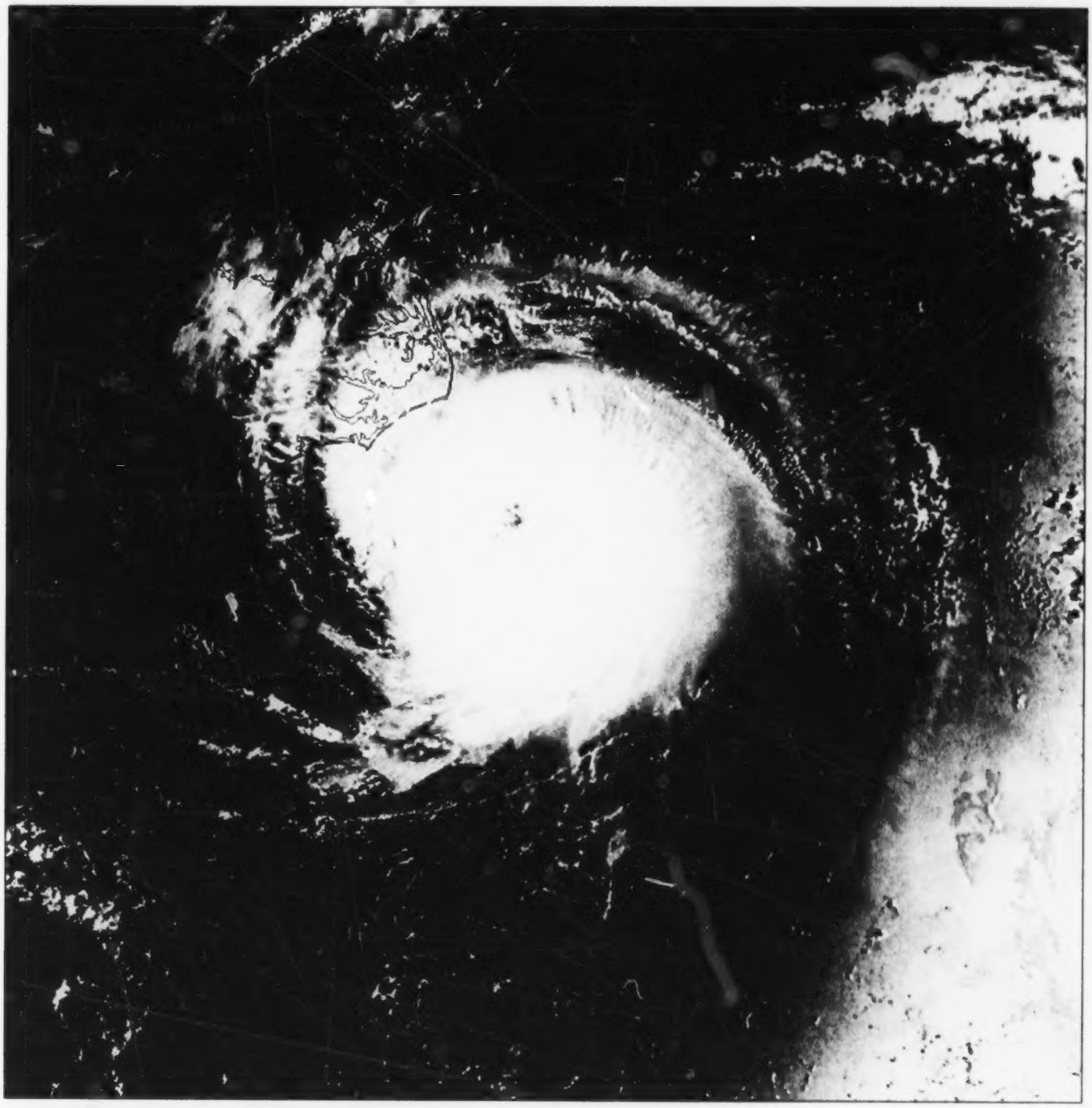


figure 41. Hurricane Emily
HRPT image courtesy of Professor G.W.K. Moore, University of Toronto

SATELLITE IMAGES AND THE INTERNET

Section 6

Obtaining Images and Data via the Internet

Listed below are a sequence of commands that will allow you to get the most recent copy of a document that lists weather data and satellite images available on the Internet. Methods and access to satellite imagery are changing rapidly so this information may not be applicable to all users and/or may be outdated in the near future. Before you begin, you must be able to access your account at a local university or other site via modem and access the Internet from that account. In addition, you must have the ability to store files temporarily on your university account. Finally, you will need to determine your complete Internet address. With these tasks accomplished, dial in to your account and enter these commands after the prompt:

```
ftp vmd.cso.uiuc.edu
```

The initial command "ftp" simply means "file transfer protocol." ftp is a standard form of communicating within Internet. The remainder of this command is simply the address of a computer that is on the Internet.

If the network isn't busy, you will be greeted with a prompt to login. The best time to access the Internet is before 10 am or after 3 pm. For Internet transfers of the type we will be discussing here (called "anonymous ftp"), your login is always "anonymous." Your password is always your full address. Your address is typically your login name followed by the address of your home account. For example, John Doe who works at the University of Maryland may have an address like jdoe@atmos.umd.edu.

```
login:  anonymous
password:  your address
```

Once you have been logged in at vmd.cso.uiuc.edu, you will need to move from your starting point to the directory that has the weather data information. You will do this by changing directories. Most locations on the Internet use the UNIX system. The command to change directories in UNIX is "cd".

```
cd wx
```

Then list all the files in the "wx" directory:

```
ls
```

You can use the wildcard "*" to list only those files with certain characters. For example to see all files with the extension "doc", enter the command below:

```
ls *.doc
```

Before downloading, check the size of each file with the command:

```
ls -l
```

Now download the file "sources.doc" which contains the most recent listing of weather data and images available via Internet. This is done using the "get" command followed by the name of the file at the Internet location and the name you wish to give the file when it arrives at your location. The file names below are the same though they need not be.

```
get sources.doc  sources.doc
```

You will be sent a line confirming the transfer. Now leave the Internet:

```
bye
```

At this point, check your account to see if the file has arrived. To bring the file over the phone line to your school or house, use the communication software that is recommended, or often supplied for free, by the university. You now have a resource file that will give you information on weather data on the Internet along with further details on Internet usage.

There are a number of other commands that are commonly used on the Internet. A few critical ones are listed below.

```
binary
```

Many files are stored in unusual formats. These include Word Perfect files as well as files that are compressed for ease of storage and transfer. The standard naming convention for compressed files is the extension ".Z." In the example above, the file would be "sources.doc.Z." Before these types of files can be transferred over the Internet (i.e., before issuing the "get" command), you must notify the Internet that you will be sending a non-standard file format. This is done by entering the "binary" command.

```
prompt
mget ci0717*.gif
```

You may wish to transfer more than one file at a time. This is accomplished by first telling the Internet that multiple files will be sent together (the "prompt" command) and then using the multiple get command ("mget") followed by the list of files. In the example above, all infrared images from July 17th are sent. Because there may be many files with a common extension, be very careful with the "mget" command. To check how many files would be transferred, list the files before transferring with the command:

```
ls ci0717*.gif
```

Finally, if you have downloaded a compressed file (e.g., "sources.doc.Z") you will need to issue the UNIX command to uncompress the file before bringing it from the university to your home computer. The command for this is "uncompress" and the usage is given below. The uncompressed file will have the same name although without the ".Z" extension.

```
uncompress sources.doc.Z
```

SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL IMAGES

GOES Image or *Loop*

A GOES image provides the context for the detailed polar-orbiter image. The wide field of view of the GOES image provides information on the current position of active cyclones and a rough idea of the long wave trough and ridge pattern. A loop of GOES images shows the recent development and movement of large scale features. Wave patterns are much easier to identify in time lapse loops than from an image or group of images. GOES loops can be taped from television weather broadcasts and shown in the classroom.

Source of GOES Images

Downloading GOES images from the Internet or other source, and animating the images in the classroom may prove to be overly cumbersome. The simplest method for displaying GOES loops is television videotapes. A compact and comprehensive weather discussion, complete with GOES loops, is provided each morning by "AM Weather" on PBS. Other sources are local weather broadcasts as well as "The Weather Channel."

Upper Air Information

The identification of wave patterns as well as jet stream and jet streak position is best done using standard meteorological upper air charts. These are available from several sources using the Internet. Many television broadcasts show the position of the jet stream which, in most cases, is parallel to the upper air flow pattern. The location of jet streaks is not a standard broadcast item and can only be obtained via upper air charts.

Upper Air Charts

Upper air charts are available on the Internet at the same location as satellite images. They are usually identified by filename "uwxxyyzz.gif" [w is the level identifier, xx is the month, yy is the day of the month, and zz is the time—Greenwich Mean Time). Upper air charts are given for several levels in the atmosphere: 850 millibars (mb), 700 millibars, 500 millibars, 300 millibars. A chart for conditions at 850mb at 1200 GMT, on June 14 would have the file name 061412.gif. All upper air charts are plotted on a constant pressure surface. For example, the 850 mb chart is created from observations made as a radiosonde reaches a pressure of 850 mb. The altitude at this point varies from place to place. Near low pressure centers, the altitude corresponding to 850 mb will be much lower than the altitude corresponding to 850 mb near high pressure. Therefore, low pressure areas are depicted on upper air charts as areas of lower height. This can be a source of confusion. The jet stream is usually found around 300 mb or 200 mb. The location of short wave disturbances is best seen at the 500 mb level. Temperature gradient information is best seen at 850 mb.

Surface Information

Surface data provides an idea of low-level temperature gradients, fronts, and the location of low pressure centers. These are often available in the local newspaper as well as on the Internet and TV broadcasts.

ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITES

This section provides background information about environmental satellites, covering types of satellites, hardware specifications, and the kinds of information they obtain. It concludes with review or test materials.

U.S. geostationary and polar-orbiting satellites are discussed in some detail, supplemented with information about other nations' satellites. Note that the descriptions of the satellites and sensors are accurate at printing, but they are a ***snapshot*** taken during a continuing process of enhancement.

It should become obvious that there is a continuing need for international cooperation in using satellites—not only to study atmospheric conditions and provide warning of hazardous conditions, but also to study Earth as a whole.

Remote sensing, the acquiring of data and information about an object or phenomena by a device that is not in physical contact with it, plays a critical role in the use of environmental satellites. A variety of sophisticated remote-sensing instruments onboard satellites gather regional and global measurements of Earth. That information describes current conditions, allows us to predict severe weather, and monitor long-term change in the system (such as climate or ocean temperature). Such knowledge enables effective global policy-making and resource management.

Understanding the electromagnetic spectrum will help with understanding how satellite sensors and other remote-sensing tools work.

THE SATELLITES

Section 1 Looking at Earth 67
- Remote Sensing and the Electromagnetic Spectrum
- Radio Frequency Spectrum

Section 2 Types of Environmental Satellites and Orbits 72

Section 3 U.S. Operational Meteorological Satellite Program 73
- GOES Geostationary Satellite
  - NOAA GOES Geostationary Satellite (diagram)
  - GOES Satellite Elements
  - GOES Primary Sensors
  - NOAA GOES 8 Geostationary Satellite (diagram)
  - GOES 8 Satellite Elements
  - GOES 8 Primary Systems
  - Geostationary Satellite Coverage
- Polar-orbiting Satellites
  - Advanced TIROS-N (diagram)
  - TIROS-N Satellite Elements
  - TIROS-N Primary Systems
  - Polar-orbiter Coverage
- U.S. Meteorological Satellite Systems, Comparison Chart

Section 4 Direct Readout from Environmental Satellites 92
- Sample Uses for Direct Readout in the Classroom
- Direct Readout from NOAA Polar-orbiting Satellites
- Environmental Satellite Frequencies

Section 5 Forecast 97
- Satellite-Delivered Weather
- Weather Forecast Impact

Section 6 Environmental Satellites of Other Nations 99

Section 7 Review 100
- Satellite Review Questions
- Comparative Review of Satellites
- Suggested Answers for Review Questions
- Answers, Comparative Review of the Satellites

LOOKING AT EARTH

Section 1

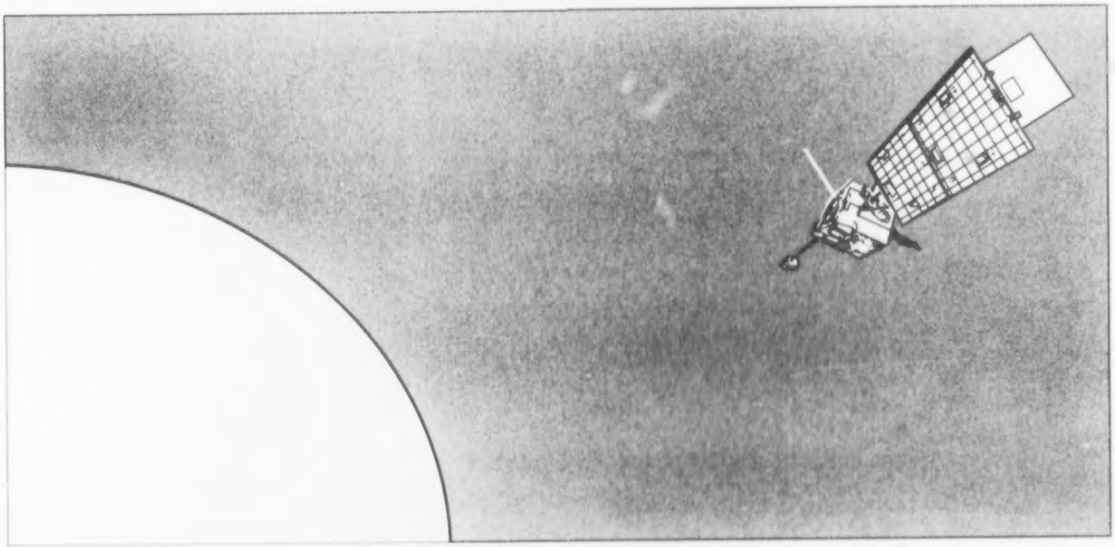
Humans have engaged in weather observation for centuries, aware of the impact of inclement weather on everything from agriculture to whaling. Galileo is credited with developing the first thermometer in 1592—over four hundred years later, we're still interested in what the temperature is. Gods who controlled thunder, lightning, and the wind are abundant in ancient mythology. Adages such as *red sky in the morning, sailors take warning, red sky at night, sailors' delight* influenced daily decisions. Observations of animal behavior, such as how large a food stockpile squirrels accrued, were considered indicators of the harshness of an oncoming winter.

Ben Franklin was the first American to suggest that weather could be forecast, having deduced from newspaper articles that storms generally travel from west to east. He further deduced that weather observers could notify those ahead of a storm that it was coming. Shortly after the telegraph was invented in 1837, Franklin's ideas were implemented by a series of observers sending information in Morse code to a central office where a national weather map was created.

A seemingly separate purpose was enabled by the invention of the camera in 1839. Beginning in 1858, cameras were flown on balloons for topographic mapping. Cameras mounted on both kites and pigeons were later used to obtain photographs from higher altitudes, encompassing larger areas. Wilbur Wright topped that by taking the first recorded photographs from an airplane in 1909.

Research during World War II, motivated by both the desire for security and superiority, produced infrared detectors and other thermal sensors. Information could be obtained about a subject, as with the camera, without being in physical contact with it. The term *remote sensing* is now commonly used in conjunction with electromagnetic techniques for acquiring information.

figure 42.



72

One hundred and two years after cameras were first flown on balloons to get a better look at Earth, the U.S. launched the first weather satellite, the Television and Infrared Observation Satellite (TIROS-1). TIROS-1 made it possible for the first time to monitor weather conditions over most of the world regularly, including the approximately 70% of the Earth covered by water (where weather observations had been sparse or nonexistent). That first launch on April 1, 1960 was the beginning of what is now a sophisticated network of international environmental satellites monitoring Earth. Regional, national, and global observations provide information with immediate impact—such as identifying hurricanes or winter storms—and providing data for climatic and global change studies—such as changes in polar ice or mean sea level.

Satellites are now operated to fulfill a variety of objectives (e.g., communications, Earth observation, planetary exploration). However, the focus of this publication is on environmental (also called meteorological or weather) satellites, and their unique capability to provide direct readout—that is, they provide data that can be obtained directly from the satellite by a ground station user.

REMOTE SENSING AND THE ELECTROMAGNETIC SPECTRUM

Sensors onboard environmental satellites measure a vast array of information. In order to understand how they work, and more generally, how/why remote sensing works, it is important to understand electromagnetic radiation and the electromagnetic spectrum.

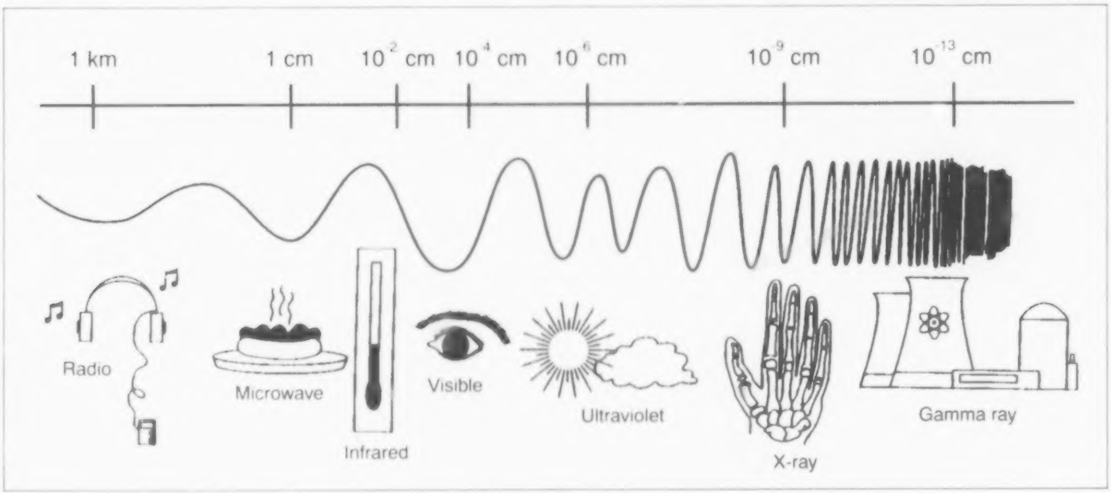
Electromagnetic radiation is composed of electric and magnetic fields that are generated by the oscillation of electrons in atoms or in a conducting material.

All matter, unless it has a temperature of absolute zero, emits electromagnetic radiant energy or radiation. This radiation travels in electromagnetic waves—a coupled electric and magnetic force field—that release energy when absorbed by another object. The waves propagate through space at the speed of light. The full range of wave frequencies—usually divided into seven spectral regions or bands—is the electromagnetic spectrum. Note that the spectrum has *ranges* rather that precise divisions. As shown in the diagram, visible and ultraviolet are examples of electromagnetic radiation, differing in their wavelengths (frequencies).

Most materials possess unique radiation properties or signatures, from which they can be identified. In general, their emissivity (the rate at which they give out radiant energy) is determined by characteristics such as chemical composition, crystal structure, grain size, surface roughness, etc.

In free space, electric and magnetic fields are at right angles to each other and maintain their relative positions during wave transmission. Radiation from some sources, such as the Sun, doesn't have any clearly defined polarization (electrical or magnetic alignment)—meaning the electrical field assumes different directions at random. However, waves can be polarized or aligned. Polarized paper, sunglasses, or camera lens will demonstrate how effectively parallel slits filter light. Hold the filtering medium horizontally up to a light source (light bulb, flashlight, projector) and note the passage of light. Turn the medium vertically or add a second filter held vertically and see the light disappear.

figure 43.



The ability to selectively examine portions of the spectrum enables satellite sensors to perform specific tasks, such as providing visual images, monitoring temperatures, and detecting reflected or emitted radiation.

Sensors monitor or *sense* 1.) natural radiation coming from the Earth or 2.) reflected radiation resulting from having sent energy to Earth that is reflected back to the satellite. Sensors are categorized as either active or passive instrumentation. Active instruments transmit their own radiation to detect an object or area for observation and receive the reflected or transmitted radiation. Active instruments include both imaging and non-imaging sensors. Imaging sensors include real and synthetic aperture radars; non-imaging sensors include altimeters and scatter-ometers. Active altimeters use either radar pulses or lasers for measuring altitude. Scatterometers use radar to determine wind speed and direction.

Passive instruments sense only radiation emitted by the object or reflected by the object from another source. The two types of passive sensors are imagers and sounders. Imagers measure and map sea-surface temperature, cloud temperature, and land temperature. Imager data are converted into pictures. Sounders are a special type of radiometer (instrument that quantitatively measure electro-magnetic radiation) which measure changes in atmospheric radiation relative to height (ground processing of this information produces temperature information), and changes in water vapor content of the air at various levels.

THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM

Radio frequency signals are electromagnetic waves that generally include frequencies above 10 KHz. The waves are usually generated by periodic currents of electric charges in wires, electron beams, or antenna surfaces. Radio and TV transmissions (collectively referred to as radio signals) work on a line-of-sight basis. Signal transmission and reception is dependent upon an unobstructed straight line that connects transmitters and receivers. Radio frequencies represent the different channels or stations that are broadcast—higher channels correspond to higher radio frequencies.

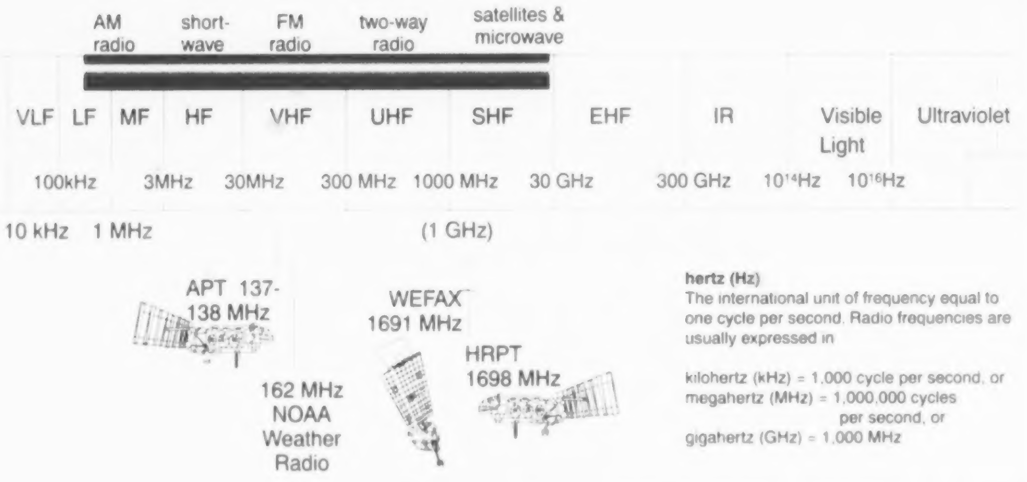
The waves most often received from satellites are in the range of 30 MHz up to 30 GHz. Those frequencies include the electromagnetic spectrum from Very High Frequency (VHF) to Super High Frequency (SHF).

U.S. polar-orbiting satellites broadcast Automatic Picture Transmission (APT) at 137 MHz, and GOES geostationary satellite Weather Facsimile (WEFAX) at 1691 MHz (see pages 92, 96).

The tracking and ranging capabilities of radio systems were known as early as 1889, when Heinrich Hertz showed that solid objects reflect radio waves. Bouncing signals off the ionosphere (upper atmosphere) increased the signal area, but the erratic atmosphere relayed signals of varying clarity. The radio signal area was also expanded by using series of transmitting towers, 31 to 50 miles apart. Oceans, deserts, and lack of towers all limited the relay.

In the early 1950s, U.S. army engineers unsuccessfully tried bouncing radio signals off the moon (resulting signals were diffused and unfocused). In 1960 NASA launched a satellite named Echo I to reflect radio signals. Since that first NASA launch, satellites have graduated from being passive reflectors to actively relaying signals and carrying sensors that obtain and relay additional information.

figure 44.


AM radio
short-wave
FM radio
two-way radio
satellites & microwave
VLF
LF
MF
HF
VHF
UHF
SHF
EHF
IR
Visible Light
Ultraviolet
100kHz
3MHz
30MHz
300 MHz
1000 MHz
30 GHz
300 GHz
10^{14}Hz
10^{16}Hz
10 kHz
1 MHz
(1 GHz)
APT 137-138 MHz
WEFAX 1691 MHz
HRPT 1698 MHz
162 MHz NOAA Weather Radio

hertz (Hz)
The international unit of frequency equal to one cycle per second. Radio frequencies are usually expressed in

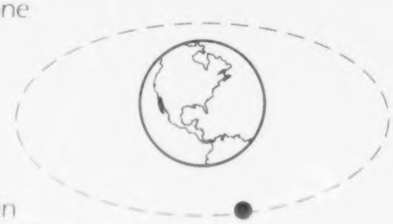
kilohertz (kHz) = 1,000 cycle per second, or
megahertz (MHz) = 1,000,000 cycles per second, or
gigahertz (GHz) = 1,000 MHz

TYPES OF ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITES AND ORBITS

Section 2

Environmental satellites operate in two types or orbits, geostationary and polar-orbiting.

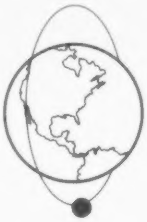
A geostationary (GEO = geosynchronous) orbit is one in which the satellite is always in the same position with respect to the rotating Earth. The satellite orbits at an elevation of approximately 35,790 kilometers (22,240 statute miles) because that produces an orbital period equal to the period of rotation of the Earth (actually 23 hours, 56 minutes, 04.09 seconds). By orbiting at the same rate, in the same direction as Earth, the satellite appears stationary (synchronous with respect to the rotation of the Earth).



Geostationary satellites provide a "big picture" view, enabling coverage of weather events, especially useful for monitoring severe local storms and tropical cyclones. Examples of geostationary satellites are the U.S. GOES, European METEOSAT, and the Japanese GMS.

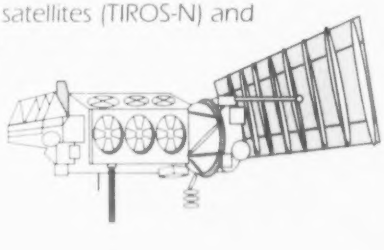
Because a geostationary orbit must be in the same plane as the Earth's rotation, that is the equatorial plane, it provides distorted images of the polar regions with poor spatial resolution. As you continue reading, note how the capabilities of the geostationary and polar-orbiting systems provide comprehensive coverage of Earth.

Polar-orbiting satellites provide a more global view of Earth, circling at near-polar inclination (a true polar orbit has an inclination of 90°). Orbiting at an altitude of 700 to 800 km, these satellites cover best the parts of the world most difficult to cover in situ (on site). For example, McMurdo, Antarctica can receive 11 or 12 of the 14 daily NOAA polar-orbiter passes.



The satellites operate in a sun-synchronous orbit, providing continuous Sun-lighting of the Earth-scan view. The satellite passes the equator and each latitude at the same time each day, meaning the satellite passes overhead at essentially the same solar time throughout all seasons of the year. This feature enables regular data collection at consistent times as well as long-term comparisons. The orbital plane of a sun-synchronous orbit must also rotate approximately one degree per day to keep pace with the Earth's surface.

Examples of polar-orbiting satellites are the U.S. NOAA satellites (TIROS-N) and the NASA Upper Atmosphere Research Satellite (UARS).



THE U.S. OPERATIONAL METEOROLOGICAL SATELLITES (METSAT) PROGRAM

Section 3

Two Federal Agencies are responsible for the U. S. meteorological satellites (also known as environmental or weather satellites).

Roles and Responsibilities*

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)

- Establish observational requirements
- Provide funding for program implementation
- Operate and maintain operational satellites
- Acquire, process, and distribute data products

National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA)

- Prepare program implementation plans
- Design, engineer, and procure spacecraft and instruments
- Launch the spacecraft
- Conduct on-orbit check-out before handover to NOAA

** As defined in the 1973 Department of Commerce, NASA Basic Agreement*

Organizational Assignments

NOAA

- NOAA is part of the Department of Commerce

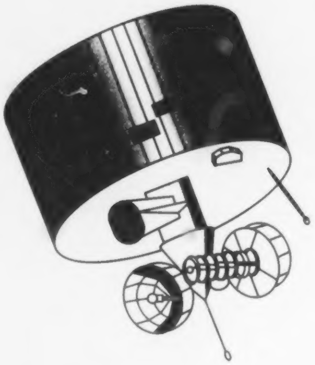
- Within NOAA, the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service (NESDIS) is responsible for the U.S. civil operational weather satellites and uses data from other programs such as the Defense Meteorological Satellite Program (DMSP).

NASA

- NASA Goddard Space Flight Center (GSFC) is responsible for program implementation.

GOES A-H GEOSTATIONARY SATELLITE

Background
- Alphabet label before launch (GOES-A, GOES-B)
- Numerical label after geostationary orbit achieved (GOES-6, GOES-7)



Weight
- Liftoff: 840 kg (1851 lbs)
- On orbit: 503 kg (1108 lbs)
- End of Life (EOL), spacecraft dry weight: 400 kg (881 lbs)

Size
- Main body: 1.5 m (4.8 ft) height
  2.1 m (7.0 ft) diameter
- Despun section: 2.0 m (6.7 ft) height [section that does not spin]

Orbit
- Equatorial, Earth-synchronous orbit

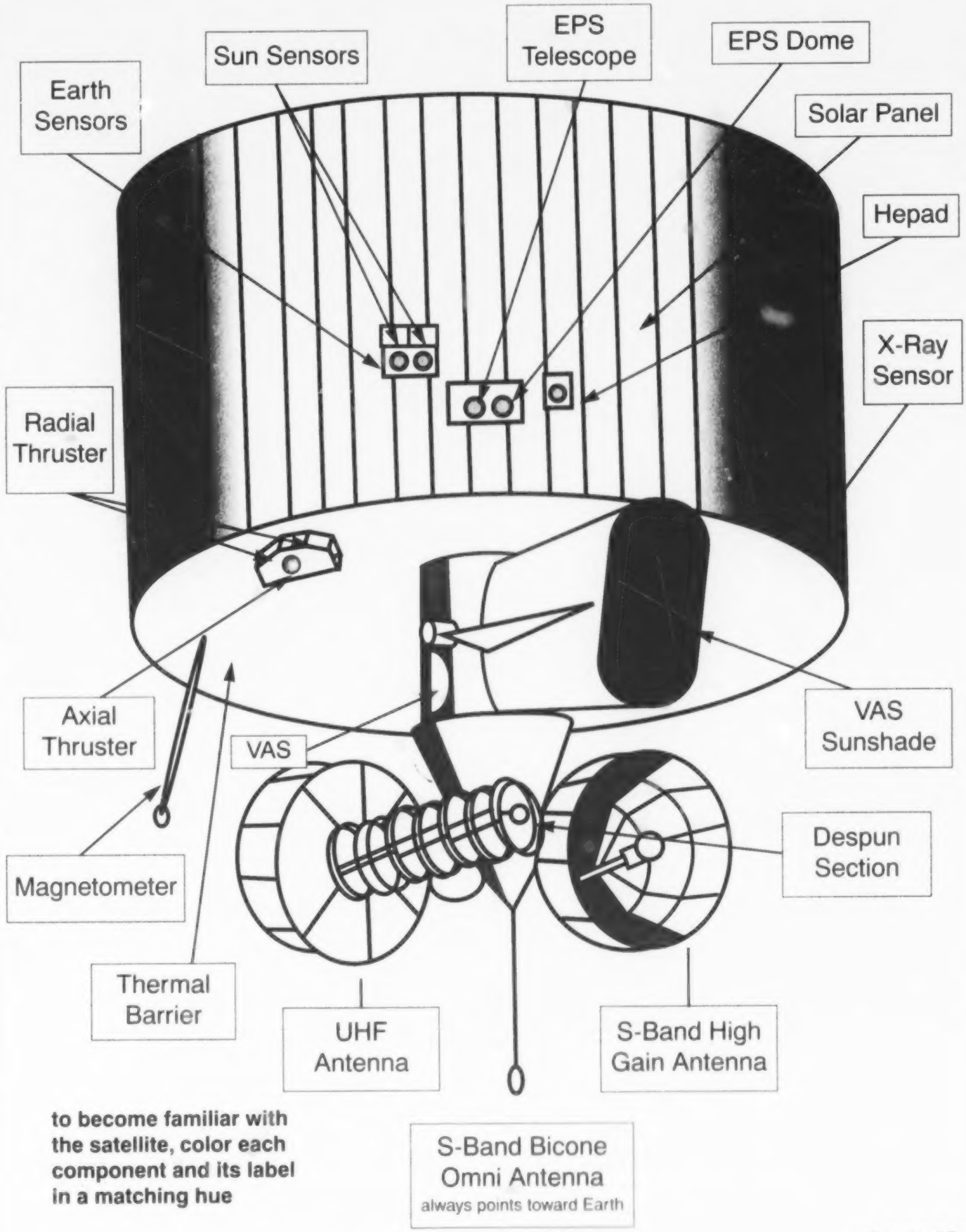
Uses
- Provides continuous day and night weather observations
- Monitors weather patterns and events such as hurricanes and other severe storms
- Relays environmental data from surface collection points to a processing center
- Performs facsimile transmission of processed weather data to users (WEFAX)
- Provides low-cost direct readout services; the low resolution version is called weather facsimile (WEFAX)
- Monitors the Earth's magnetic field, the energetic particle flux in the vicinity of the satellite, and x-ray emissions from the sun

Weather Facsimile (WEFAX) Description
- Uses the GOES spacecraft to relay low-resolution satellite imagery and meteorological charts to properly equipped ground stations in the Western Hemisphere

- Uses a transmission frequency (1691 MHz) in common with that of the European Space Agency's METEOSAT and Japan's GMS spacecraft

- Formatted in a 240 line/minute transmission rate, WEFAX transmissions occur 24 hours a day

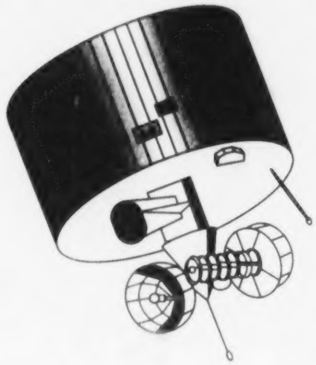
NOAA GOES A-H SATELLITE


Earth Sensors
Sun Sensors
EPS Telescope
EPS Dome
Solar Panel
Hepad
X-Ray Sensor
Radial Thruster
Axial Thruster
VAS
VAS Sunshade
Despun Section
Magnetometer
Thermal Barrier
UHF Antenna
S-Band High Gain Antenna
S-Band Bicone Omni Antenna
always points toward Earth

to become familiar with the satellite, color each component and its label in a matching hue

figure 45.

GOES 7 SATELLITE ELEMENTS



Axial Thruster

Used for positioning and station acquisition maneuvers, and maybe used for orbit control

Despun Section

Earth-oriented, helix dish antenna assemblies in section that does not spin

Earth sensors

Used for attitude determination during the transfer orbit and synchronous orbit, provides pitch, yaw, and roll information to maintain Earth-pointing

EPS dome

Covers the Energetic Particle Sensor

EPS telescope

Energetic Particle Sensor, measures low and medium-charged particles

High Energy Proton and Alpha Particle Detector (HEPAD)

Monitors protons in four energy ranges above 370 MeV (rest mass in electron-volts), and alpha particles in two energy ranges above 640 MeV/nucleon

Magnetometer

Measures the magnitude and field direction of energetic charged particles within the Earth's magnetosphere (within a specified range)

Radial Thrusters

Used for spin-rate control, range of 110-80 rpm

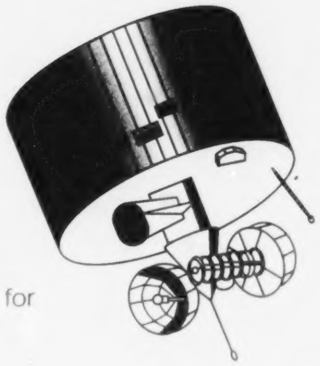
S-Band Bicone Omni Antenna

Part of telemetry and command subsystem

S-Band High Gain Antenna

Part of telemetry and command subsystem

Solar Panel



Primary source of spacecraft electrical power, designed so that normal satellite day light operation, plus required battery charging power can last for approximately seven years

Sun Sensors

Provides information on spacecraft spin rate and attitude with respect to the sun line, and provides reference pulses for the VAS system

Thermal Barrier

Assists in thermal control, which is accomplished by using passive energy balance techniques

Ultra High Frequency (UHF) Antenna

Used to receive Earth-based data

VISSR Atmospheric Sounder (VAS)

See next page

VAS Sunshade

Shades the VISSR Atmospheric Sounder

X-Ray Sensor (XRS)

Uses ion chamber detectors to measure ionospheric effects associated with solar flares

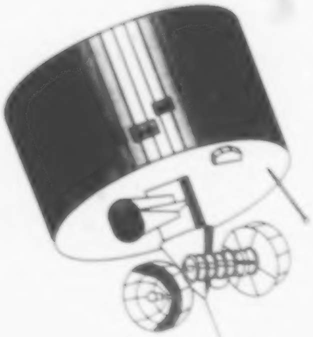
GOES 7 GEOSTATIONARY SATELLITES

Primary Systems

- **Visible-infrared Spin-Scan Radiometer (VISSR) Atmospheric Sounder (VAS)**
  provides visible, infrared, and sounding measurement of the Earth, including the presence of water vapor. Primary data from this instrument are used to estimate cloud top temperatures, sea surface temperatures, and precipitation; determine the vertical structure of the atmosphere; study weather systems; and observe severe weather outbreaks. VISSR allows for both day and night cloud cover imagery. Imaging in the visible portion of the spectrum has a resolution of 0.9 km, and in the infrared (IR) portion a resolution of 6.9 km. These images, together with images received from polar-orbiting satellites, are processed on the ground and then radioed back up to GOES for broadcast in graphic form as WEFAX. The VAS instrument can produce full-Earth disk images every 30 minutes, 24 hours a day.

- **Space Environment Monitor (SEM)**
  measures the condition of the Earth's magnetic field, solar activity and radiation around the spacecraft, and transmits these data to a central processing facility. SEM instruments measure the ambient magnetic field vector, solar X-ray flux, and the charged particle population. SEM sensors are designed to provide direct measurement of the effects of solar activity in such a manner that data will be available in real time for use in the generation of advisory or warning messages, and for forecasting and operational research.

- **Data Collection System (DCS)**
  gathers and relays environmental data made by sensors placed on various objects (both mobile and stationary at various locations). Examples of environmental data obtained from these sites include precipitation, river heights, ocean currents and temperatures, water pH, wind speed and direction, and barometric pressure.



NOAA GOES I-M SATELLITES

to become familiar with the satellite, color each component and its label in a matching hue

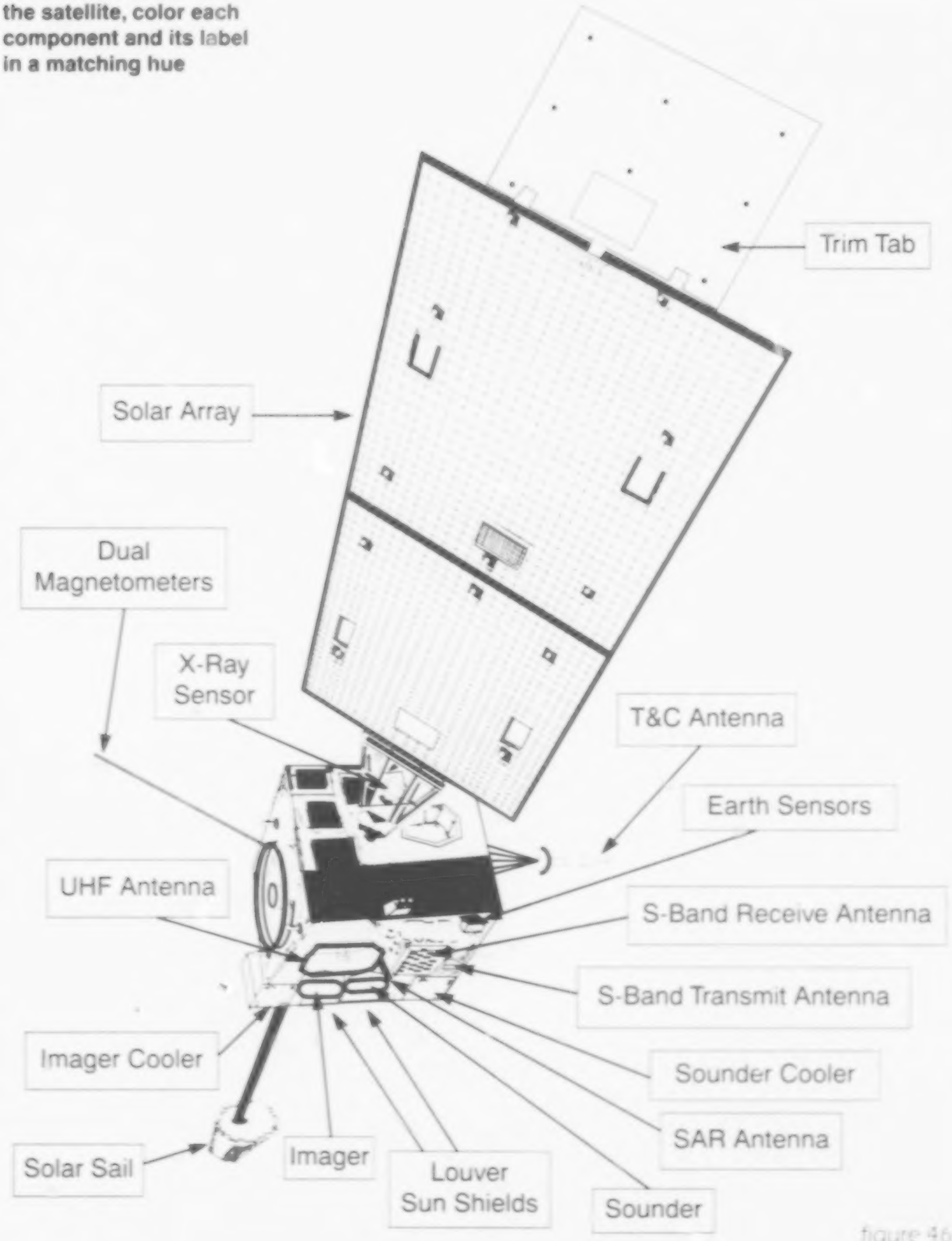
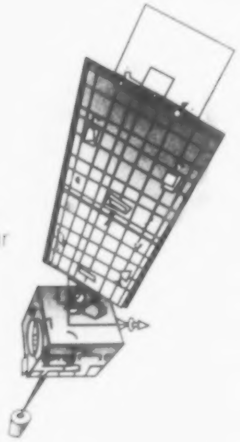

Trim Tab
Solar Array
Dual Magnetometers
X-Ray Sensor
T&C Antenna
Earth Sensors
UHF Antenna
S-Band Receive Antenna
S-Band Transmit Antenna
Imager Cooler
Sounder Cooler
SAR Antenna
Solar Sail
Imager
Louver Sun Shields
Sounder

figure 46

GOES I-M SATELLITE ELEMENTS



Earth Sensors

Detects Earth's horizon (Earth location).

Imager

Five-channel (one visible, four infrared) imaging radiometer designed to sense radiant and solar reflected energy from Earth. Provides full Earth scan to mesoscale area scans. Also provides star sensing capability.

Imager Cooler

Protects the imager from direct sunlight and contamination.

Louver Sun Shields

Passive louver assembly provides cooling during the direct sunlight portion of the orbit. A sun shield is installed on the Earth-end of the louver system to reduce incident radiation.

Magnetometers

Three-axis magnetometers for measuring the geomagnetic field; only one magnetometer can be powered at any time.

SAR Antenna

Search and Rescue Antenna detects distress signals broadcast by transmitters carried on general aviation aircraft and beacons aboard some marine vessels. It relays the distress signal (but cannot pinpoint the location of the signal) to a ground station that dispatches assistance.

S-Band Receive Antenna

Full Earth coverage beamwidth, it receives uplink data collection and Weather Facsimile (WEFAX) transmissions.

S-Band Transmit Antenna

Full Earth coverage beamwidth, it transmits data to the ground segment.

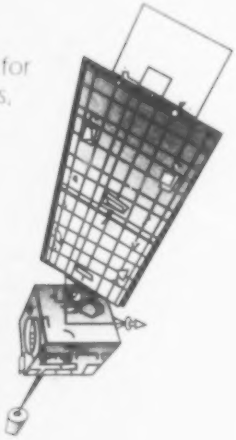
Solar Array

Two panel array that continuously rotates to track the sun during orbital motion, providing primary power for the satellite.

Solar Sail

Conical-shaped sail mounted on a 17 meter (58 foot) boom balances the torque caused by solar radiation pressure on the solar array.

Sounder



19-channel discrete-filter radiometer that senses specific radiation for computing atmospheric vertical temperature and moisture profiles, surface and cloud top temperature, and ozone distribution.

Sounder Cooler

Protects the sounder from direct sunlight and contamination.

Telemetry and Command Antenna

(T&C Antenna) Provides near omnidirectional coverage, enables functional interface between GOES satellite and ground command.

Trim Tab

Provides fine balance control for the solar radiation pressure.

UHF Antenna

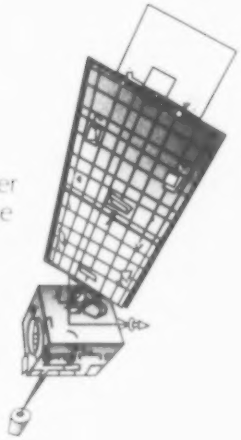
Dipole antenna with full Earth coverage beamwidth that receives data and search and rescue (SAR) signals, and transmits data collection signals.

X-Ray Sensor

X-ray telescope that measures solar X-ray flux in two spectral channels (short and long sun channels) in real-time.

GOES L-M

Primary Systems



- **Imager**
  is a five-channel (one visible, four infrared) imaging radiometer that senses radiant energy and reflected solar energy from the Earth's surface and the atmosphere. Position and size of an area scan are controlled by command, so the instrument is capable of full-Earth imagery and various area scan sizes within the Earth scene. The Imager also provides a star-sensing capability, used for image navigation and registration purposes.

- **Sounder**
  is a 19-channel discrete-filter radiometer that senses specific radiant energy for vertical atmospheric temperature and moisture profiles, surface and cloud top temperature, and ozone distribution. As does the Imager, the Sounder can provide full-Earth imagery, sector imagery, or local region scans.

- **Communications Subsystem**
  Includes Weather Facsimile (WEFAX) transmission and the Search and Rescue (SAR) transponder. Low-resolution WEFAX transmission includes satellite imagery from GOES and polar-orbiting satellites and meteorological charts uplinked from the Command and Data Acquisition (ground) Station. The SAR subsystem detects the presence of distress signals broadcast by Emergency Locator Transmitters carried on general aviation aircraft and by Emergency Position Indicating Radio Beacons aboard some classes of marine vessels. GOES relays the distress signals to a SAR Satellite-Aided Tracking ground station within the field-of-view of the spacecraft. Help is dispatched to downed aircraft or ship in distress.

- **Space Environment Monitor (SEM)**
  consists of a magnetometer, and X-ray sensor, a high-energy proton and alpha detector, and an energetic particles sensor, all used for in-situ surveying of the near-Earth space environment. The real-time data is provided to the Space Environment Services Center—the nation's space weather service—which receives, monitors, and interprets solar-terrestrial data and forecasts special events such as solar flares or geomagnetic storms. That information is important to the operation of military and civilian radio wave and satellite communication and navigation systems, as well as electric power networks, Space Shuttle astronauts, high-altitude aviators, and scientific researchers.

GEOSTATIONARY SATELLITE COVERAGE

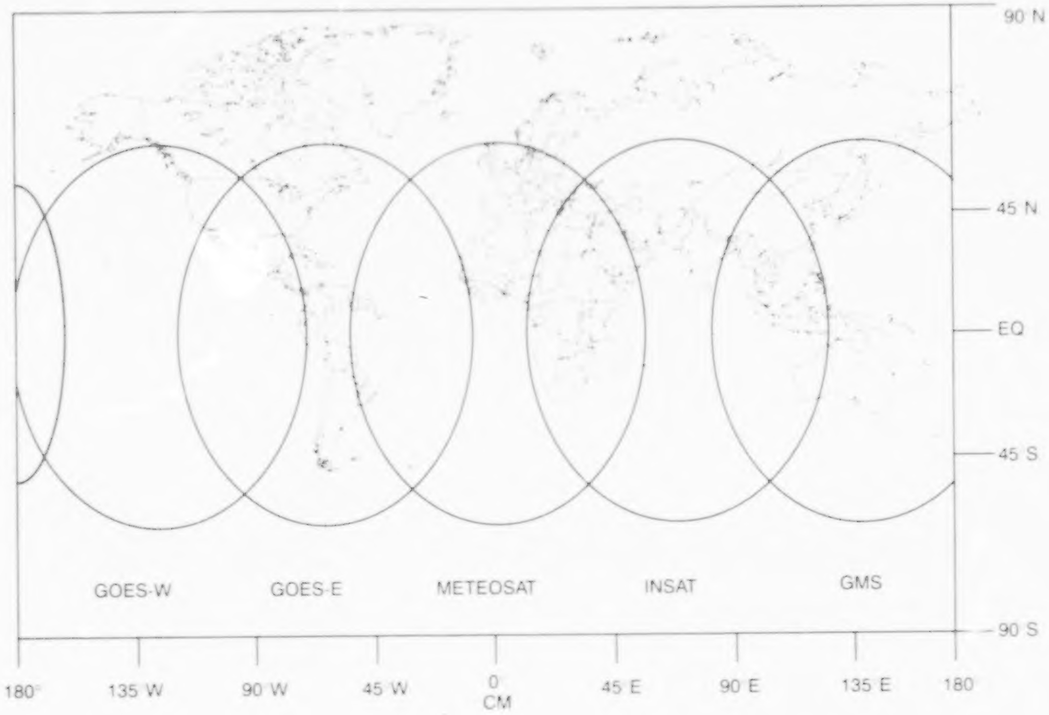

90 N
45 N
EQ
45 S
90 S
GOES-W
GOES-E
METEOSAT
INSAT
GMS
180°
135 W
90 W
45 W
0
CM
45 E
90 E
135 E
180

figure 47.

POLAR-ORBITING SATELLITES

TIROS-N

Designation

- Alphabet label before launch (NOAA-I, NOAA-J).
- Numerical label after launch(NOAA-13, NOAA-14)

Weight

- Range 2000–4000 lbs

Size

- Main body: 4.2 m (13.7 ft) length
  1.9 m (6.2 ft) diameter
- Solar array: 2.4 x 4.9 m (7.8 x 16.1 ft)

Payload Weight

- 854 lbs (386 kg)

Attitude Control

- Three-axis stabilized

Uses

- Provide operational coverage of entire Earth two times per day per satellite (morning and afternoon equator crossings), including the 70 percent of the Earth covered by water—where weather data are sparse

- Measure temperature and humidity in the Earth's atmosphere, sea-surface temperature, cloud cover, water-ice boundaries, snow cover, vegetation, ozone concentrations, energy budget parameters, and proton and electron flux near the Earth

- Receive, process, and retransmit data from buoys and remote automatic stations distributed around the globe

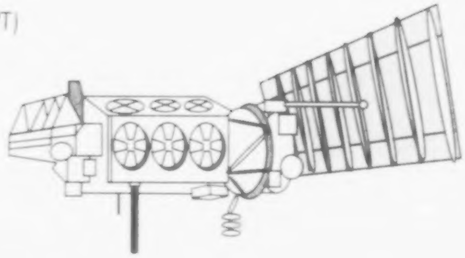
- Provide rapid relay of distress signals to rescue centers

Direct Data Readout Provided Via:

- High Resolution Picture Transmission (HRPT)

- Automatic Picture Transmission (APT)

- Direct Sounder Broadcast (DBS)



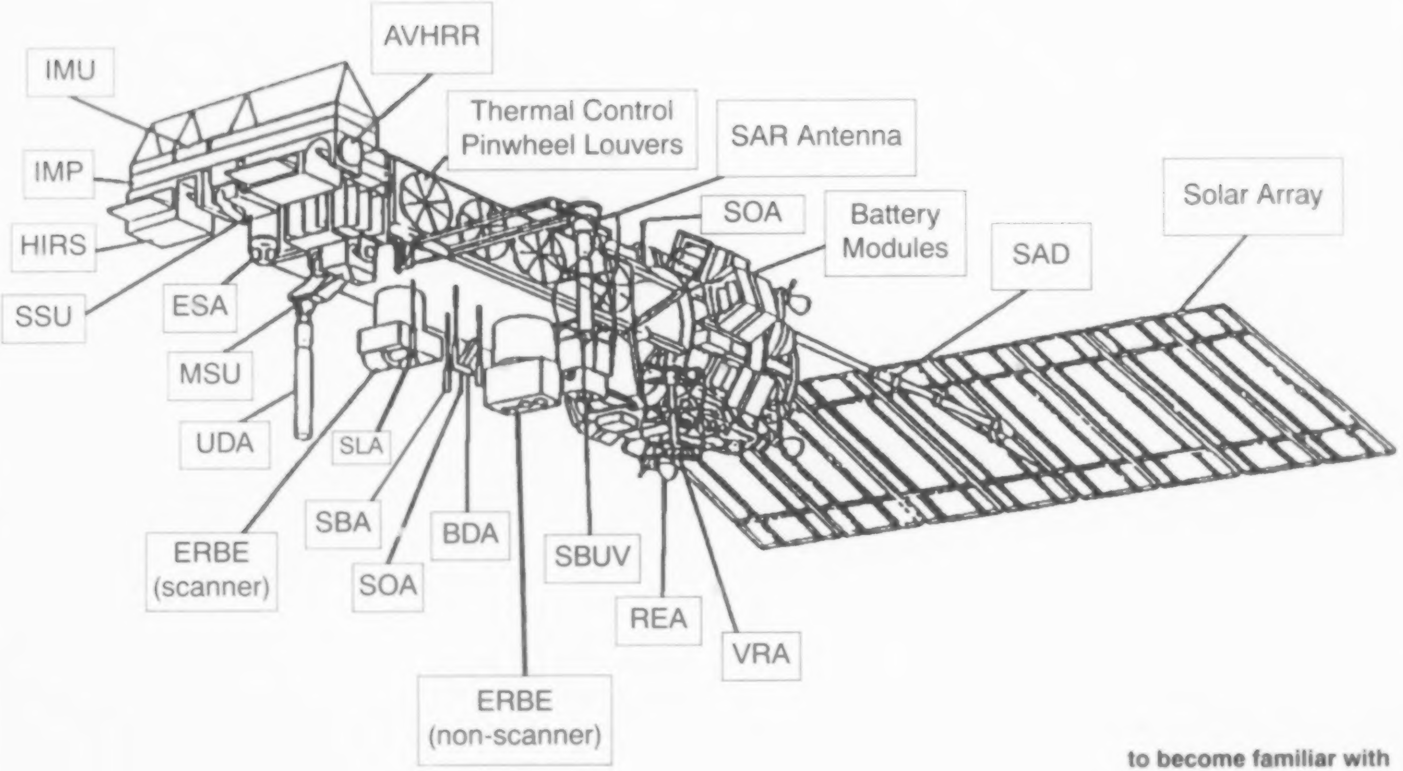
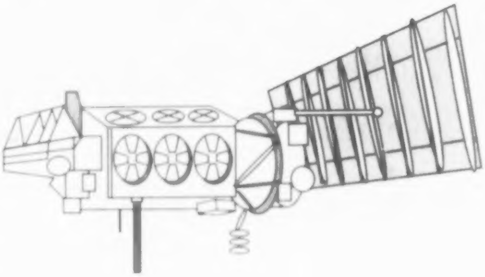

IMU
AVHRR
Thermal Control Pinwheel Louvers
SAR Antenna
IMP
SOA
Battery Modules
Solar Array
SAD
HIRS
SSU
ESA
MSU
UDA
SLA
SBA
BDA
SBUV
ERBE (scanner)
SOA
REA
VRA
ERBE (non-scanner)

figure 48

to become familiar with the satellite, color each component and its label in a matching hue

TIROS-N SATELLITE ELEMENTS

Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR)



A radiation-detection imager used for remotely determining ice, snow, and cloud cover information, and day and night sea surface temperature (has an accuracy of 0.5 degrees Celsius)

Array Drive Electronics

An electronics box containing all the electronics required for operation of the solar array drive

Battery Modules

Six, located around casing of second stage solid fuel motor

Beacon/Command Antenna (BDA)

Dual-use antenna for receiving commands from ground stations and transmitting telemetry to ground stations

Earth Sensor Assembly (ESA)

A static, infrared, horizon sensor which provides spacecraft pitch and roll data to the on-board attitude determination and control subsystem

Equipment Support Module

Contains computers, transmitters, tape recorders, preprocessors, etc

High Energy Proton and Alpha Particle Detector (HEPAD)

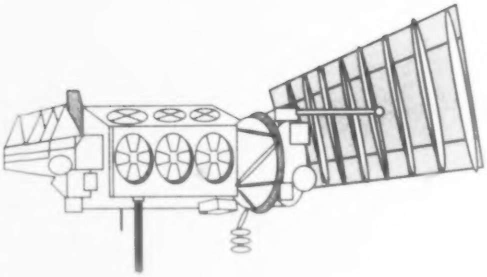
Senses protons and alpha particles in the 379 to 850 keV (thousand electron volts) range

High Resolution Infrared Radiation Sounder (HIRS)

Detects and measures energy emitted in the atmosphere to construct a vertical temperature profile from the Earth's surface to an altitude of 50 km. It measures incident radiation in 19 spectral regions of the IR spectrum and one visible region. Total ozone, and water vapor at three levels in the troposphere are measured

Hydrazine Tank

The spacecraft has two tanks containing hydrazine, which is used for thrusting



Inertial Measurement Unit (IMU)

Contains gyros and accelerometers to provide information for determining spacecraft attitude and position

Instrument Mounting Platform (IMP)

Highly stable structure used to hold some instruments and level with Earth to accuracy of 0.2 degrees

Instrument Mounting Platform Sunshade

Shading to protect instruments from the Sun

Medium Energy Proton and Electron Detector (MEPED)

Senses protons, electrons, and ions with energies from 30 keV (thousand electron volts) to several tens of MeV (million electron volts)

Microwave Sounding Unit (MSU)

A passive scanning microwave spectrometer with four frequency channels that measures the energy from the troposphere to construct a vertical temperature profile to an altitude of 20 km, and measures precipitation

Nitrogen Tank

Used for thrusting and to provide ullage (fills the tank the amount that the hydrazine propellant lacks being full to ensure proper flow) pressurant for the hydrazine propellant tanks. The spacecraft has two tanks containing nitrogen

Reaction System Support Structure

Second-stage motor, batteries, and fuel

Rocket Engine Assembly (REA)

Used for thrusting, the spacecraft has four hydrazine engines

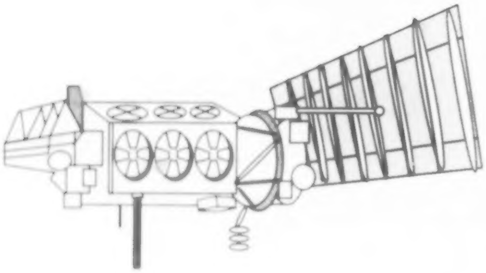
S-Band Real-time Antenna

Transmission at 665.4 kilobits per second

S-Band Omni Antenna (SOA)

Broadcasts relatively low-frequency microwave bands for transmitting instrument and spacecraft data to ground stations during boost phase and during on-orbit emergencies

Solar Array



Silicon solar cells, produce 340 watts of power for direct use or for storage in batteries (with excess radiated into space as heat)

Solar Array Drive Motor (SAD)

The drive motor is used to rotate the solar array so that the array continuously faces the Sun

Stratospheric Sounding Unit (SSU)

A step-scanned spectrometer which measures temperature in the upper stratosphere It senses energy in the 15 micrometer carbon dioxide absorption portion of the infrared spectrum, allowing for a study of the energy budget at the top of the atmosphere

Sun Sensor Detector (SSD)

A part of the Sun Sensor Assembly (SSA) which provides the Sun's position with respect to the spacecraft. The sun sensor is used to reinitialize the spacecraft yaw-attitude calculation once per orbit. (Yaw is the swinging on a vertical axis to the right or left above nadir, nadir is the point on Earth directly beneath a satellite)

Thermal Control Pinwheel Louvers

Three on each of four sides for TIROS-N thru NOAA-D. Four louvers per side for NOAA-E and newer satellites

UHF Data Collection System Antenna (UDA)

Antenna used to receive Earth-based platform and balloon System Antenna data, and to receive search and rescue data

VHF Real-Time Antenna (VRA)

Transmission at 2 kilohertz per second

TIROS-N
POLAR-ORBITING SATELLITES

Primary Systems

- **Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR)**
five-channel scanning radiometer sensitive in the visible, near-infrared, and infrared parts of the spectrum. Examples of its temperature-sensing include land, sea, and cloud-top temperature. It stores measurements on tape, and plays them back to NOAA's command and data acquisition stations. Provides the primary imaging system for both the High Resolution Picture Transmission (HRPT, 1.1 km resolution) and the Automatic Picture Transmission (APT, 4 km resolution) images that are transmitted by the spacecraft.

- **TIROS Operational Vertical Sounder (TOVS)**
combines data from three complementary instrument units (HIRS, MSU, and SSU to provide the following atmospheric data: temperature profile of the Earth's atmosphere from the surface to 10 millibars, water content, ozone content, carbon dioxide content, and oxygen content of the Earth's atmosphere.

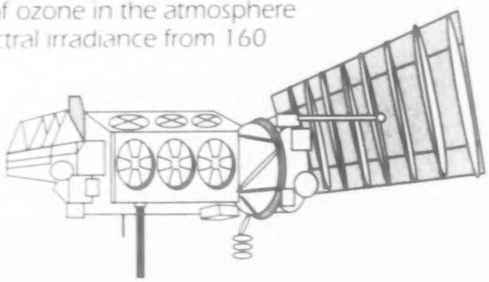
- **ARGOS Data Collection and Platform Location System**
French-provided system collects data from sensors on fixed and moving platforms and transmits various environmental parameters. Provides for the receipt, processing, and storage of data (temperature, pressure, altitude, etc.), and for the location of the moving platforms for later transmission to a central processing facility.

- **Space Environment Monitor (SEM)**
detects radiation at various energy levels in space, measuring energetic particles emitted by the Sun over essentially the full range of energies and magnetic field variations in the Earth's near-space environment. It measures the proton, alpha, and electron flux activity near the Earth.

- **Search and Rescue (SAR)**
equipment receives emergency distress signals and transmits the signals to ground receiving stations in the U.S. and overseas. Signals are forwarded to the nearest rescue coordination center.

- **Earth Radiation Budget Experiment (ERBE)**
radiometer that measures all radiation striking and leaving the Earth - enabling scientists to measure the loss or gain of terrestrial energy to space (NOAA 9 & 10 experiment).

- **Solar Backscatter Ultraviolet Experiment (SBUV)**
makes measurements (afternoon satellites only) from which total ozone concentration and vertical distribution of ozone in the atmosphere can be determined; measures solar spectral irradiance from 160 to 400 nanometers.



POLAR-ORBITING SATELLITE COVERAGE

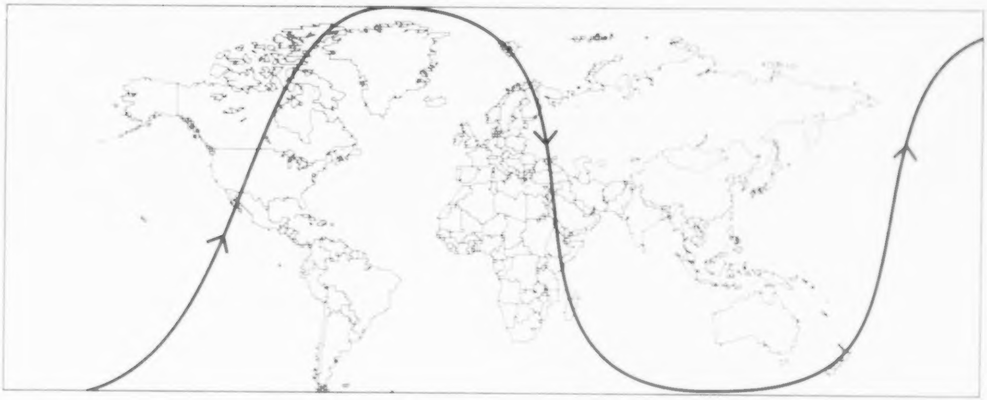


figure 49a. Single pass of a polar-orbiting satellite (on a globe, the satellite would orbit almost over the poles).

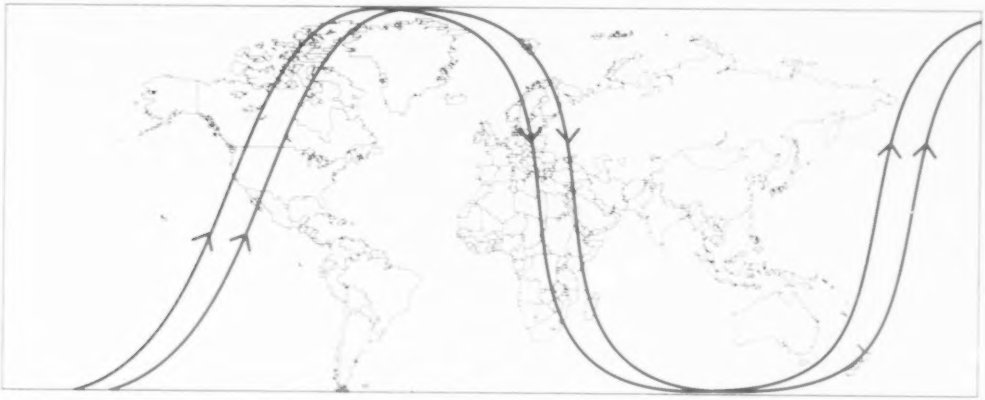


figure 49b. Two consecutive passes of a single polar-orbiting satellite.

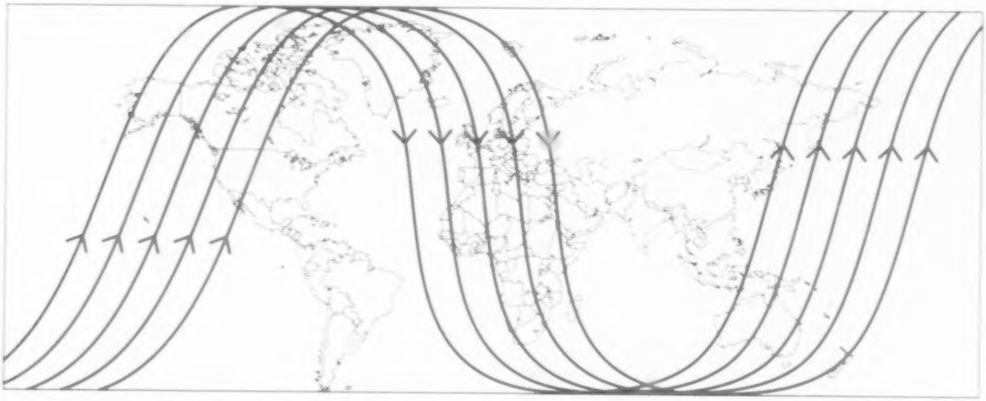
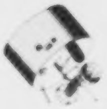


figure 49c. Five consecutive passes of a single polar-orbiting satellite show the ability to provide global coverage.

U.S. METEOROLOGICAL SATELLITE SYSTEMS
SATELLITE COMPARISON



	Geostationary	**Polar Orbiter**
	Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellite, (GOES)	Television Infrared Observation Satellite, (TIROS)
Basic Operation	Two satellite system covers area from North to South America, from Pacific to Atlantic locations	Maintains two satellites in Polar orbit at all times: N to S (morning satellite) S to N (afternoon satellite)
Coverage	Hemisphere/Quadrants	1,700 mile wide swath per pass
Major Missions	1. Earth Imaging & Data Collection 2. Space Environment Monitoring 3. Data Collection 4. WEFAX Transmissions *Primary Systems Include:* VISSR Visible Infrared Spin Scan Radiometer VAS Atmospheric Sounder SEM Space Environment Monitor DCS Data Collection System	1. AVHRR Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer SAR 2. TOVS TIROS Operational Vertical Sounder 3. DCS Data Collection System 4. SEM Space Environment Monitor 5. Search & Rescue 6. ERBE Earth Radiation Budget Experiment 7. SBUV Solar Backscatter Ultra Violet Radiometer
Orbit		
Altitude	35,790 km (22,240 miles)	833 km (518 miles) AM orbit, southbound 870 km (541 miles) PM orbit, northbound
Location	Clarke Belt* over Equator GOES East, 75° West GOES West, 135° West	9–11°, N to S, S to N, Sun-synchronous
Velocity	6,800 mph (24 hour period)	17,000 mph (101 minute period)
Direct Readout Data	WEFAX Weather Facsimile Transmission 8 km resolution, visible 4 km resolution, infrared	APT Automatic Picture Transmission 4 km resolution HRPT High Resolution Picture Transmission 1.1 km resolution
Image Timeliness	Near Real Time	Real Time Transmission
Reception antenna	Dish (4 feet +)	Omnidirectional or quadrifilar helix antenna
RF Signal	1691 + MHz (to down converter)	137–138 MHz
Processed Data Rate	240 lines/minute - 4 lines/second	120 lines/minute - 2 lines/second APT
Schedule	WEFAX guide	by prediction
Signal Availability	Scheduled per 24 hours	two satellites cover entire Earth at least four times daily

*See Glossary

chart courtesy of John Tillery

DIRECT READOUT FROM ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITES

Section 4

What is direct readout?

Direct readout is the capability to acquire information directly from environmental (also called meteorological or weather) satellites.

Data can be acquired from U.S. satellites developed by NASA and operated by NOAA, as well as from other nations' satellites.

How do I get direct readout?

By setting up a personal computer-based ground (Earth) station to receive satellite signals. See a station configuration in the Ground Station Set-up chapter on page 119. The electronic satellite signals received by the ground station are displayed as images on the computer screen.

Imagery can be obtained from both geostationary and polar-orbiting satellites. The low-resolution images (obtainable with the relatively inexpensive ground station equipment) from U.S. satellites are:

- Weather Facsimile or WEFAX images, transmitted by GOES satellites. WEFAX transmissions are not real-time: the images are first transmitted to NOAA for initial processing and then relayed back to the satellite for transmission to ground stations. The slight delay enables the inclusion of latitude and longitude gridding, geopolitical boundaries, weather forecast maps, temperature summaries, cloud analyses, polar-orbiter imagery, etc. WEFAX has a resolution* of 8 kilometers for visible images and 4 kilometers for infrared images. WEFAX images are broadcast on a fixed schedule, 24 hours a day.
- Automatic Picture Transmission or APT is available from polar-orbiting satellites. APT is real-time transmission, providing both visible and infrared imagery. The image obtained during a normal 14 minute reception period covers a swath approximately 1700 miles long. For example, a ground station in Baltimore will acquire an Eastern U.S. image bordered by Cuba (S), Quebec (N), Minnesota (W), and the Atlantic Ocean (E) from a typical satellite pass.

***Resolution** indicates the area represented by each picture element–pixel–in an image. The lower the number, the higher the resolution or detail. For example, the two maps in figure 50 represent images on a computer screen, each one with an equal number of pixels. However each pixel in the map on top might represent 100 miles, each pixel in the world map at bottom might have to represent 500 miles. So, the lower number (the fewer meters, acres, miles, etc.) represented by a single pixel, the higher the resolution.

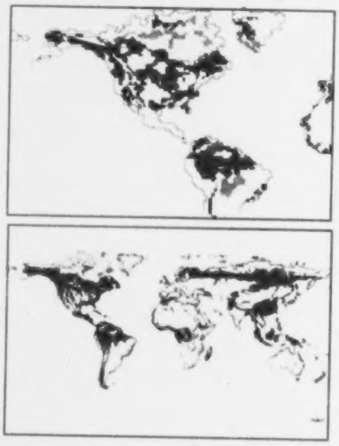


figure 50.

SAMPLE USES FOR DIRECT READOUT IN THE CLASSROOM

Basic Skills

1. world geography
2. universal coordinated time
3. latitude and longitude
4. map reading
5. remote sensing

Biology/Agriculture

1. use images for land management, land use decision-making
2. monitor flooding and changes in river systems
3. monitor crops and vegetative coverage, production
4. correlate rainfall and vegetation vigor
5. monitor forest fires and slash burning
6. monitor the impact of environmental disasters (oil spills, earthquakes, wars)

Geology

1. identify land formations, coast lines, and bodies of water
2. determine watersheds
3. locate and monitor volcanic activity and its affect on the atmosphere
4. compare land and water temperatures

Meteorology

1. observe and compare Earth and satellite views of Earth and clouds
2. observe clouds
3. develop cloud cover indexes for a specific region
4. identify fronts and characteristic associated patterns
5. develop weather forecasts
6. study upper air circulation and jet streams
7. compare seasonal changes in a specific region
8. track severe storms
9. produce monthly and annual weather comparisons

Oceanography

1. use IR images to study currents and sea surface temperatures
2. monitor ice coverage and compare seasonal changes
3. monitor moderating effects of oceans on land and meteorological effects

DIRECT READOUT FROM NOAA POLAR-ORBITING SATELLITES

The Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) on U.S. polar-orbiting satellites provides the primary imaging system for both High Resolution Picture Transmission (HRPT) and Automatic Picture Transmission (APT) direct readout.

The AVHRR scans with a mirror rotating at 360 rpm. With each rotation, deep space, Earth, and a part of the instrument housing are observed. The radiant energy collected by the mirror is passed through five separate optical sub-assemblies to five spectral windows (detectors). Each of the five detectors is sensitive to radiant energy within specific spectral regions. All five channels and telemetry data are transmitted at high speed as digital data for HRPT.

AVHRR data signals are combined, and pre-processed to achieve both bandwidth reduction and geometric correction before being transmitted as APT.

The analog APT system was designed to produce real time imagery on low-cost ground stations. The FM signal from the satellites contains a subcarrier, the video image itself, as a 2400 Hz tone which is amplitude modulated (AM) to correspond to the observed light and dark areas of an image.

The louder portion of the tone represents lighter portions of the image, low volumes represent the darkest areas of the image, and intermediate volumes represent shades of gray (middle tones).

channel	HRPT / APT*		
	spectral range**	wave length	application
1	0.58 to 0.68	visible	cloud delineation, snow & ice monitoring, weather
2	0.725 to 1.0	near infrared	sea surface temperature, locate bodies of water, in combination with channel 1—vegetation assessment
3	3.55 to 3.93	thermal infrared	landmark extraction, forest fire monitoring, volcanic activity, sea surface temperature (nighttime)
4	10.3 to 11.3	thermal infrared	sea surface temperature, weather, soil, moisture, volcanic eruptions
5	11.4 to 12.4	thermal infrared	sea surface temperature, weather

* Any two AVHRR channels can be chosen by ground command for APT transmission.
** In micrometers (µm)

figure 51

Satellite imagery is produced by sensors that detect electromagnetic waves emitted or reflected by a surface and measure their intensity in different parts of the spectrum. Because all substances absorb and reflect light differently, varying light and temperature are recorded as black, white, and shades of gray in a image. APT imagery is available from the visible or infrared segments of the electromagnetic spectrum.

All visible images of Earth record sun light (solar radiation) that is reflected by Earth—Earth does not emit visible light of its own. APT images show these differences in absorption and reflectivity (albedo) as different shades of gray. Subjects with highest albedo (greatest reflectivity) appear white in visible images, clouds show up as white or gray, outer space is black.

Infrared images are derived from two sources of infrared energy, thermal emissions (primary source) and reflected solar radiation. Thermal infrared emissions are the energies which are emitted from the Earth. Reflected solar infrared radiation is the energy which is given off by the sun and reflected from the Earth or clouds. Both of these types of energy are seen on an image as varying shades which correspond to particular temperatures. The warmer the temperature, the darker the shade in the image. The cooler the temperature, the lighter the shade. In an infrared image, the blackness of outer space (cold) is displayed as white. Hot spots, such as urban sprawl, appear as dark gray or black.

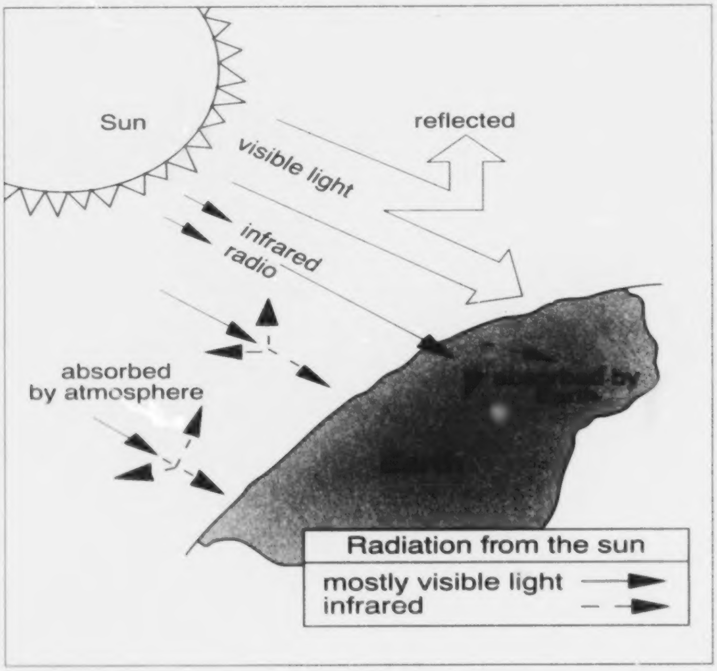
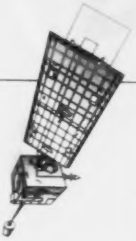
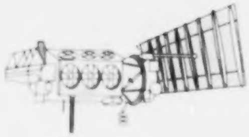


figure 52. albedo: ratio of the outgoing solar radiation reflected by an object to the incoming solar radiation incident upon it.

ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITE FREQUENCIES





GOES		1691 MHz
NOAA 11* (afternoon)	APT	137.62 MHz
NOAA 12 (morning)		137.5 MHz
NOAA HRPT		1698 MHz
METEOR (Russian)		137.85 137.4 137.3 MHz

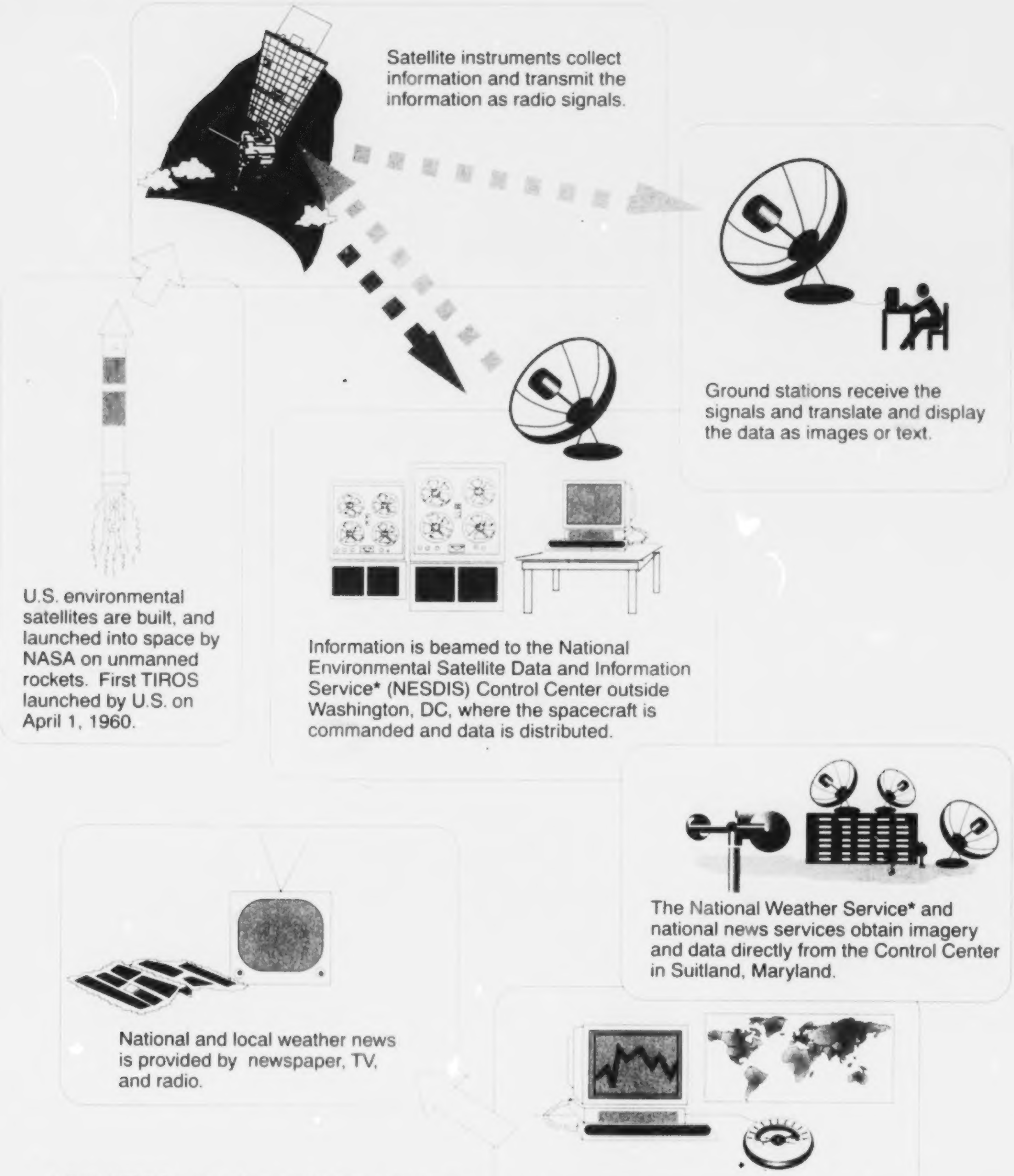
U.S. polar-orbiting morning satellites generally transmit at 137.5 MHz, afternoon satellites transmit at 137.62 MHz. U.S. satellites are launched with the capability to transmit at both frequencies (2 APT and 2 HRPT frequencies are available for ground control to chose from on each polar orbiter). Note that the U.S. uses a two-polar-satellite system to provide complete Earth coverage; existing satellites in standby mode can be activated to replace the designated satellites if needed.

* pending successful instrument checkout, the recently launched NOAA 14 will replace NOAA 11 as the designated afternoon satellite.

NOAA Weather Radio	162.550 MHz 162.525 162.500 162.475 162.450 162.425 162.400

Hertz is the unit for measuring the frequency of any radiated signal.
One Hertz equals one cycle per second
One Kilohertz (kHz) equals 1,000 cycles per second
One Megahertz (MHz) equals 1,000,000 cycles per second

SATELLITE-DELIVERED WEATHER



Satellite instruments collect information and transmit the information as radio signals.

Ground stations receive the signals and translate and display the data as images or text.

U.S. environmental satellites are built, and launched into space by NASA on unmanned rockets. First TIROS launched by U.S. on April 1, 1960.

Information is beamed to the National Environmental Satellite Data and Information Service* (NESDIS) Control Center outside Washington, DC, where the spacecraft is commanded and data is distributed.

The National Weather Service* and national news services obtain imagery and data directly from the Control Center in Suitland, Maryland.

National and local weather news is provided by newspaper, TV, and radio.

The National Weather Service analyzes the information and distributes it to local users.

* *Both NESDIS and the National Weather Service are branches of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). NOAA controls and operates the environmental satellites once they are in orbit.*

figure 53.

WEATHER FORECASTS IMPACT...

Agriculture

- weed and pest control - cost to re-spray due to rain wash-off, $8– $10/acre
- harvesting - freezing, rainy, and excessively hot weather can damage harvest
- drought can generate large irrigation bills, damage harvest

Building Industry

- concrete pouring
- exterior painting
- roofing
- erecting steel structures
- material stockpiling
- excavation
- hurricanes and tornadoes can necessitate extensive rebuilding

Marine Industry

- erection or disassembly of off-shore oil platforms requires 3-5 days of reasonably calm waters
- fishing days regulated. Wrong choice of days reduces yield
- towing operations require 3-5 day forecast
- industry depends on 3-5 forecast for safe and efficient operations

Utilities Management

- electric companies use forecasts to anticipate peak loads. Poor forecasts and anticipation can result in brown-outs and total power loss at a high dollar penalty
- gas companies pay for guaranteed delivery and usage. If usage exceeds guarantee, they pay a large penalty
- customers pay for poor peak-load predictions

Other Industries

- transportation industries (airlines, bus, railroad trucking) affected by flooding, ice, blizzards
- professional sports, recreational businesses impacted by inclement weather
- forestry services, logging industry impacted by drought, fire, ice

ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITES OF OTHER NATIONS

The world's environmental satellites provide an international network of global weather observations. Satellites of many countries provide data and services similar to those contributed by the United States, such as operational weather data, cloud cover, temperature profiles, real-time storm monitoring, and severe storm warnings. Their data contributes to the study of climate and the environment on both regional and global scales.

Geostationary satellites include:

Geostationary Meteorological Satellite (GMS), Japan

INSAT, India
Indian national satellite, satellite data not available.

METEOrological SATellite (METEOSAT), Europe
launched by the European Space Agency (sixteen member countries) and operated by Eumetsat (European Organization for the Exploitation of Meteorological Satellites), they send data on the same frequency as GOES (1691 MHz), as well as at 1694.5 MHz

Polar-orbiting satellites include:

METEOR Satellites, Russia
METEOR 2 satellites send a single picture (visible images at a rate of 120 lines/minute) as compared to the two (visible and infrared) that NOAA satellites send. The satellites are near-polar (not sun-synchronous) at an altitude of 900 km, with an inclination of 81.2 degrees.

The black and white bars that are visible along the edge of the Russian direct readout imagery are created by sync pulses and can be used to identify the particular satellite providing the imagery. The bars may also contain data on instrument characteristics and gray scale calibration. Images may display clouds in great detail, but land and water boundaries are difficult to distinguish without extreme video processing. Newer, METEOR 3-series satellites have an infrared imaging system.

SATELLITE REVIEW QUESTIONS

name ______________________________

1. A satellite is a free-flying object that orbits:

   a. the Earth b. the Sun c. the other planets d. any of the above

2. What are the strengths of *remote sensing*?

3. A geosynchronous satellite appears stationary relative to ______________.

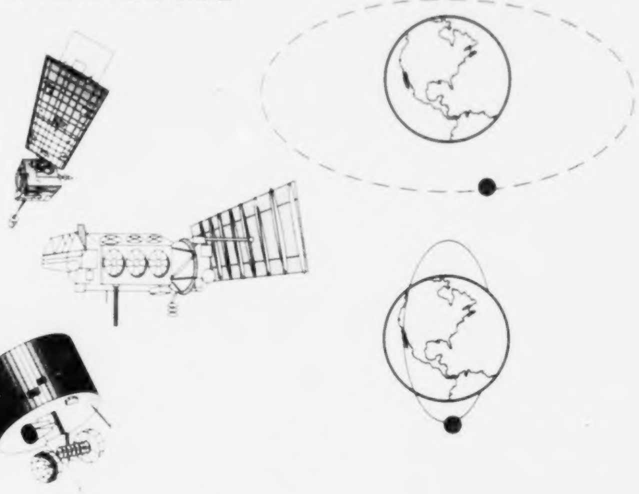
4. A polar-orbiting satellite transverses the ______________ and the ______________.

5. Match the satellites with their names and orbits

   GOES 7

   GOES I-M

   TIROS-N



6. Compare the roles and responsibilities of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) with the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) in the operation of the United States' Meteorological Satellite program.

7. Briefly discuss the type of data provided by the following systems on GOES satellites.

   a. Visible-Infrared Spin-Scan Radiometer (VISSR)

   b. Space Environment Monitor (SEM)

   c. Data Collection System (DCS)

SATELLITE REVIEW QUESTIONS (CONTINUED)

8. Briefly discuss the type of data provided by the following systems on polar-orbiting satellites.

   a. Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR)

   b. TIROS operational Vertical Sounder (TOVS)

   c. ARGOS Data Collection and Platform Location System

   d. Space Environment Monitor(SEM)

   e. Earth Radiation Budget Experiment (ERBE)

   f. Solar Backscatter Ultra-Violet Radiometer (SBUV)

9. You want to predict possible precipitation for the next four days. Which type of satellite images would be more helpful to you, GOES or POLAR? Explain your choice.

10. You want to study the seasonal surface temperatures of the Atlantic coast waters to assist commercial fishing operations. Which type of polar-orbiting satellite images (visible or infrared) would be most helpful to you? Explain why.

For Group Discussion

You and the state committee that you chair are given the responsibility for determining which types of hazardous weather are most likely to affect your state's parks and recreational activities. In addition to identifying threatening conditions, you must prioritize the use of state money allocated for prevention and recovery. What conditions most jeopardize your state and what measures will you take to minimize or recover from weather damage?

COMPARATIVE REVIEW OF SATELLITES

	Geostationary	Polar-orbiter
1. basic operation		
2. type of data received		
3. distance from the Earth		
4. orbit location		
5. spacecraft velocity		
6. reception		
7. RF signal		
8. processed data rate		
9. signal availability		
10. image format		

SUGGESTED ANSWERS FOR REVIEW QUESTIONS (P 100–101)

1. d. any of the above

2. Remote sensing is the technology of acquiring data and information about an object or phenomena by a device that is not in physical contact with it. In other words, remote sensing refers to gathering information about the Earth and its environment from a distance. Using remote sensing enables measurement of inaccessible and/or accessible but too-costly-to-cover-subjects; it can provide a unique perspective (such as satellite images of the globe); and it can enable continuous monitoring of a subject.

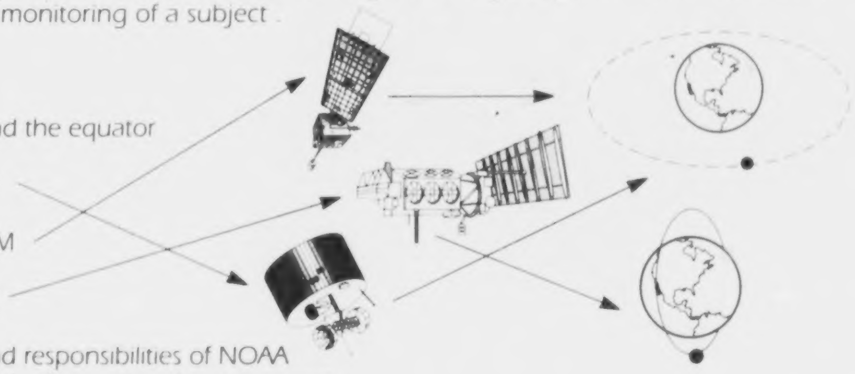
3. Earth

4. poles and the equator

5. GOES 7

   GOES I-M

   TIROS-N



6. Roles and responsibilities of NOAA
   - establish observational requirements
   - provide funding for program implementation
   - operate and maintain operational satellites
   - acquire, process, and distribute data products
   - responsible for U.S. civil, operational weather satellites

   Roles and responsibilities of NASA
   - prepare hardware implementation plans
   - design, engineer, and procure spacecraft and instruments
   - provide for launch of spacecraft
   - conduct on-orbit check-out before handover to NOAA
   - Goddard Space Flight Center responsible for implementation

7. See page 78 for data from VISSR, SEM, and DCS.

8. See page 89 for data from AVHRR, TOV, ARGOS, SEM, ERBE, and SBUV.

9. GOES. Because the images provide greater coverage of the Earth (hemisphere/quadrants) and the signals are available 24 hours a day. You are able to see patterns of clouds over a much larger area than that provided by a polar satellite (a 1700 mile swath). GOES images will be more helpful in predicting fronts, cyclone paths, etc.

10. Infrared images would be more helpful because you would be able to determine the temperature of the water's surface with infrared images. Knowing the water temperature would be helpful in predicting where the fish would be concentrated along the coast for more efficient fishing.

Group Discussion: Students should determine the various terrain and types of recreational activities popular in their state, and the types of hazardous weather common to their state (hurricanes, tornadoes, blizzards, flooding, drought, etc.). Page 98 provides some background information for consideration.

ANSWER KEY, COMPARATIVE REVIEW OF SATELLITES

	Geostationary	Polar-orbiter
1. basic operation	Two satellite system covers area from North to South America, from Pacific to Atlantic locations	Two satellites in Polar orbit at all times: N to S (morning satellite) S to N (afternoon satellite)
2. type of data received	visual and infrared	Day: visual and infrared Night: infrared
3. distance from the Earth	35,790km (22,240 miles)	833 km (518 miles) AM orbit, southbound 870 km (541 miles) PM orbit, northbound
4. orbit location	Clarke Belt over Equator GOES East, 75° West GOES West, 135° West	N>S, S>N, Sun-synchronous
5. spacecraft velocity	6800 MPH (24 hour period)	17,000 mph (101 minute period)
6. reception	Dish (4 meter +)	Omni directional or quadrifilar helix antenna
7. RF signal	1691 + MHz (to down converter)	137–138 MHz
8. processed data rate	240 lines/minute - 4 lines/second	120 lines/minute - 2 lines/second
9. signal availability	24 hours	101 to 102 minutes between accessibility, two satellites each view entire Earth at least twice daily
10. image format	24 hour period Hemisphere/Quadrants	1,700 Mile Swath

ORBITS

An orbit is the path in space along which an object moves around a primary body. In the case of environmental satellites, the satellite moves around the primary body Earth.

Bodies in space or low-Earth orbit are governed by laws of gravity and motion, just as life on Earth is. These laws make it possible to determine how, where, and why satellites will be. Orbital mechanics utilizes a standard set of reference points and terms that make it possible to pinpoint a body in space and describe its unique location and motion.

The ability to understand and predict the location of satellites is essential for obtaining direct readout from polar-orbiting environmental satellites. Geostationary orbits must also be located. However, because they remain in the same position relative to Earth, orbital information doesn't need to be regularly updated.

This section describes the basics of orbital mechanics, the Keplerian elements, procedures for tracking satellites, and resources for orbital data.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

ORBITS

Section 1 Newton 107
    Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation
    Newton's Laws of Motions

Section 2 Kepler 109
    Kepler's Laws of Motion
    Keplerian Elements

Section 3 Orbital Data 112
    Description of NASA Orbital Data
    Obtaining NASA Orbital Data from NASA
    Other Sources for Satellite Data

Section 4 Satellite Tracking Programs 116

SIR ISAAC NEWTON

Section 1

Sir Isaac Newton was born on Christmas day, 1642—the same year that Galileo Galilei died. His life-long intolerance of contradiction and controversy is attributed to an early, lengthy separation from his mother who was widowed shortly before Isaac's birth. She left Isaac in the care of his grandmother to remarry, live in the next town, and start a new family consisting of another son and two daughters.

As a teenager, Isaac's preoccupation with reading, experimentation, and observation was an irritant to his affluent, now twice-widowed mother who expected Isaac to become a gentlemen farmer. Apparently she was reluctant to have Isaac attend university, perhaps concerned about both the farm he had inherited and the cost of additional education. He entered Cambridge as a sizar (a student who waited on other students to pay his way), a step down from his social class and his mother's financial standing.

Newton's university studies were interrupted in 1665 and 1666 by the closure of Cambridge University because of bubonic plague. During this period, he left London and studied at home, doing extensive work in optics, laying the foundation for calculus—and perhaps his law of gravity. Experts disagree about the timing, some claiming another 13 years passed before Newton's ideas on gravity crystallized. In either case, Newton's achievements at this early age were substantial, although his undergraduate career was undistinguished.

Newton conducted research in theology and history with the same passion that he pursued science and alchemy throughout his life. Some consider him the culminating figure of the 17th century scientific revolution.

Newton's intense dedication to his intellectual pursuits took a toll on his physical and mental health, apparently causing at least two breakdowns during his life. He died in 1727 and is buried in the nave of Westminster Abbey.

Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation

The force of gravitational attraction between two point masses (m1 and m2) is proportional to the product of the masses divided by the square of the distance between them. In this equation, G is a constant of proportionality called the gravitational constant.

$$F = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2}$$

The closer two bodies are to each other, the greater their mutual attraction. As a result, to stay in orbit, a satellite needs more speed in lower orbit than in a higher orbit.

All orbits— Earth around the Sun, satellites around Earth, etc., follow the same laws of gravity and motion.

Newton's Laws of Motion

1. An object continues in a state of rest or uniform motion unless acted on by an external force.

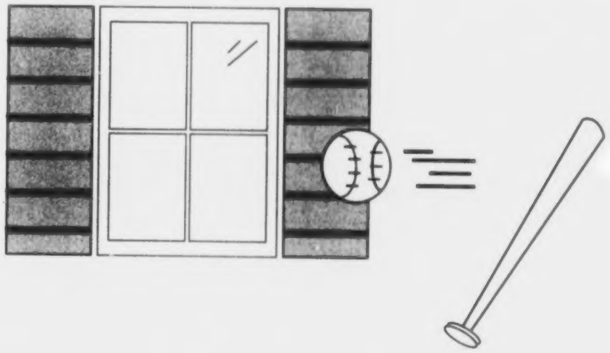


figure 54a.

2. The resultant force acting on an object is proportional to the rate of change of momentum of the object, the change of momentum being in the same direction as the force.

The time rate of change of momentum

(mass x velocity)

is proportional to the impressed force. In the usual case where the mass does not change, this law can be expressed in the familiar form:

force = mass x acceleration or

F = ma.

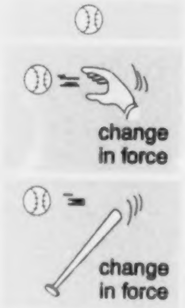


figure 54b.

3. To every force or action, there is an equal and opposite reaction.

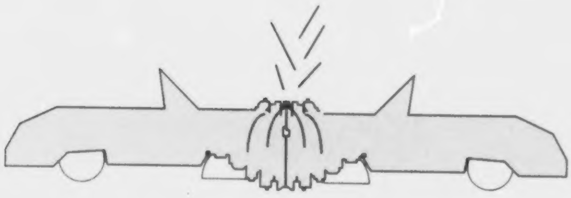


figure 54c.

JOHANNES KEPLER

Section 2

Johannes Kepler—German astronomer [1571-1630] derived three laws that describe the motions of the planets around our Sun, the moon around the Earth, or any spacecraft launched into orbit.

Early frail health seemed to destine Kepler for the life of a scholar. He was born into a dysfunctional, chaotic family and spent his lonely childhood with a variety of illnesses. He had myopia and multiple vision—unfortunate afflictions for the eyes of an astronomer.

Kepler intended to dedicate himself to the service of the Protestant church, but his independence, lack of orthodoxy, and disagreeableness led his university teachers to recommend him as a mathematics professor to a school some distance away. During this period, astronomy became an important focus.

Early writings of Kepler's attracted the attention of Tycho Brahe, the Danish astronomer. Kepler joined Brahe's staff in 1601. When Brahe died the following year, Kepler inherited Brahe's meticulous astronomical observations—considered critical to Kepler developing his first two laws of motion. Within days of Brahe's death, Kepler was appointed Brahe's successor as imperial mathematician of the Holy Roman Empire, a position Kepler held until his death.

Kepler was a transitional figure between ancient and modern science. Astrology often played an important, and sometimes dominant role in his life.

Kepler's laws stirred little interest for decades, only Newton seemed to realize their value. Kepler's laws describe how planets move. Newton's law of motion describes why the planets move according to Kepler's laws. Kepler himself never numbered these laws or specially distinguished them from his other discoveries. Kepler's laws apply not only to gravitational forces, but also to all other inverse-square law forces.

In the last decade of his life, Kepler wandered in search of a haven or a patron. In the fall of 1630, Kepler rode across half of Germany to collect pay and arrears due him. The exertion of the trip was responsible for Kepler's illness and death in Regensburg on November 15, 1630. He was buried outside the town walls. Subsequent conquest of the city decimated the cemetery and left the site of Kepler's grave unknown.

Kepler laws of motion

1. A planet moves about the Sun in an elliptic orbit, with one focus of the ellipse located at the Sun.

   An elliptical orbit is shown, the semi-major axis (a) determines its size and the eccentricity (e) its shape. Neither Kepler nor anyone else yet understood that a mass will continue to move in a straight line through space, so no force is needed to drive a body around its orbit— only a Sun-centered force to hold it in orbit (Newton) or a Sun-centered spacetime curvature (Einstein) (figure 55a).

2. A straight line from the Sun to the planet sweeps out equal areas in equal times (figure 55b).

   The constant rate of sweeping out may be different for each orbit.

3. The time required for a planet to make one orbital circuit, when squared, is proportional to the cube of the major axis of the orbit (figure 55c).

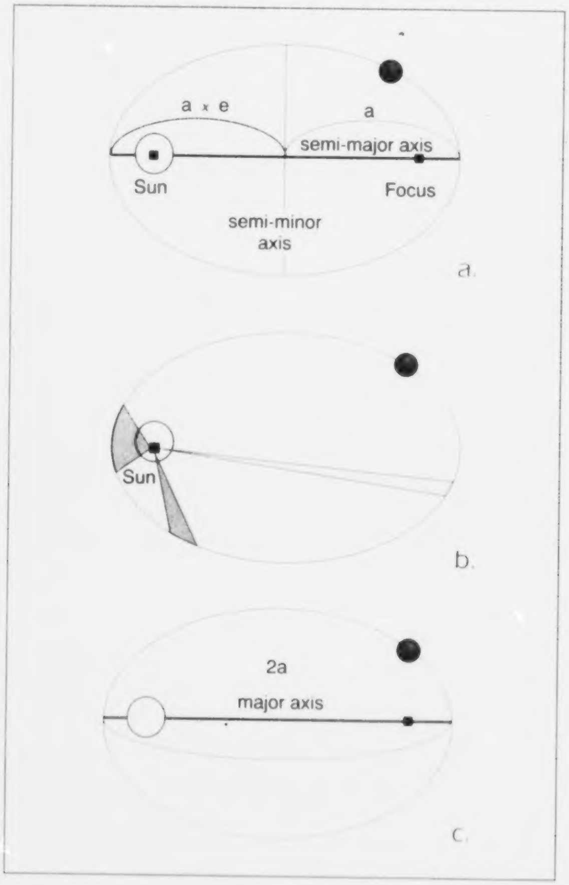


figure 55.

Keplerian elements

Also known as satellite orbital elements, Keplerian elements are the set of six independent constants which define an orbit—named for Johannes Kepler. The constants define the shape of an ellipse or hyperbola, orient it around its central body (in the case of environmental satellites the central body is Earth), and define the position of a satellite on the orbit. The classical orbital elements are:

Keplerian elements

a: semi-major axis, gives the size of the orbit,

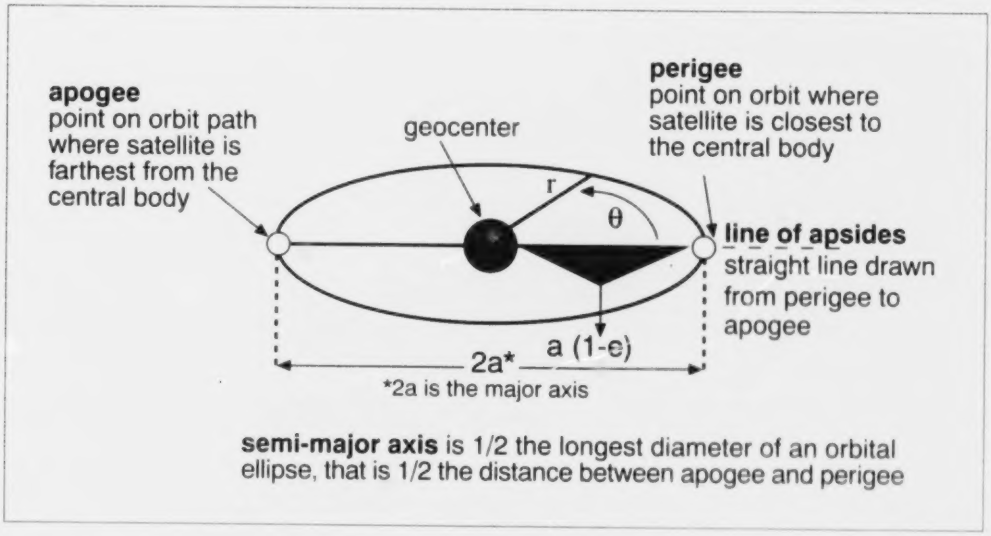
e: eccentricity, gives the shape of the orbit,

i: inclination angle, gives the angle of the orbit plane to the central body's equator,

Ω: right ascension of the ascending node, which gives the rotation of the orbit plane from reference axis,

ω: argument of perigee is the angle from the ascending nodes to perigee point, measured along the orbit in the direction of the satellite's motion,

θ: true anomaly gives the location of the satellite on the orbit.


apogee
point on orbit path where satellite is farthest from the central body
geocenter
perigee
point on orbit where satellite is closest to the central body
r
θ
line of apsides
straight line drawn from perigee to apogee
a (1-e)
2a*
*2a is the major axis

semi-major axis is 1/2 the longest diameter of an orbital ellipse, that is 1/2 the distance between apogee and perigee

figure 56.

ORBITAL DATA

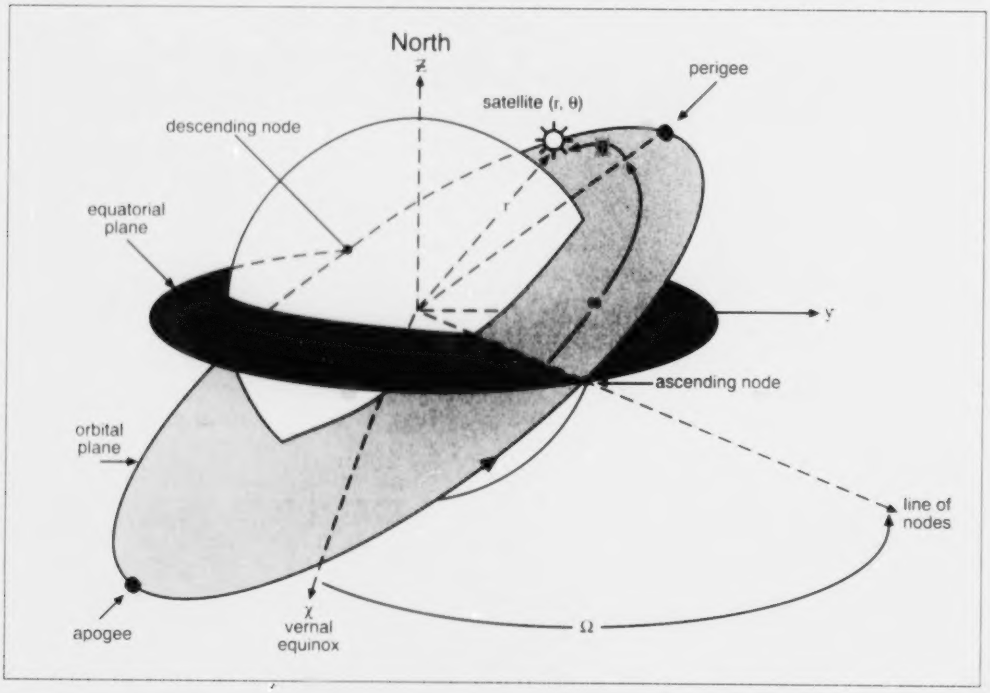
Section 3

Keplerian elements make it possible to describe a satellite's orbit and locate a satellite on its orbit at a particular time. In addition to furnishing a universal language for chronicling and pinpointing satellites, these elements provide the information necessary to predict the passage of specific satellites. That ability is essential to users of direct readout from polar-orbiting satellites.

NOAA and METEOR-series polar-orbiting environmental satellites continuously transmit low-resolution imagery of Earth as an AM signal corresponding to the reflected radiation of Earth as observed by sensors. This results in a strip of image as long as the transmission is received and as wide as the scanning instrument is designed to cover (typically 1700 miles in width). A normal reception period is approximately 14 minutes. However, not every one of a polar-orbiting satellite's 14 daily passes will be within reception range of a particular ground station; nor will every receivable pass be in optimal reception range. Limited reception occurs because, in order to provide global coverage, satellites in polar-orbits provide imagery in slightly-overlapping swaths (see satellite chapter for polar orbiter coverage). Ascending satellites move westward with each orbit, descending satellites move eastward with each orbit.

Ephemeris data (a collection of data showing the daily positions of satellites) is provided by NASA, NOAA, and electronic bulletin boards (pages 114–115). The data can be inserted into satellite tracking programs or used to manually calculate satellite positions. The next page describes the composition of the NASA two-line orbital elements.

figure 57.



Description of NASA Orbital Data

Ephemeris data is a tabulation of a series of points which define the position and motion of a satellite. This data, required by most tracking programs, is contained in the NASA two line orbital elements. These elements are part of the NASA prediction bulletin, which is published by NASA Goddard Space Flight Center and contains the latest orbital information for a particular satellite. The report provides information in three parts:

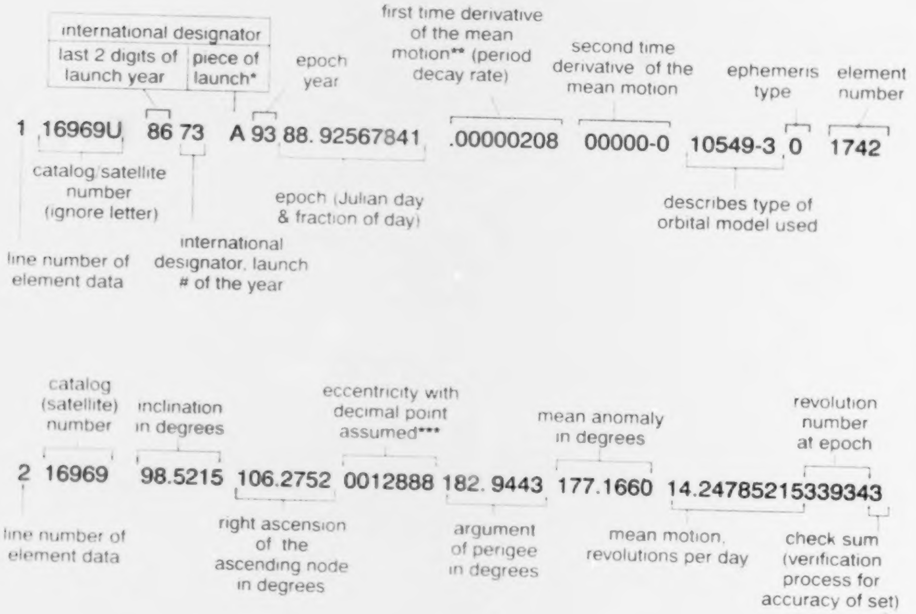
1. two line orbital elements
2. longitude of the South to North equatorial crossings
3. longitude and heights of the satellite crossings for other latitudes

The two line orbital elements look like this when you get them from NASA (this set is a description of NOAA 10)

figure 58 chart courtesy of Charles Davis

```
1  16969U  86 73   A 93 88. 92567841   .00000208   00000-0  10549-3  0   1742
2  16969    98.5215  106.2752  0012888  182. 9443  177.1660  14.24785215339343
```

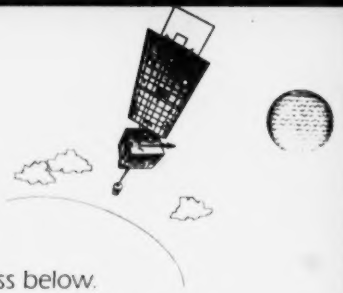
Explanation of 2-line ephemeris data


international designator
last 2 digits of launch year
piece of launch*
epoch year
first time derivative of the mean motion** (period decay rate)
second time derivative of the mean motion
ephemeris type
element number
1 16969U 86 73 A 93 88. 92567841 .00000208 00000-0 10549-3 0 1742
catalog/satellite number (ignore letter)
epoch (Julian day & fraction of day)
describes type of orbital model used
international designator, launch # of the year
line number of element data
catalog (satellite) number
inclination in degrees
eccentricity with decimal point assumed***
mean anomaly in degrees
revolution number at epoch
2 16969 98.5215 106.2752 0012888 182. 9443 177.1660 14.24785215339343
line number of element data
right ascension of the ascending node in degrees
argument of perigee in degrees
mean motion, revolutions per day
check sum (verification process for accuracy of set)

* multi-stage spacecraft and/or multiple payloads on a single spacecraft are each labeled as a piece of launch

** or ballistic coefficient which indicates the impedance on motion and projectiles in the atmosphere (as opposed to motion and projectiles in space)

*** Note that no decimal point is printed for eccentricity. The decimal point precedes the number. For example, the number shown above for eccentricity would be entered as .0012888



Obtaining NASA Orbital Data From NASA

NASA uses two methods to provide orbital data, mail and electronic distribution. Anyone interested in obtaining data through either method should contact the Goddard Space Flight Center at the address below. Requests for the more costly and less-timely mailed data sets should be restricted to users who are not equipped to obtain the information electronically.

A modem (14400/9600/2400/1200 baud) and computer software are required to electronically download the data sets.

Write and request electronic access and a password—or request mailed information—from the Orbital Information Group's (OIG) RAID* Bulletin Board System (RBBS) at:

NASA Goddard Space Flight Center
Project Operations Branch/513
Attn: Orbital Information Group
Greenbelt, Maryland 20771

You cannot log on without having received approval and a password from OIG.

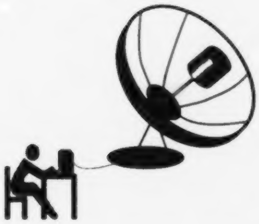
The RBBS provides access to the latest element sets twenty-four hours a day, from anywhere in the world. Two-line Orbital Elements (TLE's) are updated on the following schedule:

Monday	TLE's revised between 1200 GMT Friday and 1200 GMT Monday
Wednesday	TLE's revised between 1200 GMT Monday and 1200 GMT Wednesday
Friday	TLE's revised between 1200 GMT Wednesday and 1200 GMT Friday.

When a holiday falls on a scheduled update day, updating will be done on the next working day.

Data obtained from the RBBS is in a slightly different format from that required by tracking programs such as BIRD DOG, INSTANTRACK, STSORBIT, AND TRAKSAT. The data received from RBBS can't be used directly in these tracking programs without first filtering it with a computer program. The DRIG and Bordertech BBS's have posted programs to simplify conversion to the standard format. RBBS data may be manually entered into the INSTANTRACK program.

* Orbital Information Group's Report and Information Dissemination (RAID) section



Other Sources for Satellite Data

Keplerian elements can be obtained from the following electronic bulletin boards, with a modem, at no charge other than any long-distance telephone fees.

Celestial RCP/M
(205) 409-4280
Montgomery, Alabama
SYSOP: Dr. T.S. Kelso
24 hours
9600/2400/1200 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop
xmodem protocol only

BorderTech Bulletin Board
(410) 239-4247
Hampstead, Maryland
SYSOP: Charles A. Davis, Sr.
24 hours
14.400/9600/2400 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop

Datalink Remote Bulletin Board System
(214) 394 - 7438
Carrollton, Texas
SYSOP: Dr. Jeff Wallach
24 hours
14.400/9600/2400 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop

Instructions for transferring the data directly from the source to your computer. These instructions apply only to the DRIG and BorderTech BBS's.

Dial the BBS and login.
After login, type "D" for download,
type "BULLET90" as the file to download, open a ZMODEM file transfer mode with your telecommunications software. (The file is always named BULLET90.)
After download, log out of the BBS.

SATELLITE TRACKING PROGRAMS

Section 4

The tracking of polar-orbiting satellites by direct readout users is now commonly accomplished by computer—although it is possible to calculate the satellite's location rather than having the computer do the work.

One frequently used tracking program, entitled Bird Dog, is available on NASA Spacelink (see the *Resources* section for more information about NASA Spacelink), and the DRIG and Bordertech bulletin board systems. This software enables the tracking of environmental satellites, but it does require that current orbital data be inserted and that the orbital data be revised every two or three weeks. (Using old data makes it impossible for any software to accurately identify the current position of a satellite.) Instructions for using Bird Dog and updating the ephemeral data accompany the tracking program.

GROUND STATION SET-UP

Environmental satellites, equipped with a variety of sensors, monitor Earth and transmit the information back to Earth electronically. These signals are received by a ground station, also known as an Earth station. The signals are displayed as images on a computer monitor that is a component of a ground station, see the diagram on page 119.

The NASA publication entitled *Direct Readout From Environmental Satellites, A Guide to Equipment and Vendors* (EP-301) describes ground station components and sources of the equipment. See the introduction to this *Training Manual* for more information about the *Guide*.

This section describes the procedure for placement and installation of a ground station to ensure optimal signal reception and system operation. The procedure outlined below is described in detail on the following pages.

- **Identify appropriate locations for the computer and antenna(s)*.**
- **Drill holes in the exterior wall for coaxial cable.**
- **Set-up the antenna(s) by attaching it to either the building or to a plywood base.**
- **(Geostationary system only) Attach feedhorn and down-converter to the parabolic dish.**
- **Connect the receiver and antenna with coaxial cable.**

Consult appropriate personnel to ensure compliance with local building and electrical codes.

Local amateur radio clubs may be able to assist with installation. To locate the club nearest you, contact:

American Radio Relay League
225 Main Street
Newington, Connecticut 18601

**** A system which receives both polar orbiter and geostationary images uses an antenna and a feedhorn, downconverter, and parabolic dish.***

GROUND STATION SET-UP

Section 1 Ground Station Configuration 119

Section 2 Setting-Up 120
- Placing the System
- Polar-Orbiter System Antenna
- Geostationary System Antenna
- Feedhorn
- Downconverter
- Antenna Feedline
- System Safety

GROUND STATION CONFIGURATION

Section 1

Direct readout ground station components

polar-orbiting system	requires a personal computer and a receiver connected to an antenna by coaxial cable
geostationary system	requires a personal computer, a receiver, feedhorn, downconverter and a parabolic dish connected by coaxial cable
dual system	may require all of the above, although the basic set-up varies among manufacturers

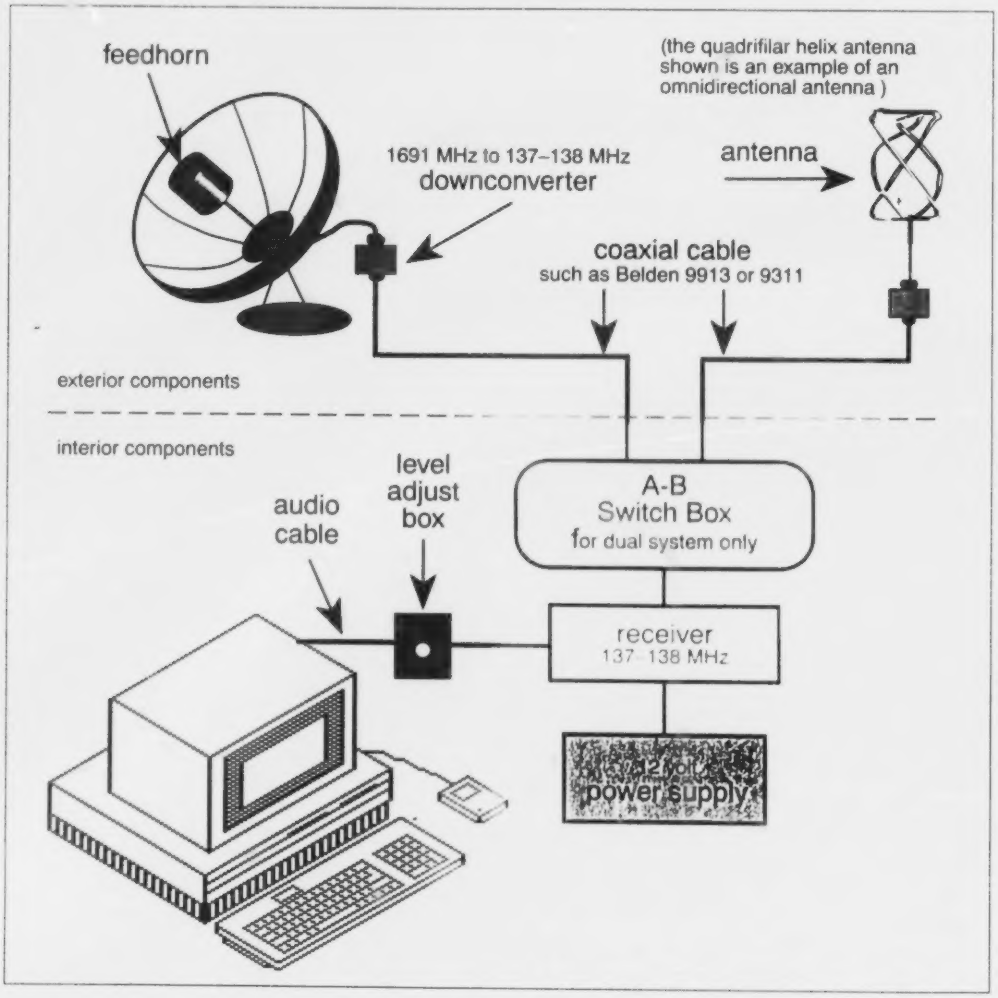

feedhorn
(the quadrifilar helix antenna shown is an example of an omnidirectional antenna)
1691 MHz to 137–138 MHz
downconverter
antenna
coaxial cable
such as Belden 9913 or 9311
exterior components
interior components
audio cable
level adjust box
A-B
Switch Box
for dual system only
receiver
137–138 MHz
12 volt
power supply

figure 59.

Section 2

Placing the System

The computer equipment and antenna(s) should be placed as close to each other as possible to minimize radio signal loss and interference. The computer and receiver should be adjacent and easily accessible to an exterior wall and electrical outlet. Locate the equipment so that is protected from water, sinks, and gas jets. The equipment should be accessible to users but placed so that electrical and cable connections won't be disturbed.

The antenna(s) will be located on the roof, away from power lines, electric motors, and exhaust vents. The antennas should be grounded to a cold water pipe in order to drain atmospheric static charges and to protect the computer and receiving equiment.

Polar-orbiter System Antenna

Antennas for polar-orbiter systems should be located at the highest point on the building, away from surrounding objects such as air conditioning units. The antenna can be attached directly to the building or mounted on a weighted plywood base. Either technique requires a standard exterior TV antenna mast and associated mounting hardware. To mount the antenna, use a TV mast support tripod and bolt the tripod to a 4' x 4' x 3/4" sheet of exterior-grade plywood. Place at least three 50-pound bags of cement or gravel on the plywood sheet for stability. If using bags of cement, poke several small holes into the top of the bag to allow rain to wet the concrete and provide additional stabilization.

Geostationary System Antenna

Antennas for geostationary systems require an unobstructed, direct line-of-sight path to the satellite. A geostationary ground station typically uses a six foot parabolic reflector known as a satellite dish. (A TV satellite dish may be used but requires sophisticated modification.) The satellite dish should be located on a flat roof. Installation will be dictated by the desired mounting, but the mounting platform or structure for the dish must be secured to prevent the dish from moving in the wind. It should be weighted, as above.

A Yagi antenna may be used to receive geostationary images and should be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Feedhorn

A feedhorn is a metallic cylinder which collects the radio signal reflected from the satellite dish. The feedhorn, available as either an open or closed cylinder, contains a probe which is the antenna. The closed feedhorn prevents birds from nesting and protects the antenna from snow and rain. The feedhorn is mounted on a strut(s) that positions it at a specified distance from the parabolic reflector.

Aim the feedhorn to face the parabolic reflector. With an open feedhorn, turn the open end (the other end is closed) toward the satellite dish. With a closed feedhorn, turn the plastic-covered end (the other end is metal) toward the dish.

Note that the antenna inside the feedhorn must be mounted in a vertical position for GOES (U.S.) satellite reception and in a horizontal position for METEOSAT (European) satellite reception. Enclosed feedhorns are marked horizontal and vertical. The placement of the antenna must be correct to receive the desired signal.

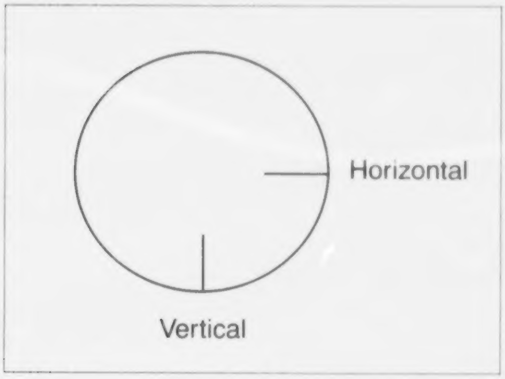


figure 60.

Downconverter

A downconverter is required to convert geostationary satellite signals to a form that can be used by the computer. Power is supplied to the downconverter by either a separate 12-volt source applied directly to the unit or by the receiver. The downconverter is housed in a weather-proof case with predrilled mounting holes and connected to the feedhorn with coaxial cable. Typically, the signal strength from a downconverter is high enough to permit the use of a smaller diameter cable between the downconverter and receiver. Cable runs of less than 200 feet may use a cable such as Belden 9311. Longer runs should use Belden 9913.

Antenna feedline

The antenna feedline is perhaps the most important component in a ground station. A good feedline will provide maximum signal while reducing stray radio frequency (RF) or man-made noise (interference). Coaxial cable is feedline whose center conductor has been encased in dielectric material with an outer braided shield. The shielding greatly reduces the introduction of RF or man-made noise into the receiving system. Avoid inexpensive cable that will not provide adequate shield or lasting construction.

Cable such as Belden 9913 and 9311 have a special foil wrap around the dielectric in addition to the copper braid. 9311 cable is approximately 1/4 inch in diameter and a good choice for cable runs of less than one hundred feet. 9913 is about 1/2 inch in diameter and will necessitate additional coaxial cable adapters if the antenna or receiver require a BNC-type connection. Support for the cable must be provided at BNC connection to avoid damage to its mated connector on the receiver or antenna.

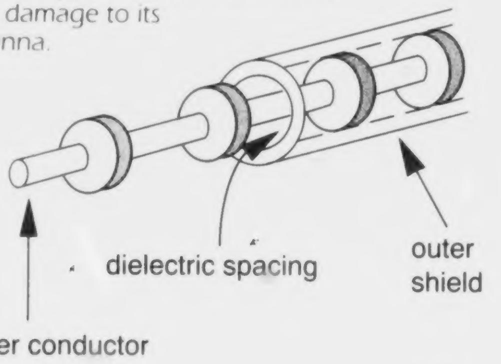


figure 61.

Never:

Run the antenna feedline next to power lines or electric cables
Bend the coaxial cable sharply
Run the cable through a window and shut the window on the cable
Use twist-on cable connectors
Pull or twist connectors installed on the cable
Allow cable to be walked on or crushed
Leave the antenna feedline connected to your receiver during electrical storms

Always:

Solder the shield of the coaxial cable to the connector
(not applicable for crimp connectors)
Ground the antenna to a cold water pipe or grounding rod, or both
Secure the antenna feedline so that the wind cannot sway it
Seal the antenna connection with electrical tape or non-conductive sealant
Purchase the best cable available
Replace worn or broken cables and ground connections immediately
Inspect the system at least once a year to reduce trouble-shooting time

System Safety

Once the system is set-up, always disconnect the antenna at the conclusion of use and during storms to prevent damage to the system.

RESOURCES

A variety of resources are available to teachers, many of those listed have education materials available without charge. ***Please note the importance of making requests on school letterhead.***

Many excellent publications about, or organizations focusing on Earth system science, weather, remote-sensing technology, and space exist. Those appearing in the resource section were listed because of their relevancy to the use of environmental satellite imagery and their accessibility nation-wide.

Many additional resources are likely to be located in your area.

- Contact your local Red Cross or office of emergency preparedness for information about severe or hazardous weather;
- contact local science centers or museums for information related to global change, the atmosphere, satellites, etc.;
- utilize your school's, school system's, or county's experts to assist you with technology;
- contact nearby colleges and universities for assistance/collaboration on atmospheric studies, Earth observation, etc.;
- contact your local newspapers and television stations for information about how weather forecasts are prepared. All of these suggested sources are also potential providers of guest speakers.

RESOURCES

Section 1 Bulletin Boards 125

Section 2 Federal Agencies and Programs 126

Section 3 NASA Educational Resources 128
  - NASA Spacelink
  - NASA Education Satellite Videoconference Series
  - NASA Television
  - NASA Teacher Resource Center Network
    - Regional Teacher Resource Center
    - NASA Core
    - General Information for Teachers and Students

Section 4 National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration 132

Section 5 Organizations 134

Section 6 Vendors 136

Section 7 Weather Service Forecast Office Locations 137
  - Weather Service River Forecast Centers

Section 8 Internet 140
  - AskERIC
  - Internet Society
  - Anonymous File Transfer Protocol
  - Gopher
  - World Wide Web Servers
  - Books, Articles, and Other Resources

BULLETIN BOARDS

Section 1

Keplerian Elements

Keplerian Elements, or satellite orbital elements, are the group of numbers required to define a satellite orbit. The elements are a critical components of satellite tracking and essential to APT system-users for identifying optimal signal reception. Keplerian elements can be obtained by modem, at no charge other than the long distance phone fees, from the following electronic bulletin boards.

NASA Spacelink
205-895-0028
Huntsville, Alabama
24 hours
2400/1200/300 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop
or through Internet:
World Wide Web — http://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov
Gopher — gopher://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov
Anonymous FTP — ftp://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov
Telnet — telnet://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov

Two-line Keplerian elements are contained in the following directory of NASA Spacelink:
instructional materials/software/tracking elements

Celestial RCP/M
(205) 409-4280
Montgomery, Alabama
SYSOP: Dr. T.S. Kelso
24 hours
9600/2400/1200 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop

BorderTech Bulletin Board
410-239-4247
Hampstead, Maryland
SYSOP: Mr. Charlie Davis
24 hours
14400/9600/2400/300 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop

Datalink Remote Bulletin Board System
(Dallas Remote Imaging Group)
214-394-7438
Carrollton, Texas
SYSOP: Dr. Jeff Wallach
24 hours
9600/2400/1200 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop

For BorderTech Bulletin Board and Datalink RBB System:

Dial the BBS and login.
Type "D" for download.
Type "BULLET90" as the file to download.
Open a ZMODEM file transfer mode with your telecommunications software.
(The file name is always called BULLET90.)
This will transfer the NASA 2-line elements to a file on the users computer.
Log out of the BBS.

Section 2

The GLOBE Program
Thomas N. Pyke, Jr., Director
744 Jackson Place
Washington, DC 20503
(202) 395-7600
FAX (202) 395-7611

Global Learning and Observations to Benefit the Environment (GLOBE) is an international science and education program, which is establishing a network of K–12 students throughout the world making and sharing environmental observations.

National Air and Space Museum
Education Resource Center (ERC)
MRC 305, NASM
Washington, DC 20560
(202) 786-2109

For teachers of grades K–12, ERC offers educational materials about aviation, space exploration, and the Museum's collections, including curriculum packets, videotapes, slides, filmstrips, and computer software. Free newsletter published three times annually.

National Center for Atmospheric Research (NCAR)
PO Box 3000
Boulder, Colorado 80307-3000
(303) 497-1000

Educational materials, request ordering information.

U.S. Department of Agriculture
Soil Conservation Service
Public Information
PO Box 2890, Room 6110
Washington, DC 20013

Conservation education activities and technical information on soil, water, and other resources.

U.S. Department of Energy
National Energy Information Center EI-231
Room 1F-048, Forrestal Building
1000 Independence Avenue, SW
Washington, DC 20585
(202) 586-8800

Energy-related educational materials for primary and secondary students and educators, free or low cost.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Public Information Center
401 M Street, SW
Washington, DC 20460
(202) 260-7751

Request list of publications, many of them free, and a sample copy of *EPA Journal*, a forum for the exchange of ideas in elementary-level environmental education.

U.S. Geological Survey
Geological Inquiries Group
907 National Center
Reston, VA 22092
(703) 648-4383

Teacher's packet of geologic materials and geologic teaching aids, information for ordering maps. Requests must be on school stationary and specify grade.

Hydrologic Information Unit
Water Resources Division
419 National Center
Reston, VA 22092

Free *Water Resources Div. Info Guide*, water fact sheets (Acid Rain, Regional Aquifer Systems of the U.S., Largest Rivers in the U.S., Hydrologic Hazards in Karst Terrain); leaflets (Groundwater: The Hydrologic Cycle).

U.S. Government Printing Office
Superintendent of Documents
Washington, DC 20402
(202) 783-3238

Request free *Subject Bibliography Index* that gives descriptions, prices, and ordering instructions.

University Corporation for Atmospheric Research (UCAR)
Office for Interdisciplinary Earth Studies
PO Box 3000
Boulder, Colorado 80307-3000
(303) 497-2692
FAX (303) 497-2699
Internet: oies@ncar.ucar.edu

Educational materials, including a series of three climate publications under the series Reports to the Nation On Our Changing Planet:
The Climate System (Winter 1991);
Our Ozone Shield (Fall 1992) ; and
El Niño and Climate Prediction (Spring 1994).

NASA EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES

Section 3

NASA Spacelink: An Electronic Information System

NASA Spacelink is an electronic information system designed to provide current educational information to teachers, faculty, and students. Spacelink offers a wide range of materials (computer text files, software, and graphics) related to the space program. Documents on the system include: science, mathematics, engineering, and technology education lesson plans; historical information related to the space program; current status reports on NASA projects; news releases; information on NASA edcuational programs; NASA educational publications; and other materials such as computer software and images, chosen for their educational value and relevance to space education. The system may be accessed by computer through direct-dial modem or the Internet.

Spacelink's modem line is (205) 895-0028.
Data format 8-N-1, VT-100 terminal emulation required.
The Internet TCP/IP address is 192.149.89.61
Spacelink fully supports the following Internet services:

World Wide Web:	http://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov
Gopher:	spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov
Anonymous FTP:	spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov
Telnet:	spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov (VT-100 terminal emulation required)

For more information contact:
Spacelink Administrator
Education Programs Office
Mail Code CL 01
NASA Marshall Space Flight Center
Huntsville, AL 35812-0001
Phone: (205) 554-6360

NASA Education Satellite Videoconference Series

The Education Satellite Videoconference Series for Teachers is offered as an inservice education program for educators through the school year. The content of each program varies, but includes aeronautics or space science topics of interest to elementary and secondary teachers. NASA program managers, scientists, astronauts, and education specialists are featured presenters. The videoconference series is free to registered educational institutions. To participate, the institution must have a C-band satellite receiving system, teacher release time, and an optional long distance telephone line for interaction. Arrangements may also be made to receive the satellite signal through the local cable television system. The programs may be videotaped and copied for later use. For more information, contact:

Videoconference Producer
NASA Teaching From Space Program
308 A CITD
Oklahoma State University
Stillwater, OK 74078-0422
E-Mail: nasaedutv@smtpgate.osu.hq.nasa.gov

NASA Television

NASA Television (TV) is the Agency's distribution system for live and taped programs. It offers the public a front-row seat for launches and missions, as well as informational and educational programming, historical documentaries, and updates on the latest developments in aeronautics and space science.

The educational programming is designed for classrooom use and is aimed at inspiring students to achieve–especially in science, mathematics, and technology. If your school's cable TV system carries NASA TV or if your school has access to a satellite dish, the programs may be downlinked and videotaped. Daily and monthly programming schedules for NASA TV are also available via NASA Spacelink. NASA Television is transmitted on Spacenet 2 (a C-band satellite) on transponder 5, channel 8, 69 degrees West with horizontal polarization, frequency 3880.0 Megahertz, audio on 6.8 megahertz. For more information contact:

NASA Headquarters
Technology and Evaluation Branch
Code FET
Washington, DC 20546-0001

NASA Teacher Resource Center Network

To make additional information available to the education community, the NASA Education Division has created the NASA Teacher Resource Center (TRC) network. TRCs contain a wealth of information for educators: publications, reference books, slide sets, audio cassettes, videotapes, telelecture programs, computer programs, lesson plans, and teacher guides with activities. Because each NASA Field Center has its own areas of expertise, no two TRCs are exactly alike. Phone calls are welcome if you are unable to visit the TRC that serves your geographic area. A list of the Centers and the geographic regions they serve starts on page 130.

Regional Teacher Resource Centers (RTRCs) offer more educators access to NASA educational materials. NASA has formed partnerships with universities, museums, and other educational institutions to serve as RTRCs in many states. Teachers may preview, copy, or receive NASA materials at these sites. A complete list of RTRCs is available through CORE.

NASA Central Operation of Resources for Educators (CORE) was established for the national and international distribution of NASA-produced educational materials in audiovisual format. Educators can obtain a catalogue of these materials and an order form by written request, on school letterhead to:

NASA CORE
Lorain County Joint Vocational School
15181 Route 58 South
Oberlin, OH 44074
Phone: (216) 774-1051, Ext. 293 or 294

GENERAL INFORMATION FOR TEACHERS AND STUDENTS

If You Live In:		**Center Education Program Officer**	**Teacher Resource Center**
Alaska Arizona California Hawaii Idaho Montana	Nevada Oregon Utah Washington Wyoming	Mr. Garth A. Hull Chief, Education Programs Branch Mail Stop 204-12 **NASA Ames Research Center** Moffett Field, CA 94035-1000 PHONE: (415) 604-5543	NASA Teacher Resource Center Mail Stop T12-A **NASA Ames Research Center** Moffett Field, CA 94035-1000 PHONE: (415) 604-3574
Connecticut Delaware DC Maine Maryland Massachusetts	New Hampshire New Jersey New York Pennsylvania Rhode Island Vermont	Mr. Richard Crone Educational Programs Code 130 **NASA GSFC** Greenbelt, MD 20771-0001 PHONE: (301) 286-7206	NASA Teacher Resource Lab Mail Code 130.3 **NASA GSFC** Greenbelt, MD 20771-0001 PHONE: (301) 286-8570
Colorado Kansas Nebraska New Mexico	North Dakota Oklahoma South Dakota Texas	Dr. Robert W. Fitzmaurice Center Education Program Officer Education and Public Services Branch - AP2 **NASA Johnson Space Center** Houston, TX 77058-3696 PHONE: (713) 483-1257	NASA Teacher Resource Room Mail Code AP2 **NASA Johnson Space Center** Houston, TX 77058-3696 PHONE: (713) 483-8696
Florida Georgia Puerto Rico Virgin Islands		Dr. Steve Dutczak Chief, Education Services Branch Mail Code PA-ESB **NASA Kennedy Space Center** Kennedy Space Center, FL 32899-0001 PHONE: (407) 867-4444	NASA Educators Resource Lab Mail Code ERL **NASA Kennedy Space Center** Kennedy Space Center, FL 32899-0001 PHONE: (407) 867-4090
Kentucky North Carolina South Carolina Virginia West Virginia		Ms. Marchelle Canright Center Education Program Officer Mail Stop 400 **NASA Langley Research Center** Hampton, VA 23681-0001 PHONE: (804) 864-3313	NASA Teacher Resource Center **NASA Langley Research Center** Virginia Air and Space Center 600 Settler's Landing Road Hampton, VA 23699-4033 PHONE: (804)727-0900 x 757
Illinois Indiana Michigan	Minnesota Ohio Wisconsin	Ms. Jo Ann Charleston Acting Chief, Office of Educational Programs Mail Stop 7-4 **NASA Lewis Research Center** 21000 Brookpark Road Cleveland, OH 44135-3191 PHONE: (216) 433-2957	NASA Teacher Resource Center Mail Stop 8-1 **NASA Lewis Research Center** 21000 Brookpark Road Cleveland, OH 44135-3191 PHONE: (216) 433-2017

If You Live In:	Center Education Program Officer	Teacher Resource Center
Alabama Arkansas Iowa Louisiana Missouri Tennessee	Mr. JD Horne Director, Education Programs Office Mail Stop CL 01 **NASA MSFC** Huntsville, AL 35812-0001 PHONE: (205) 544-8843	NASA Teacher Resource Center NASA MSFC U.S. Space and Rocket Center P.O. Box 070015 Huntsville, AL 35807-7015 PHONE: (205) 544-5812
Mississippi	Dr. David Powe Manager, Educational Programs Mail Stop MA00 **NASA John C. Stennis Space Center** Stennis Space Center, MS 39529-6000 PHONE: (601) 688-1107	NASA Teacher Resource Center Building 1200 **NASA John C. Stennis Space Center** Stennis Space Center, MS 39529-6000 PHONE: (601) 688-3338
The Jet Propulsion Laboratory (JPL) Center serves inquiries related to space and planetary exploration and other JPL activities.	Dr. Fred Shair Manager, Educational Affairs Office Mail Code 183-900 **NASA Jet Propulsion Laboratory** 4800 Oak Grove Drive Pasadena, CA 91109-8099 PHONE: (818) 354-8251	NASA Teacher Resource JPL Educational Outreach Mail Stop CS-530 **NASA Jet Propulsion Laboratory** 4800 Oak Grove Drive Pasadena, CA 91109-8099 PHONE: (818) 354-6916
California (mainly cities near Dryden Flight Research Facility)		NASA Teacher Resource Center Public Affairs Office (Trl. 42) **NASA Dryden Flight Research Facility** Edwards, CA 93523-0273 PHONE: (805) 258-3456
Virginia and Maryland's Eastern Shores		NASA Teacher Resource Lab NASA GSFC **Wallops Flight Facility** Education Complex - Visitor Center Building J-17 Wallops Island, VA 23337-5099 Phone: (804) 824-2297/2298

NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION (NOAA)

Educational Affairs Division
Joan Maier McKean, Educational Affairs, E3
SSMC4, Room 1W225
1305 East West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910
(301) 713-1170
FAX (301) 713-1174

National Climatic Data Center
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Admin.
Federal Building
Asheville, NC 28801-2696

Archived, historical climate data.

National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service (NESDIS)
Colby Hostetler
NESDIS Outreach Office
Federal Building 4, Room 1045
Suitland, Maryland 20233
(301) 763-4691
FAX (301) 763-4011

NESDIS primary education goal is to enable teachers to access and interpret satellite imagery as an Earth science education tool. Data can be accessed by direct readout from orbiting satellites or via the Internet.

National Marine Sanctuary Program and the
National Estuarine Research Reserve System
Lauri MacLaughlin, Education Coordinator
Sanctuaries and Reserves Division
SSMC4, Room 12409
1305 East West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910
(301) 713-3145
FAX (301) 713-0404

Identify, designate and manage areas of the marine environment of national significance. Thirteen sanctuaries have been established, visitor centers at these sites promote education activities

NOAA Public Affairs Office
Correspondence Unit
Room 317
1825 Connecticut Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20235

Limited number of publications suitable for classroom instruction that teachers can request by mail. Some of these titles are available on the Internet.

National Sea Grant College Program
Director, National Sea Grant College Program
SSMC3, Room 11843
1315 East West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910
(301) 713-2431
FAX (301) 713-0799

Develop and analyze U.S. marine resources. Office's divisions are: living resources, non-living resources, technology and commercial development, environmental studies and human resources

National Snow and Ice Data Center (NSIDC)
Box 449
Cires Campus
University of Colorado
Boulder, Colorado 80309
(303) 492-6197

National Weather Service (NWS)
Ron Gird
Office of Meteorology
SSMC2, Room 14110
1325 East West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910
(301) 713-1677
FAX (301) 713-1598

Supports educational programs developed by a variety of outside organizations such as American Meteorological Society and the Weather Channel. Provides a series of publications on severe weather and broadcasts NOAA weather radio to increase public awareness and responsibility in the event of severe weather.

ORGANIZATIONS

Section 5

American Meteorological Society
1701 K Street NW, Suite 300
Washington, DC 20006-1509

Request information about the Atmospheric Education Resource Agent (AERA) program and the AERAs in your state.

American Radio Relay League
225 Main Street
Newington, Connecticut 18601

Amateur club with local chapters, possible source of technical assistance with equipment.

American Weather Observer
401 Whitney Boulevard
Belvedere, Illinois 61008-3772

Weather interest group with publication.

Amsat
PO Box 27
Washington, DC 20044
(301) 589-6062
FAX (301) 608-3410

Non-profit organization, members are a potential source of local technical assistance to schools (e.g., direct readout ground station set-up). Amsat also publishes low-cost software.

AskEric
ERIC Clearinghouse on Information Resources
Center for Science and Technology
Syracuse University
Syracuse, New York 13244-4100
(315) 443-9114
(315) 443-5448
email: askeric@ericir.syr.edu

See ***The Internet,*** this section

Dallas Remote Imaging Group (DRIG) Information System
Dallas, Texas
SYSOP: Dr. Jeff Wallach
(214) 394-7438
24 hours
14.400/9600/2400 baud
8 bit NO parity 1 stop

International organization of professionals interested in image-processing techniques, tracking satellites, and telemetry analysis. DRIG's bulletin board system provides Keplerian elements free; fee to access other services.

Educational Center for Earth Observation Systems
School of Education
West Chester University
West Chester, Pennsylvania 19383
(215) 436-2393
FAX (215) 436-3102

Annual (March) Satellites and Education Conference, other educational information.

International Weather Watchers
PO Box 77442
Washington, DC 20013
American weather interest group with publication.

Internet Society
1895 Preston White Drive, Suite 100
Reston, Virginia 22091
(703) 648-9888
FAX(703) 620-0913
email: isoc@isoc.org

See ***The Internet,*** this section

The Weather Channel
Education Services
2690 Cumberland Parkway
Atlanta, Georgia 30339
(404) 801-2503

Televised weather documentaries, educational programming, educational materials for sale.

VENDORS

Section 6

This is not an endorsement, recommendation, or guarantee for any person or product, nor does a listing here imply a connection with NASA or the MAPS-NET project. These vendors sell direct readout hardware, software, and/or services.

Amsat
PO Box 27
Washington, DC 20044
(301) 589-6062
FAX (301) 608-3410

Clear Choice Education Products
PO Box 745
Helen, Georgia 30545
800 533-5708
FAX (706) 865-7808

ERIM
Earth Observation Group
PO Box 134001
Ann Arbor, Michigan 48113
(313) 994-1200, ext 3350
FAX (313) 668-8957

Fisher Scientific
4901 West LeMoyne Street
Chicago, Illinois 60651
800 955-1177
FAX (312) 378-7174

GTI
1541 Fritz Valley Road
Lehighton, Pennsylvania 18235
(717) 386-4032
FAX (717) 386-5063

Lone Eagle Systems Inc.
5968 Wenninghoff Road
Omaha, Nebraska 68134
(402) 571-0102
FAX (402) 572-0745

Marisys Inc.
131 NW 43rd Street
Boca Raton, Florida 33431
(407) 361-0598
FAX (407) 361-0599

MultiFAX
143 Rollin Irish Road
Milton, Vermont 05468
(802) 893-7006
FAX (802) 893-6859

OFS Weatherfax
6404 Lakerest Court
Raleigh, North Carolina 27612
(919) 847-4545

Quorum Communications, Inc.
8304 Esters Boulevard
Suite 850
Irving, Texas 75063
800-982-9614
(214) 915-0256
FAX (214) 915-0270
BBS (214) 915-0346

Satellite Data Systems, Inc.
800 Broadway Street
PO Box 219
Cleveland, Minnesota 56017
(507) 931-4849
FAX same as voice number

Software Systems Consulting
615 S. El Camino Real
San Clemente, California 92672
(714) 498-5784
FAX (714) 498-0568

Tri-Space Inc.
PO Box 7166
McLean, Virginia 22106-7166
(703) 442-0666
FAX (703) 442-9677

U.S. Satellite Laboratory
8301 Ashford Blvd., Suite 717
Laurel, Maryland 20707
(301) 490-0962
FAX (301) 490-0963

Vanguard Electronic Labs
196-23 Jamaica Avenue
Hollis, New York 11423
(718) 468-2720

WEATHER FORECAST OFFICE LOCATIONS

Section 7

The following are Weather Forecast Office locations proposed under the National Weather Service modernization. Teachers are encouraged to contact their nearest office for information about local and hazardous weather.

WFO Name—Metropolitan Area	**Proposed Office Location**
Aberdeen, SD	Aberdeen Regional Airport
Albany, NY	State University of New York, Albany
Albuquerque, NM	Albuquerque International Airport
Amarillo, TX	Amarillo International Airport
Anchorage, AK	Anchorage International Airport
Atlanta, GA	Falcon Field, Peachtree City
Austin/San Antonio, TX	New Braunfels Municipal Airport
Baltimore, MD/Washington, DC	Sterling, VA
Billings, MT	Billings-Logan International Airport
Binghamton, NY	Binghamton Regional - Edwin LInk Field
Birmingham, AL	Shelby County Airport
Bismarck, ND	Bismarck Municipal Airport
Boise, ID	Boise Interagency Fire Center
Boston, MA	Taunton, MA
Brownsville, TX	Brownsville International Airport
Buffalo, NY	Greater Buffalo International Airport
Burlington, VT	Burlington International Airport
Central Illinois, IL	Logan County Airport
Central Pennsylvania, PA	State College, PA
Charleston, SC	Charleston International Airport
Charleston, WV	Ruthdale, WV
Cheyenne, WV	Cheyenne Municipal Airport
Chicago, IL	Lewis University Airport
Cincinnati, OH	Wilmington, OH
Cleveland, OH	Cleveland-Hopkins International Airport
Columbia, SC	Columbia Metropolitan Airport
Corpus Christi, TX	Corpus Christi International Airport
Dallas/Fort Worth, TX	Fort Worth, TX
Denver/Boulder CO	Boulder, CO
Des Moines, IA	Johnson, IA
Detroit, MI	Pontiac/Indian Springs Metropark
Dodge City, KS	Dodge City Regional Airport
Duluth, MN	Duluth, MN
Eastern North Dakota, ND	near University of North Dakota
El Paso, TX	Dona Ana County Airport at Santa Theresa, NM
Elko, NV	Elko, NV
Eureka, CA	Woodley Island, CA
Fairbanks, AK	University of Alaska, Fairbanks, AK
Flagstaff, AZ	Navajo Army Depot, Bellmont, AZ
Glasgow, MT	Glasgow City and County Int'l Airport
Goodland, KS	Goodland Municipal Airport

WFO Name—Metropolitan Area	**Proposed Office Location**
Grand Junction, CO	Walker Field, Grand Junction Airport
Grand Rapids, MI	Kent County International Airport
Great Falls, MT	near Great Falls International Airport
Green Bay, WI	Austin-Straubel Field
Greenville/Spartanburg, SC	Greenville/Spartanburg Airport
Hastings, NE	Hastings, NE
Honolulu, HI	University of Hawaii, Honolulu, HI
Houston/Galveston, TX	League City, TX
Indianapolis, IN	Indianapolis International Airport
Jackson, MS	Jackson Municipal Airport
Jacksonville, FL	Jacksonville International Airport
Juneau, AK	(not yet determined)
Kansas City/Pleasant Hill, MO	Pleasant Hill, MO
Knoxville/Tri Cities, TN	Morristown Airport Industrial District
La Crosse, WI	La Crosse Ridge, La Crosse, WI
Lake Charles, LA	Lake Charles Regional Airport
Las Vegas, NV	Las Vegas, NV
Little Rock, AR	North Little Rock Municipal Airport
Los Angeles, CA	Oxnard, CA
Louisville, KY	Louisville, KY
Lubbock, TX	Lubbock, TX
Marquette, MI	Marquette County Airport
Medford, OR	Medford-Jackson County Airport
Melbourne, FL	Melbourne Regional Airport
Memphis, TN	Agricenter International Complex
Miami, FL	Florida International University
Midland/Odessa, TX	Midland International Airport
Milwaukee, WI	Sullivan Township, Jefferson County
Minneapolis, MN	Chanhassen, MN
Missoula, MT	Missoula International Airport
Mobile, AL	Mobile Regional Airport
Morehead City, NC	Newport, NC
Nashville, TN	Old Hickory Mountain, TN
New Orleans/Baton Rouge, LA	Slidell Airport
New York City, NY	Brookhaven National Lab, Upton, NY
Norfolk/Richmond, VA	Wakefield, VA
North Central Lower Michigan	Passenheim Road, MI
North Platte, NE	North Platte Regional Airport
Oklahoma City, OK	University of Oklahoma Westheimer Airpark
Omaha, NE	Valley, NE
Paducah, KY	Barkley Regional Airport
Pendleton, OR	Pendleton Municipal Airport
Philadelphia, PA	Mt. Holly, NJ
Phoenix, AZ	Phoenix, AZ
Pittsburgh, PA	Coraopolis, PA
Pocatello/Idaho Falls, ID	Pocatello Regional Airport, ID
Portland, ME	Gray, ME

WFO Name— Metropolitan Area	Proposed Office Location
Portland, OR	near Portland International Airport
Pueblo, CO	Pueblo Municipal Airport
Quad Cities, IA	Davenport Municipal Airport
Raleigh/Durham, NC	NC State University, Raleigh, NC
Rapid City, SD	Rapid City, SD
Reno, NV	Reno, NV
Riverton, WY	Riverton Regional Airport
Roanoke, VA	Blacksburg, VA
Sacramento, CA	Sacramento, CA
Salt Lake City, UT	Salt Lake City International Airport
San Angelo, TX	Mathis Field
San Diego, CA	(not yet determined)
San Francisco Bay Area, CA	Monterey, CA
San Joaquin Valley, CA	Hanford Municipal Airport
San Juan, PR	Luis Munoz Marin Int'l Airport
Seattle/Tacoma, WA	NOAA Western Regional Center
Shreveport, LA	Shreveport Regional Airport
Sioux Falls, SD	Sioux Falls Municipal Airport
Spokane, WA	Rambo Road, Spokane, WA
Springfield, MO	Springfield Regional Airport
St. Louis, MO	Research Park, St. Charles County
Tallahassee, FL	Florida State University
Tampa Bay Area, FL	Ruskin, FL
Topeka, KS	Philip Billard Municipal Airport
Tucson, AZ	University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ
Tulsa, OK	Guaranty Bank Building
Wichita, KS	Wichita Mid-Continent Airport
Wilmington, NC	New Hanover International Airport

River Forecast Centers

River Forecast Center Name	Co-located Weather Forecast Office
Southeast RFC	Atlanta, GA
Lower Mississippi RFC	New Orleans/Baton Rouge, LA
Arkansas-Red Basin RFC	Tulsa, OK
West Gulf RFC	Dallas/Fort Worth, TX
Ohio RFC	Cincinnati, OH
Middle Atlantic RFC	Central Pennsylvania, PA
Northeast RFC	Boston, MA
Colorado Basin RFC	Salt Lake City, UT
California-Nevada RFC	Sacramento, CA
Northwest RFC	Portland, OR
North Central RFC	Minneapolis, MN
Missouri Basin RFC	Kansas City/Pleasant Hill, MO
Alaska RFC	Anchorage, AK

THE INTERNET: ANOTHER SOURCE OF IMAGERY

Section 8

One of the fastest growing resources of information today is the Internet. Pick up a recent newspaper or magazine, turn on your television, and chances are you will read or hear about this powerful tool. A leading proponent of the Internet, Vice President Albert Gore recently set a goal for the year 2000 to connect every school and library in the United States to the "National Information Infrastructure."

The Internet contains text, images, and software on a broad range of topics. It is a computer network (commercial, government, research, and educational) which spans the globe and provides instant access to information and communication. Users can download text, images, and software for both IBM and Macintosh computers. Users can also participate in discussion groups and have instant access to experts worldwide.

For those who do not have access to an environmental satellite direct readout system, the Internet is an alternative source for up-to-date polar and geostationary environmental satellite images. Images downloaded from the Internet can be used with the environmental satellite lesson plans that have been developed as part of the Looking at Earth From Space series.

This listing of Internet sites where environmental satellite (polar and geostationary) imagery may be downloaded, also includes brief information describing some common Internet tools. In this section, resources are identified by their Uniform Resource Locator or URL. The following code is used:

ftp://host.name.domain/directory/(filename)	File Transfer Protocol (FTP) Site
http://host.name.domain/directory/(filename)	World Wide Web (WWW) Server
telnet://host.name.domain	Telnet Site
gopher://host.name.domain	Gopher Server

Check with local colleges for availability of no-cost access. Other possible sources are local libraries and dial-up services.

As you explore the Internet, please keep in mind that this is an ever-changing environment—some of the sites you use today may be gone tomorrow. The network services listed in this section have proven dependable. However, you will discover that some of these references have changed and that many new resources exist.

AskERIC

The Educational Resources Information Center (ERIC) is a federally-funded national information system that provides access to education-related literature at all education levels. AskERIC is an Internet-based question-answering service for teachers, library media specialists, and administrators. Anyone involved in K-12 education may send a question to AskERIC, whose policy is to respond to all questions within 48 hours.

AskERIC
ERIC Clearinghouse on Information Resources
Syracuse University — Center for Science and Technology
Syracuse, New York 13244-4100
(315) 443-9114; FAX (315) 443-5448
email: askeric@ericir.syr.edu

The Internet Society serves as the international organization for cooperation and collaboration.

Internet Society
1895 Preston White Drive, Suite 100
Reston, Virginia 22091
(703) 648-9888; FAX (703) 620-0913
email: isoc@isoc.org

ANONYMOUS FILE TRANSFER PROTOCOL (FTP)

File Transfer Protocol (FTP) allows the user to connect to another computer and copy files from that system to the user's computer. It also allows the user to upload files. Files may include ASCII text files, PostScript files, software, and images. Many computer systems also allow general public access to specific sections of their files through Anonymous FTP. The following Anonymous FTP sites contain polar and geostationary satellite images, in formats such as GIF that can be used on IBM and Macintosh computers. Note that these addresses are valid with World Wide Web browsers. If you are using FTP software, omit **ftp://** from the following addresses.

Address:	**Description:**
ftp://ats.orst.edu/pub/weather/	Hurricane Andrew and Emily images
ftp://aurelie.soest.hawaii.edu/pub	University of Hawaii Satellite Oceanography Laboratory — Japanese Geostationary Meteorological Satellites (GMS), AVHRR data from HRPT stations, and public domain software for accessing data

Address:	Description:
ftp://early-bird.think.com/pub/weather/maps	Hourly GOES visible and IR (last few days)
ftp://earthsun.umd.edu/pub/jei/goes	Anonymous FTP site for the "Blizzard of 93" movie in .flc format
ftp://explorer.arc.nasa.gov/pub/weather	GOES and Japanese Geostationary Meteorological Satellite (GMS) images
ftp://ftp.colorado.edu/pub/	Includes satellite images for several U.S. cities and regions, as well as images of hurricanes Andrew and Emily in the subdirectory "hurricane.andrew." Also included are radar summary map GIF and PICT files and surface maps.
ftp://ftp.ssec.wisc.edu/pub/images	University of Wisconsin FTP server
ftp://hurricane.ncdc.noaa.gov	NOAA climate archives
ftp://kestrel.umd.edu/pub/wx	Hourly GOES visible and IR (last few days)
ftp://photo1.si.edu/More.Smithsonian.Stuff/nasm.planetarium/weather.gif	NOAA and other satellite images
ftp://rainbow.physics.utoronto.ca/pub/sat_images	Images of Hurricane Emily
ftp://sumex-aim.stanford.edu/pub/info-mac/art/qt	Anonymous FTP site for Quicktime (for Macintosh) movie of the "Blizzard of 93"
ftp://thunder.atms.purdue.edu	Purdue University, "The Weather Processor" — current GOES visible and IR images and other weather information
ftp://unidata.ucar.edu/images/Images.gif	Images of hurricanes Emily, Hugo, Beryl, Kevin
ftp://wmaps.aoc.nrao.edu/pub/wx	Hourly GOES visible and IR (last few days)
ftp://wx.research.att.com/wx	Hourly GOES visible and IR (last few days)

GOPHER

Gopher servers present information to users through a series of menus. By choosing menu items, the user is led to files or servers on the Internet. Gopher can also retrieve files because it has a built-in interface to FTP. Note that these addresses are valid for World Wide Web browsers. If you are using Gopher software, omit **gopher://** from the following addresses.

Address:	**Description:**
gopher://cmits02.dow.on.doe.ca	Canadian Meteorological Centre server, GOES visible and IR images and other weather information
gopher://downwind.sprl.umich.edu	University of Michigan Weather Underground—current GOES visible and IR, climate and weather data, images of historic weather events (e.g., Blizzard of 93, hurricanes Andrew, Hugo, Emily, Elena)
gopher://gopher.esdim.noaa.gov	NOAA Environmental Satellite Information Service —includes GOES, Meteosat, and polar-orbiting satellite imagery
gopher://gopher.gsfc.nasa.gov	NASA Goddard Space Flight Center information server
gopher://gopher.ssec.wisc.edu	University of Wisconsin server — daily full-disk GOES image
gopher://informns.k12.mn.us	Gopher information related to grades K-12
gopher://metlab1.met.fsu.edu	Hourly GOES visible and IR (last few days)
gopher://thunder.atms.purdue.edu	Purdue University Gopher server containing meteorological satellite imagery and other information
gopher://unidata.ucar.edu	Images of hurricanes Emily, Hugo, Beryl, Kevin
gopher://wx.atmos.uiuc.edu	University of Illinois Weather Machine — includes GOES images — current and archived

WORLD WIDE WEB (WWW) SERVERS

The WWW is a hypertext-based, distributed information system created by researchers in Switzerland. Users may create, edit, or browse hypertext documents. The WWW servers are interconnected to allow a user to travel the Web from any starting point.

Address:	**Description:**
http://cmits02.dow.on.doe.ca	Canadian Meteorological Centre — current GOES visible and infrared images in jpeg format (Text in English and French)
http://meawx1.nrrc.ncsu.edu	North Carolina State University server, includes latest visible and infrared satellite images, current regional and national weather maps, climatic data, tropical storm updates, and other weather-related information
http://vortex.plymouth.edu	Plymouth State College-Plymouth, New Hampshire Weather Center Server, includes current U.S. infrared satellite images and IR satellite loop (movie), surface analysis and radar/precipitation summary, historical weather events and other weather-related information
http://rs560.cl.msu.edu/weather	Michigan State University server containing current weather maps, images (GOES, Meteosat, and GMS), and movies
http://satftp.soest.hawaii.edu Laboratory server	University of Hawaii Satellite Oceanography
http://thunder.atms.purdue.edu	The Weather Processor at Purdue University — server containing GOES visible and IR satellite images and other weather and climate information
http://unidata.ucar.edu	Weather-related datasets, including satellite images, radar scan images, hourly observations from international weather reporting stations, etc.
http://www.atmos.uiuc.edu	University of Illinois Daily Planet, including weather and climate information, hypermedia instructional modules related to meteorology, and WWW version of the University of Illinois Weather Machine, which includes current and archived GOES images
http://www.esdim.noaa.gov	NOAA Environmental Satellite Information Services Home Page
http://www.met.fu-berlin.de/ DataSources/MetIndex.html	The World Wide Web Virtual Library: Meteorology—produced by the University of Berlin, this server is categorized by subject.

http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/ncdc.html	National Climatic Data Center Server
http://http.ucar.edu	NCAR server, includes current satellite image, weather maps, and movies
http://zebu.uoregon.edu/weather.html	University of Oregon current weather page, including latest IR and VIS images of the U.S., surface analysis map, and local weather information
http://www.usra.edu/esse/ESSE.html	Earth System Science Education Program server developed by the Universities Space Research Association. Contains current GOES VIS and IR images, surface analysis map, and information and materials related to Earth system science education

Resources for Software

Name:	**Description:**
gopher://downwind.sprl.umich.edu ftp://madlab.sprl.umich.edu/pub/Blue-Skies	Sources for BLUE-SKIES, a unique weather display system developed for K-12 schools by the University of Michigan. BLUE-SKIES allows interactive access to weather and environmental images, animations, and other information. The program requires a TCP/IP network connection.
ftp://mac.archive.umich.edu	Anonymous FTP site for Macintosh software
ftp://ncsa.uiuc.edu	National Center for Supercomputing Applications' public domain software for image processing, data analysis, and visualization; applications are available for Macintosh, PC, UNIX platforms. NCSA is also the developer of Mosaic, a hypertext-based interface to the WWW, designed for Macintosh computers. A PPP or SLIP connection is required for running Mosaic.
ftp://sumex-aim.stanford.edu	Anonymous FTP site for Macintosh software
ftp://wuarchive.wustl.edu	Mirror site for many major FTP sites
ftp://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov gopher://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov telnet://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov http://spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov	NASA Spacelink — source for public domain software related to satellite tracking and image-viewing programs, as well as many other NASA educational resources

BOOKS/ARTICLES/ OTHER RESOURCES

Experience the Power: Network Technology for Education Video released by the National Center for Educational Statistics. Contact: National Center for Education Statistics, 555 New Jersey Avenue, N.W. Room 410 C, Washington, DC 20208-5651, Phone: (202) 219-1364; FAX: (202) 219-1728; email: ncerinfo@inet.ed.gov.

FYI on Questions and Answers to Commonly Asked Primary and Secondary School Internet Users Questions by Jennifer Sellers of the NASA Internet School Networking Group, February 1994(Request for Comments [RFC] number 1578, FYI number 22,). Details on obtaining RFCs via FTP or EMAIL may be obtained by sending an EMAIL message to rfc-info@ISI.EDU with the message body —
help: ways_to_get_rfcs.

The Internet for Dummies by John Levine and Carol Baroudi, IDG Books Worldwide, 1993. An easy-to-understand and entertaining reference, which is written for the beginning Internet user. Covers IBM, Macintosh, and UNIX computers.

Global Quest: The Internet in the Classroom is a short video produced by the NASA National Research and Education Network (NREN) K-12 initiative. A copy can be ordered from NASA Central Operation of Resources for Educators (CORE). Teachers may also make a copy by bringing a blank tape into their local NASA Teacher Resource Center. Information on CORE and the TRCs is included in section 3 of this Chapter.

Internet World, Meckler Corporation, Westport, CT. A monthly magazine, which started publication in 1992.

Meteosat Images on CD-ROM, 1986-1991, Meteosat Data Service, European Space Agency, Robert Str.5, D6100 Darmstadt, Germany (price available on request). Contains one full-disk infrared image per day, one visible image on day 1 of each month (at the same time as the infrared image), one water vapor image on day 1 of each month of 1991. Also included are images of the Blizzard of 1993 over the east coast of the United States and images of Kuwait during the Gulf War.

Sources of Meteorological Data Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), by Ilana Stern, 1993. Available through Anonymous FTP to rtfm.mit.edu, from the files weather/data/part 1 and weather/data/part 2 in the directory /pub/usenet/news.answers. If you can't use FTP, send an email to mail-server@rtfm.mit.edu with the following message as the text: *send/pub/usenet/news.answers/weather/data/part1 or send/pub/usenet/news.answers/weather/data/part2* (note: send separate email messages for part 1 and part 2)

Zen and the Art of the Internet: A Beginner's Guide by Brendan P. Kehoe, TPR Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1993.

ACTIVITIES

The following classroom activities are organized by grade level.

ACTIVITIES

Using the Activities 149

Imagery from Environmental Satellites 150

Activities

Grade Level 4–6 Using Weather Symbols 151

Forecasting the Weather: Satellite Images & Weather Maps 161

Grade Level 6–8 Cloud Families 171

Cloud Identification 183

Grade Level 5–8 Classification of Cloud Types Through Infrared APT Imagery 190
Background: Clouds

Comparison of Visible and Infrared Imagery 213
Background: APT Imagery

Grade Level 8 Right Down the Line: Cold Fronts 223

To Ski or not to Ski 229

Grade Level 9 Infrared and Visible Satellite Images 233
The Electromagnetic Spectrum

Grade Level 9 Understanding a Thunderstorm - Development Through Expiration 242

Grade Level 7–12 Animation Creation 255

Wherefore Art Thou, Romeo? 257
Background: U.S. Geostationary Environmental Satellites
Background: Hurricanes

Grade Level 9–12 A Cold Front Passes 265

Will There be a Rain Delay? 272

Seasonal Migration of the ITCZ 280
Background: Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ)

Using Weather Satellite Images to Enhance a Study of the Chesapeake Bay 288

USING THE ACTIVITIES

The activities presented here were developed by pre-college science teachers for use in their own classrooms. The contributing teachers are all participants in a NASA-sponsored project to enhance science education through expanded knowledge of Earth system science and the use of satellite technology and remote-sensing techniques. The NASA series, *Looking At Earth From Space*, was published to provide a comprehensive resource for educators who want to utilize data from environmental satellites in their classroom. Refer to the other publications in this series for additional information.

These innovative activities reflect creative approaches to specific classroom needs, yet they have virtually universal application. The activities enable multi-disciplinary learning, engage higher-level thinking skills, and present real-life applications. The activities suggest appropriate grade levels; minor adjustments for ability and time constraints will broaden their use.

We advocate the excitement that is generated by using ground stations in the classroom. However, the lessons can be used with the satellite imagery contained in this publication, and/or supplemented with imagery from the Internet. Many of the images that accompany the activities have *answer* pages, that is, images with additional information to assist you with analysis. These images are all labeled with an *a*, such as image 1 and 1a. Some of the lessons have visible and infrared image pairs (indicated by *v* and *i*). See pages 94, 95, and 192 for more information about these two types of images.

Satellite imagery may be both a new resource and new frontier for you. The following notes should help.

- The activities were developed by teachers from Maryland and Washington, D.C. and emphasize local weather conditions, topography, and in the one case, the home team. You are encouraged to make these lessons equally relevant for your students by substituting local scenery and focusing on weather (good and bad) common to your area.

- You are encouraged to duplicate and use the worksheets and other materials in the lessons. Some of the illustrations will make effective transparencies.

- Satellite imagery doesn't always duplicate well. When multiples of the images are needed, copies made on a high-resolution copy machine (type commercial copying companies use) may prove adequate. Photographing the images in the book to obtain slides may be more effective than copying. Classrooms with ground stations and/or Internet access can print appropriate images in needed quantities.

- Tap local and electronic resources for support. Local Weather Service Field Offices, weather forecasters, and newspaper and television predictions can assist with and confirm your interpretations of the imagery. The Internet allows access to both satellite imagery and experts who can help with image analysis.

- The weather symbols and cloud abbreviations used in the activities are listed in the glossary at the back of this publication.

- A complete citation of the references listed with individual activities can be found in the bibliography.

IMAGERY FROM ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITES

Environmental (also known as meteorological or weather) satellites are unmanned spaceships that carry a variety of sensors to observe Earth. Two types of meteorological satellite systems are used to ensure comprehensive coverage. The two types of satellites are named for their orbit paths—geostationary and polar-orbiting.

Both types of satellites carry remote-sensing equipment to obtain visible and infrared images of Earth. The images can be captured and displayed with a direct readout ground station (direct readout is the ability to obtain information directly from satellites). Satellite images can also be obtained via the Internet.

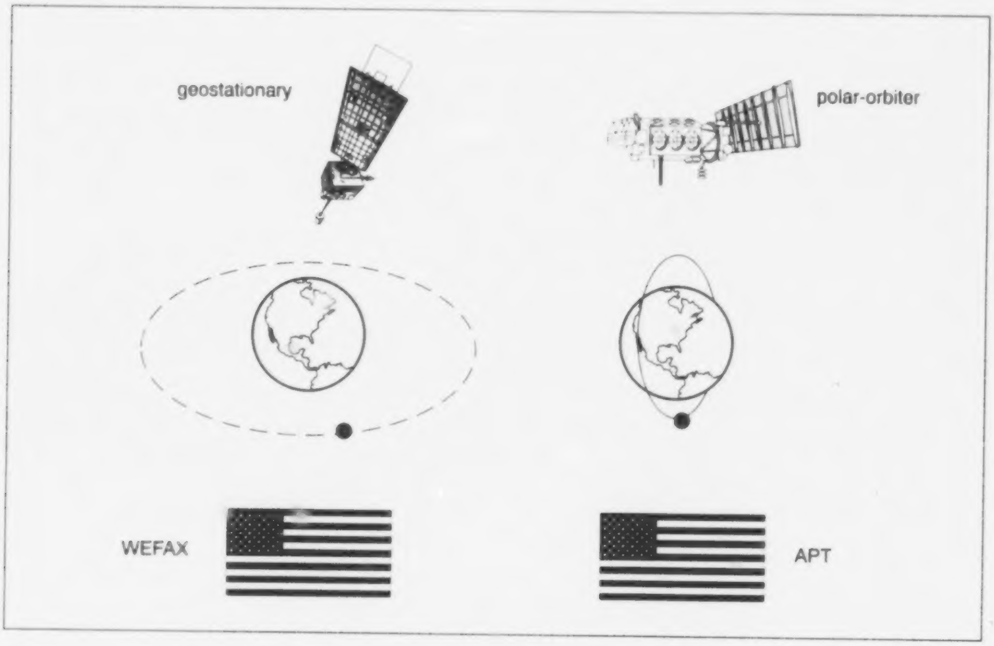
It is important to note that satellite imagery should be used in conjunction with other data. Satellite imagery was not intended to serve as either an isloated or comprehensive resource.

The U.S. launched the world's first environmental satellite, and continues to operate both geostationary and polar-orbiter systems. Direct readout from U.S. geostationary satellites is called Weather Facsimile (WEFAX). Direct readout from U.S. polar-orbiting satellites is called Automatic Picture Transmission (APT). Both WEFAX and APT* are essentially *brand names*, referring specifically to U.S. satellite data. Direct readout from other nations' satellites is correctly referred to as either geostationary or polar-orbiting satellite data.

The following activities specify whether geostationary or polar-orbiter data (images) will be used, and whether visible or infrared images are needed.

* The terms WEFAX and APT refer to low-resolution satellite imagery. High resolution (more detailed) data is available, but requires more expensive equipment than is usually found in the pre-college classroom.

figure 62.



USING WEATHER SYMBOLS

Authors:
Russ Burroughs, Harford Day School, Bel Air, Maryland
Edward Earle, Norwood School, Bethesda, Maryland
Sue McDonald, Canton Middle School, Baltimore, Maryland

Grade Level: 4–6

Objectives:
Students will be able to recognize relationships between weather symbols and weather patterns indicated by satellite images. Note that clouds may indicate weather activity (such as a thunderstorm) but may be present without producing any such activity. Note also that forecasts are developed by assessing a variety of data—it will be advisable to utilize other data with the imagery (TV and newspaper forecasts, information from National Weather Service and/or obtained from the Internet, etc.).

Rationale:
Students will gain experience in creating a weather map using satellite imagery, and will learn some of the symbols commonly used on weather maps.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth science, language arts, geography

Time Requirement:
Two 45-minute periods

Image Format:
GOES visible image

Prerequisite Skills:
Knowledge and comprehension of different forms of precipitation, clouds, and fronts.

Vocabulary:
front, precipitation, satellite imagery

Materials:
1. Large classroom map of North America
2. GOES satellite image (photocopies or overhead)
3. Copies of weather symbols and weather symbols key for distribution
4. U.S. map with symbol keys
5. Category chart (for symbols)
6. Scissors and glue

Activities

Day One

1. Distribute (or project) the satellite image and discuss the information represented on the image.
2. Lead the class in a discussion regarding the importance of using weather symbols.
3. Divide the class into groups of four, for cooperative learning.

4. Distribute the sets of symbols, and instruct each group to cut the symbols apart and categorize them into three groups. Each group of symbols should be somehow related, and should be given a name that describes it. meaning or function. Each team of students will then present their three categories of symbols, and explain their reasoning for their classification.

Day Two

1. Divide the class into groups of four.
2. Distribute the U.S. maps with symbol keys, and the satellite image.
3. Groups will draw as many symbols on the map as seem appropriate.
4. Each group will complete five maps, one for each student and a combined group map.
5. Check work by having jigsaw groups, four members from four different groups, gather to compare their group's weather map.

Conclusion:
Display group weather maps wherever appropriate

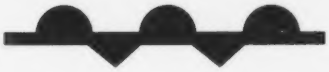
Questions:
1. What are we able to observe from a satellite image?
2. How are weather symbols useful?
3. How are weather symbols categorized, and why?
4. How do we use weather symbols to transfer what is observed from a satellite image onto a weather map?

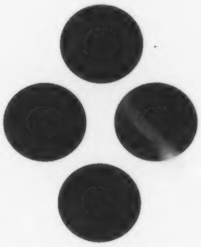
Extension:
Have students develop or discover other weather symbols.

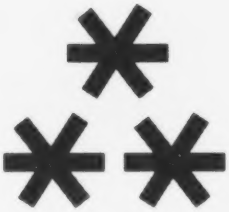
References:

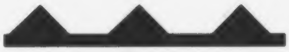
Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment*
GOES satellite image

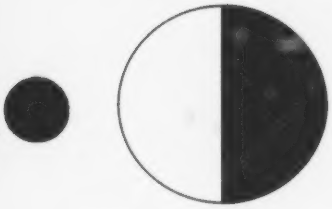
Weather Symbols

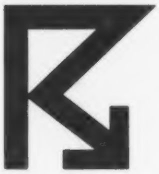


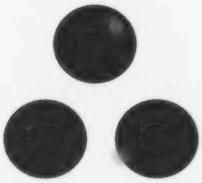


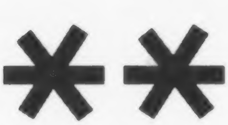


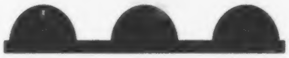


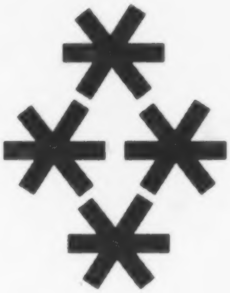


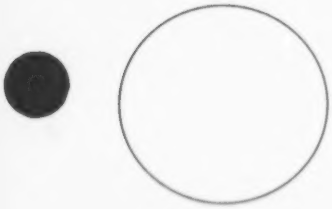


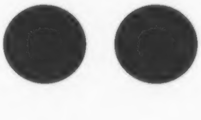


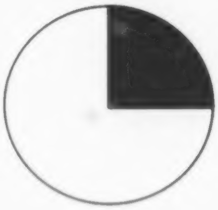












WEATHER SYMBOLS CLASSIFICATION

Group Members:

______________________ ______________________

______________________ ______________________

Category #1: "______________________"

Category #2: "______________________"

Category #3: "______________________"

figure 63

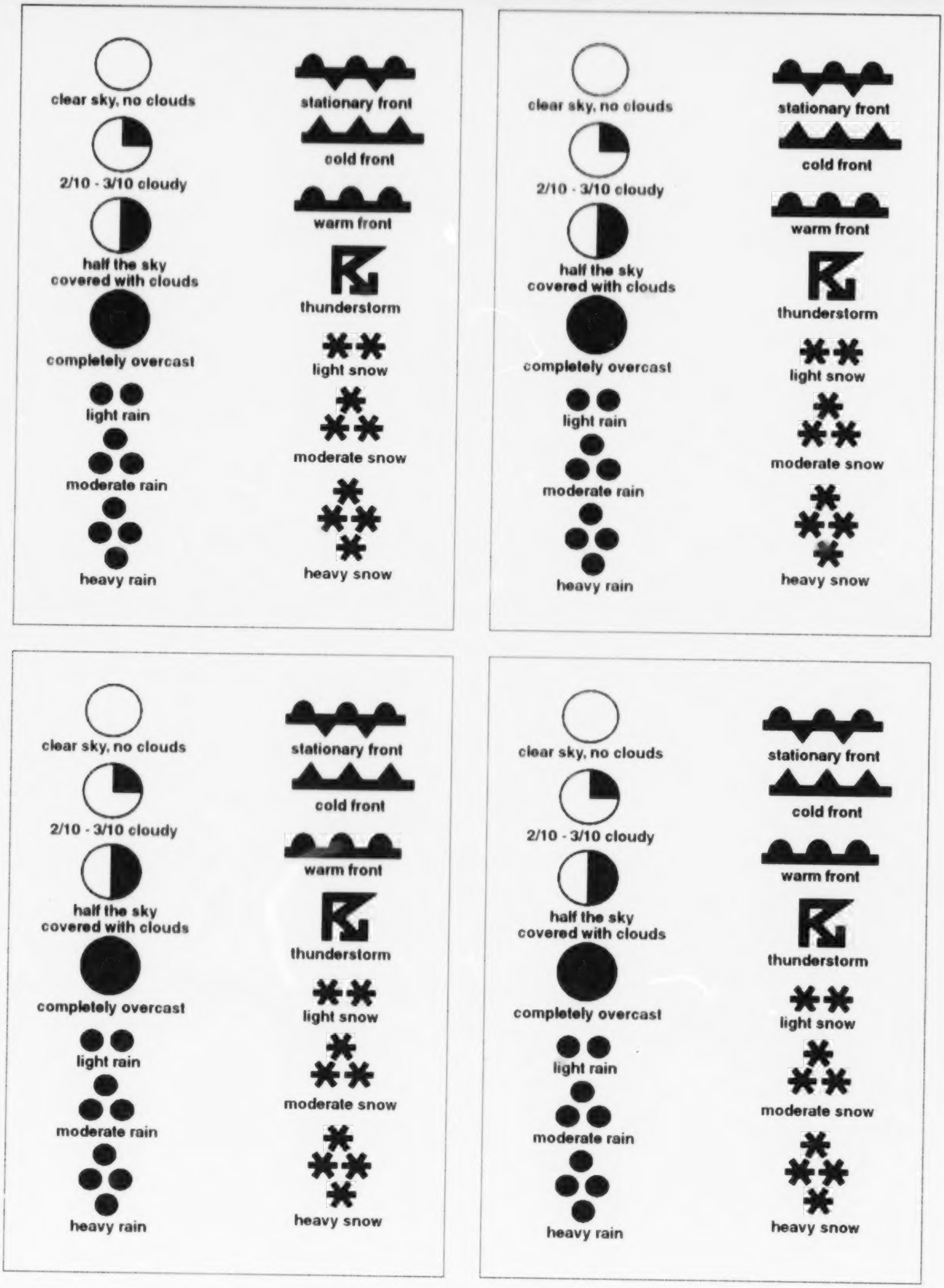

clear sky, no clouds
2/10 - 3/10 cloudy
half the sky covered with clouds
completely overcast
light rain
moderate rain
heavy rain
stationary front
cold front
warm front
thunderstorm
light snow
moderate snow
heavy snow
clear sky, no clouds
2/10 - 3/10 cloudy
half the sky covered with clouds
completely overcast
light rain
moderate rain
heavy rain
stationary front
cold front
warm front
thunderstorm
light snow
moderate snow
heavy snow
clear sky, no clouds
2/10 - 3/10 cloudy
half the sky covered with clouds
completely overcast
light rain
moderate rain
heavy rain
stationary front
cold front
warm front
thunderstorm
light snow
moderate snow
heavy snow
clear sky, no clouds
2/10 - 3/10 cloudy
half the sky covered with clouds
completely overcast
light rain
moderate rain
heavy rain
stationary front
cold front
warm front
thunderstorm
light snow
moderate snow
heavy snow

figure 64. Key: Weather symbols (Copy keys and distribute on day two)

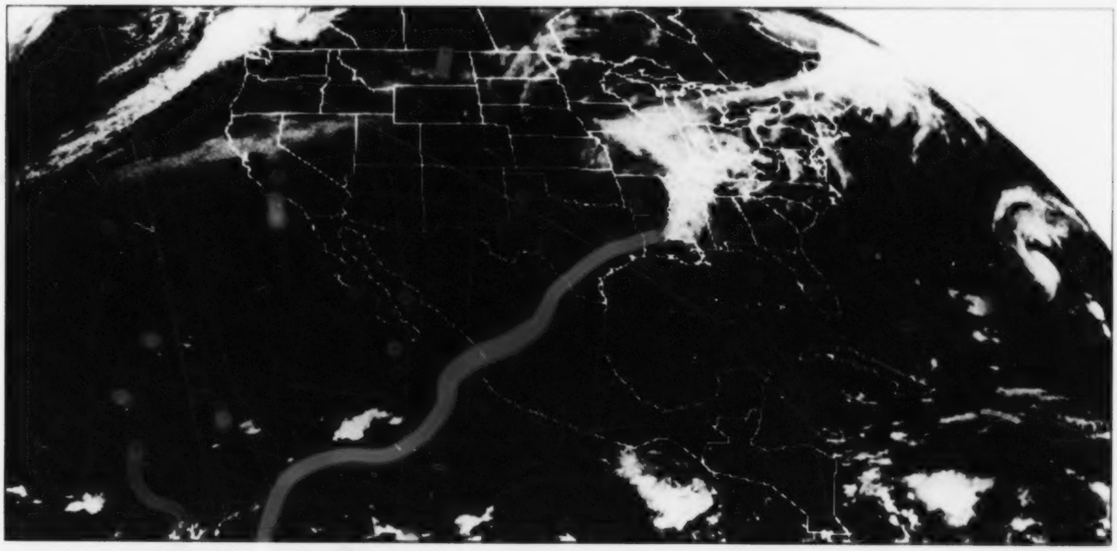


figure 65. GOES infrared image, November 5, 1994
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

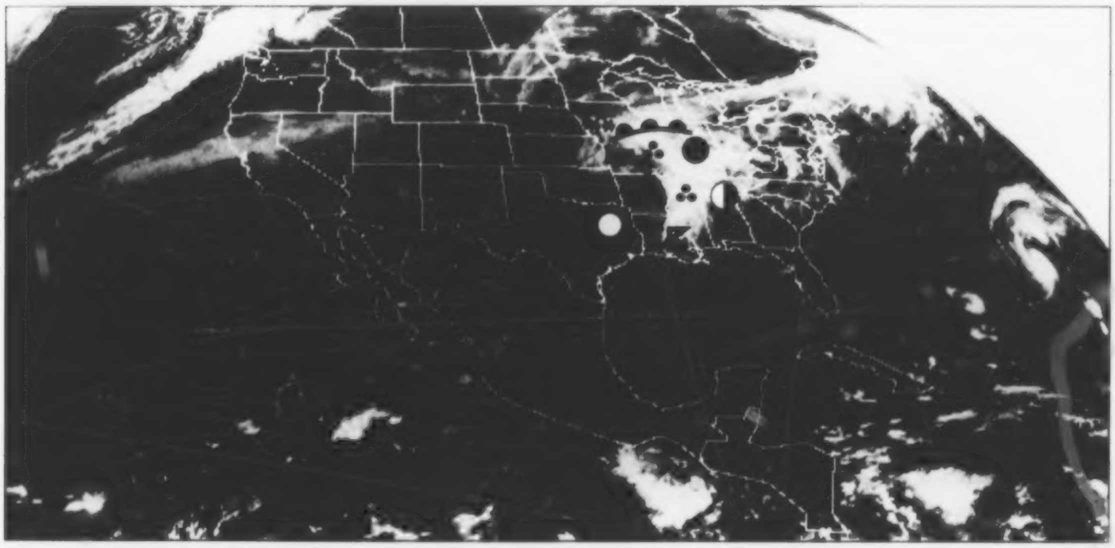


figure 65a. GOES infrared image, November 5, 1994
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Information in addition to the satellite image is necessary to determine whether the precipitation is rain or snow, and how heavy the precipitation is (which symbol to use).

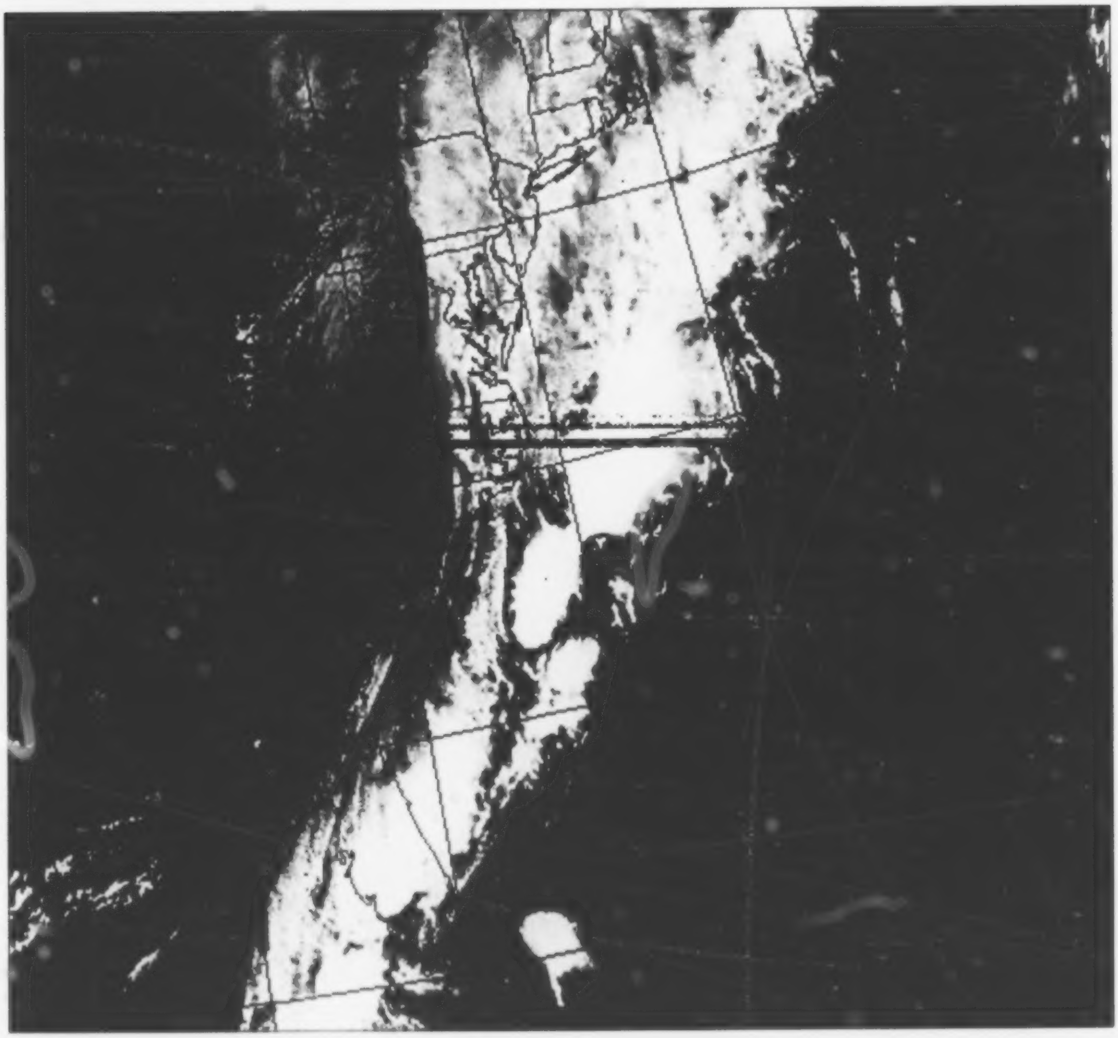


figure 66. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994 morning satellite
image courtesy of D. Tetreault, University of Rhode Island

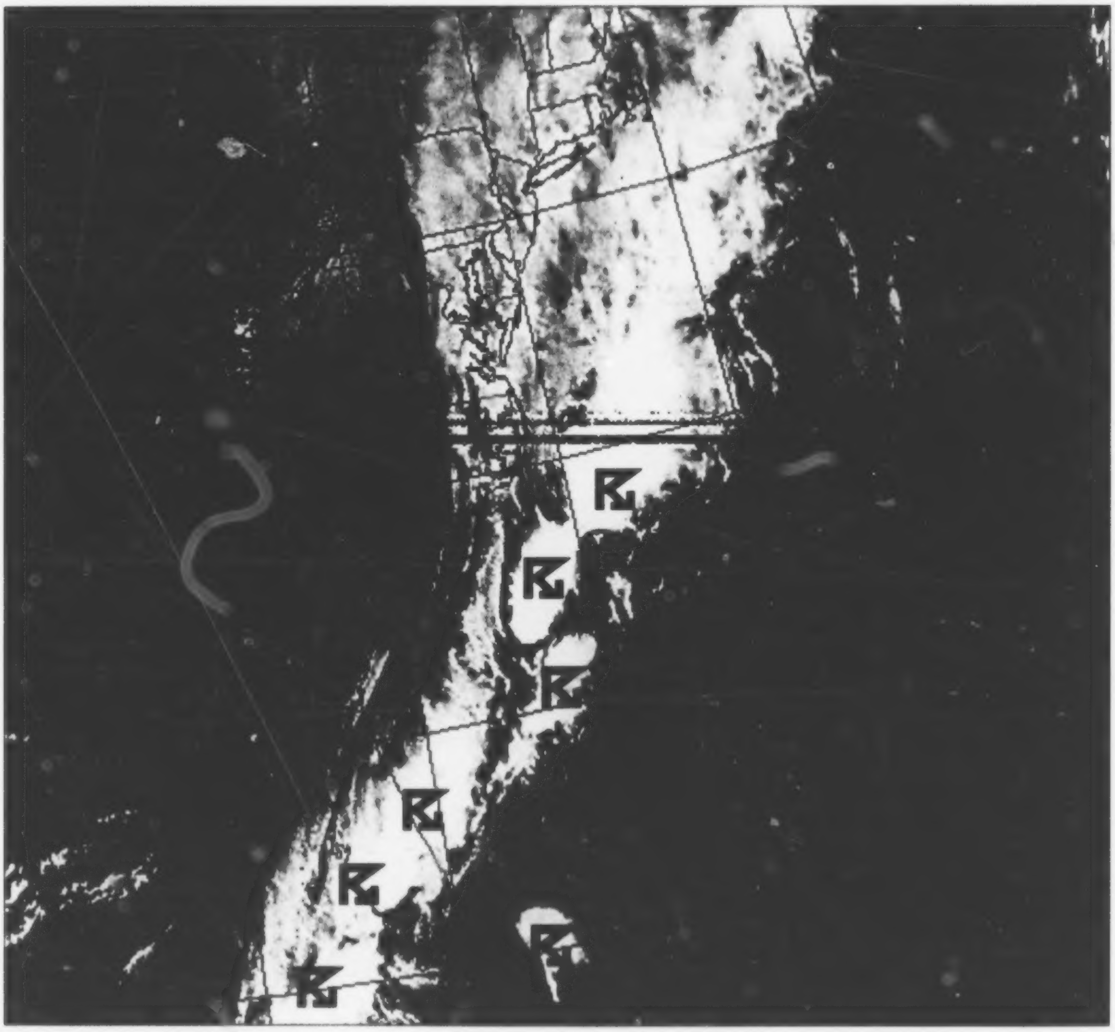


figure 66a. NOAA 10, March 29, morning satellite
image courtesy of D. Tetreault, University of Rhode Island

FORECASTING THE WEATHER: SATELLITE IMAGES & WEATHER MAPS

Authors:
Russ Burroughs, Harford Day School, Bel Air, Maryland
Edward Earle, Norwood School, Bethesda, Maryland
Sue McDonald, Canton Middle School, Baltimore, Maryland
Linda Webb, Jarrettsville Elementary School, Jarrettsville, Maryland

Grade Level: 4–6

Objectives:
Students will use satellite images and weather (outcome) maps to forecast weather for the Maryland region.

Rationale:
Students will be able to see the relationship between satellite images, weather maps, and forecasting.

Essential Learnings:
1. Weather across the Northern Hemisphere can follow recognizable patterns.
2. Satellite images show the movements of air masses that affect weather.
3. Cloud movement and types are related to the weather in a region.
4. The presence of clouds does not necessarily indicate any weather activity.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and Space Science, geography of North America, math (movement measurements, scale, temperature differences), language arts (predicting and writing a weather forecast report)

Time Requirements:
Allotted 45 minute classes will be used as follows:
- one 15-minute class
- two to three 30-minute classes
- one 45-minute class

Image Format:
GOES and APT, visible images

Prerequisite Skills:
1. Knowledge of weather symbols
2. The ability to recognize cloud masses on a satellite image and associated weather maps
3. An understanding of the use of weather instruments to collect data on temperature, wind, etc.

Vocabulary:
forecast, front, imagery, precipitation, stationary, temperature

Materials:
1. Weather maps from local papers (several days in succession)
2. GOES or APT satellite images for the same days as the accumulated weather maps
3. Student map of the United States
4. Student weather forecast sheet

Activities

Day 1

1. Divide the class into cooperative learning teams of four students each.
2. Distribute day-00 weather map and the matching satellite images.
3. Compare the satellite image and weather map, and match features relating to cloud cover and weather events.
4. Report team findings and discuss (whole class).

Day 2

5. Distribute day-01 weather map and satellite image.
6. Compare the image and the weather map, and relate it to the previous day.
7. Record and report any differences. Discuss.

Days 3–4

8. Distribute the third set of weather maps and images.
9. Compare them, and report any differences.
10. In individual groups, look for patterns that are occurring on the maps and images.
11. Discuss as a class.
12. In teams, use the patterns from the maps and images to predict the weather for the next day.
13. Each team member completes a weather map and forecast for the next day.
14. Share and post forecasts and maps.
15. Use a satellite image and weather map for the next day to compare the actual weather to the forecasted weather.

note: Daily comparison of the images and weather maps could be done in one or two 40-45 minute classes instead of daily, for four or five days.

Questions:

1. How are the satellite images and the weather maps the same?
2. How are temperature, clouds, and precipitation related?
3. How does the movement of cloud patterns help us to find weather fronts?
4. How did the satellite images and weather maps change each day?
5. What patterns could you find in the changes each day?
6. How can finding these patterns help us to predict (forecast) the weather?

Extensions:

1. Continuation of daily weather forecasting from maps and images by each group in rotation.
2. Exploration of the factors that might have caused the forecast not to match the actual weather.
3. Investigation into weather forecasting: history, tools, benefits.

References:

Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment*

Berman, Ann E. *Exploring the Environment Through Satellite Imagery*

For Spacious Skies. Sky Watcher's Cloud Chart.

Summary of Forecast Rules by Cloud Types.

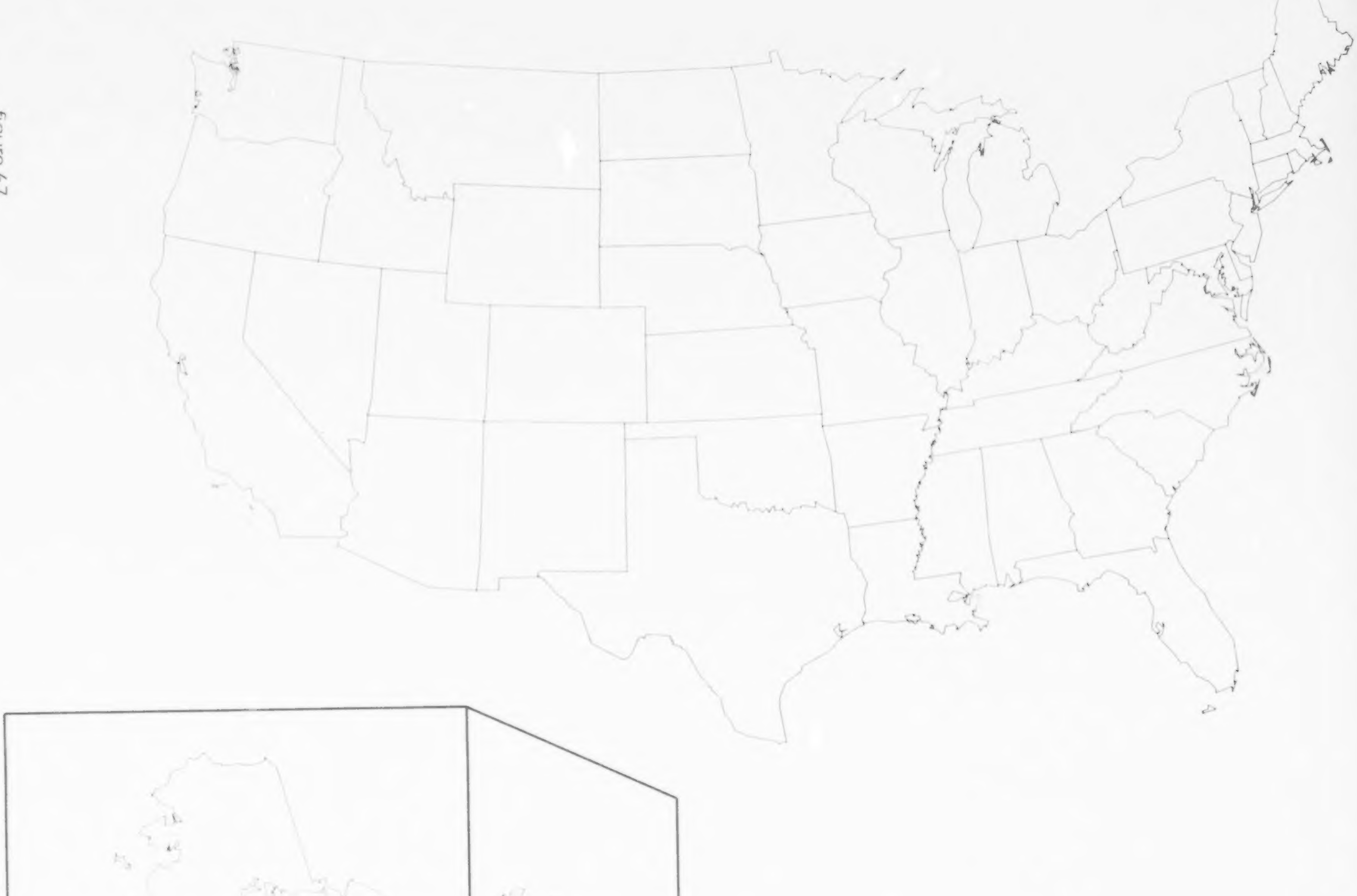


figure 67.

WEATHER OBSERVATIONS

name ____________________

day and date: ____________________

temperature: ____________________ humidity: ____________________

barometer: __________ rising/falling high wind direction: ____________________

cloud type: ____________________ wind speed: fast, slow __________

cloud cover ____________________ %

general conditions:

____

____

____

____

____

____

predictions:

____

____

____

____

____

____

172

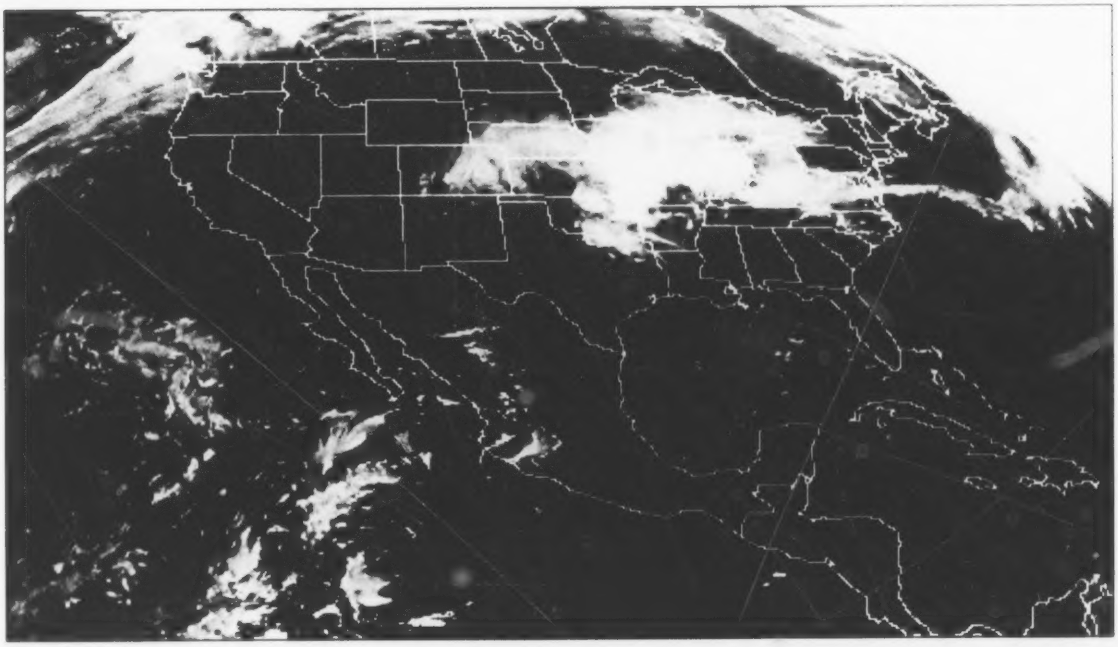


figure 68. GOES image, April 11, 1994, 0900 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

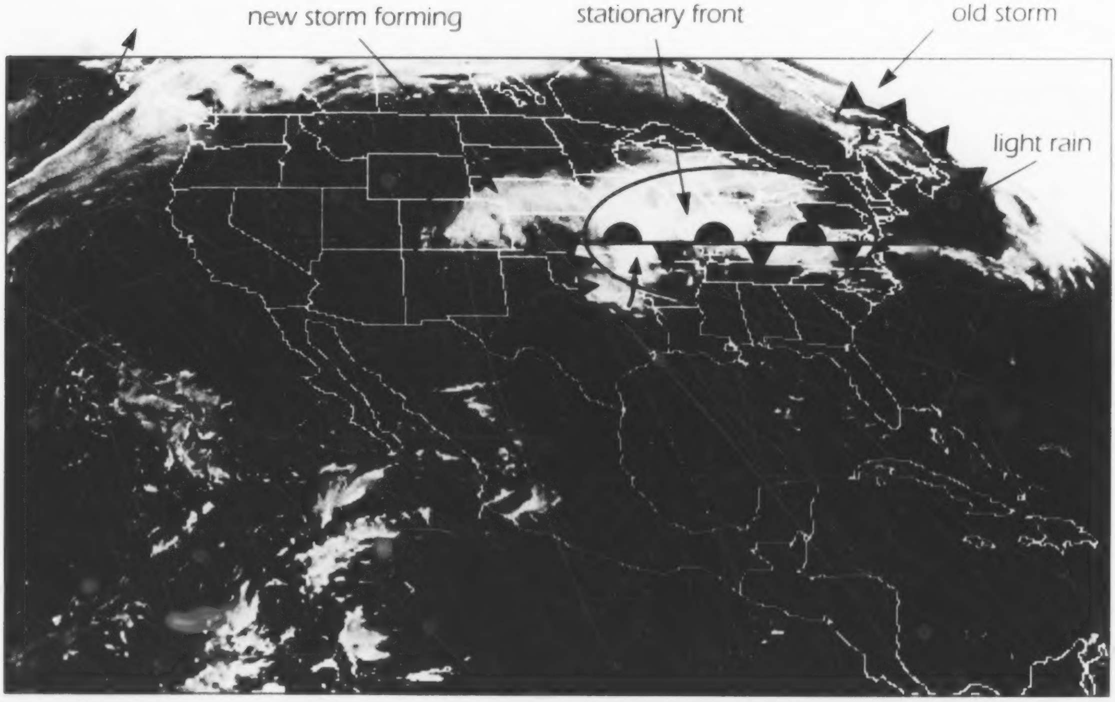
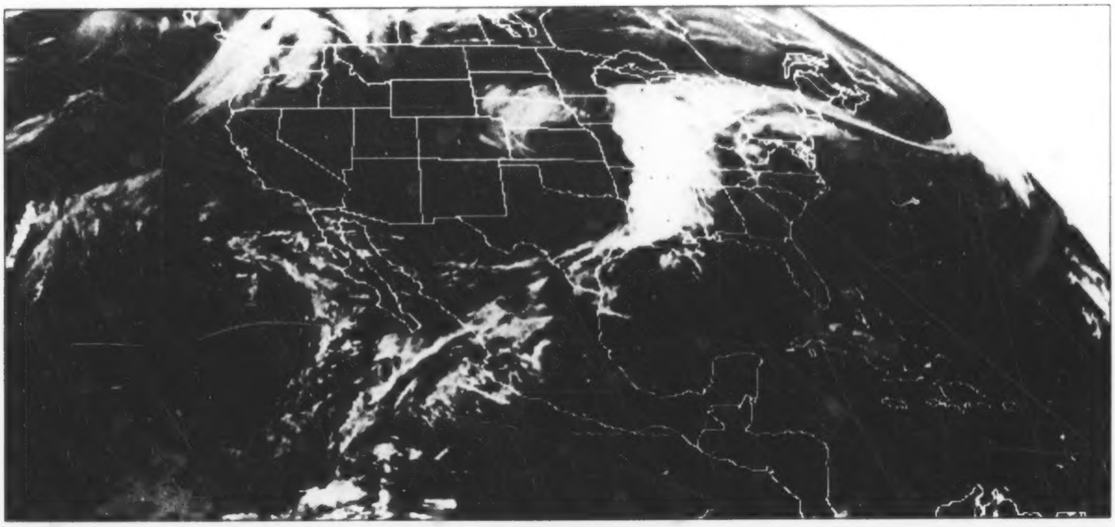

new storm forming
stationary front
old storm
light rain

figure 68a. GOES image, April 11, 1994, 0900 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Old storm is producing rain. Arrows indicate wind direction. Images 1–3 for this activity appear in the chapter entitled *Weather Systems and Satellite Images* as figures 27c.

174



27d, and 27f (pages 40, 41, and 43).

figure 69. GOES image, April 12, 1994, 0100 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

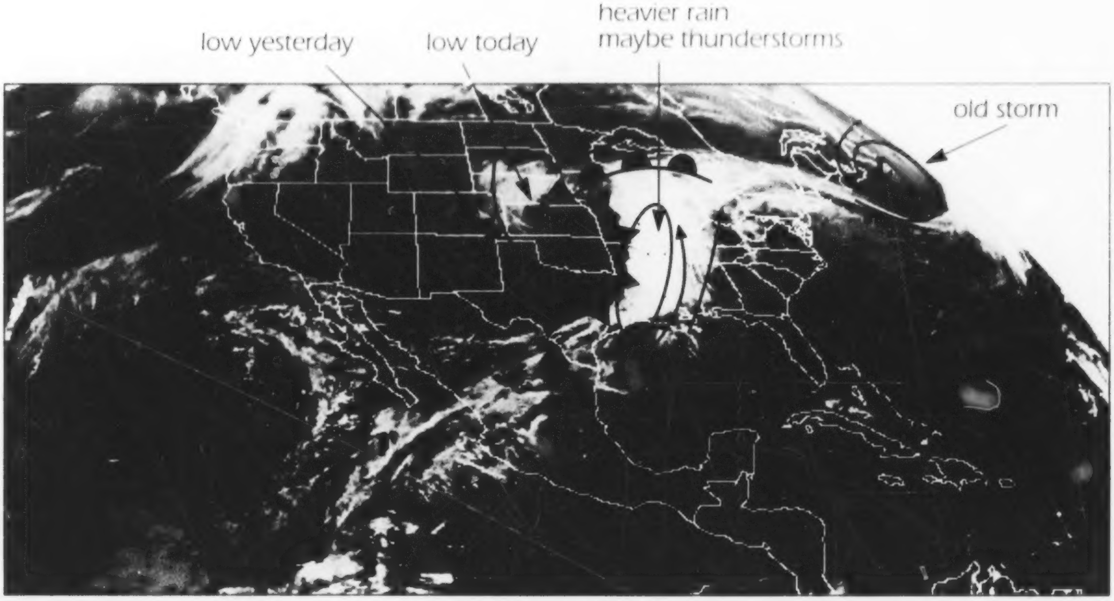

heavier rain
maybe thunderstorms
low yesterday
low today
old storm

figure 69a. GOES image, April 12, 1994, 0100 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Compare position of low and cold front to their locations on April 11. Note that storm is strengthening and moving East.

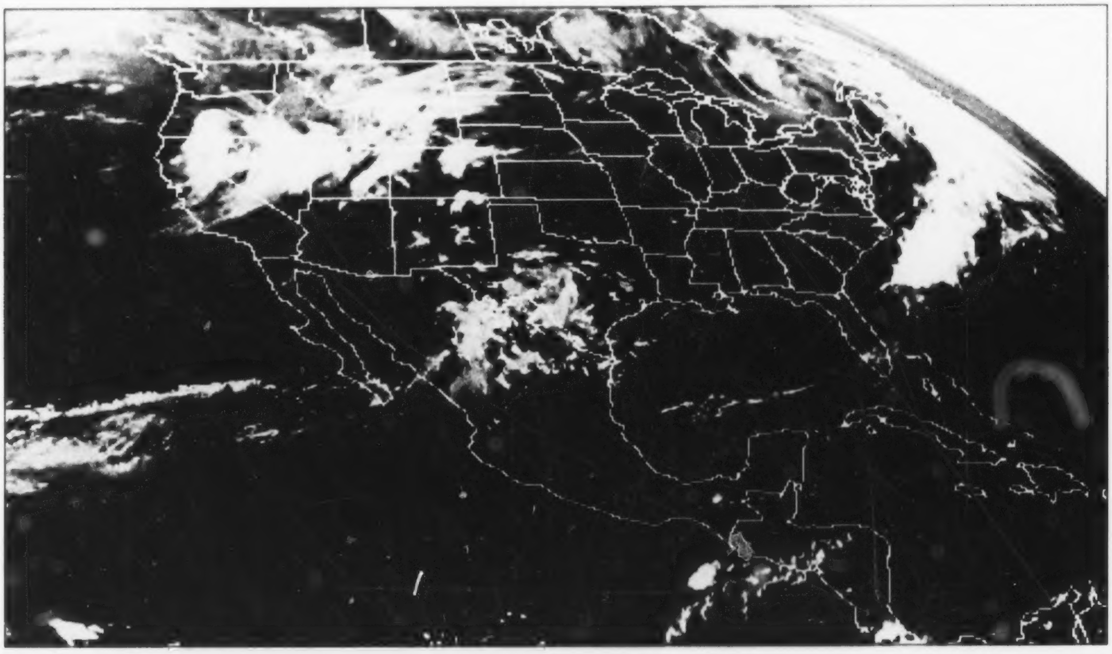


figure 70. GOES image, April 14, 1994, 0600 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

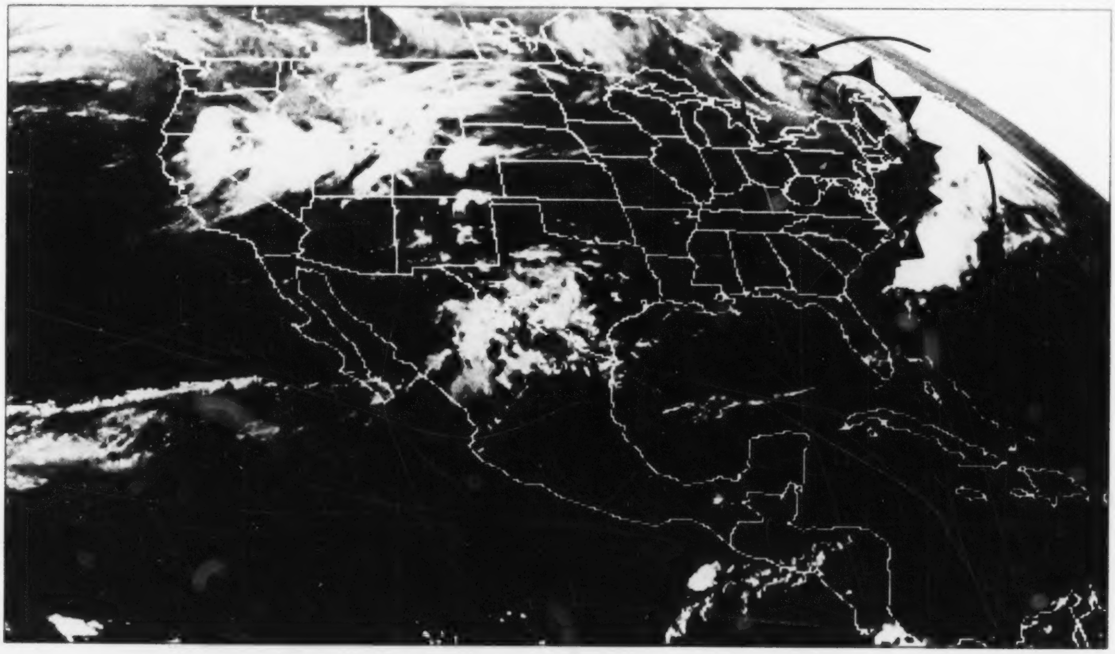


figure 70a. GOES image, April 14, 1994, 0600 CDT
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

Note that the weather is clear over the Eastern United States, and that the storm is gone. Have students determine location of the low on April 13. Have students compare the location of the low in this figure with the location of the old storm on day 1 (April 11).

CLOUD FAMILIES

Authors:

Angeline Black, Kenmoor Middle School, Landover, Maryland
Renee Henderson, Forestville High School, Forestville, Maryland
Karen Mattson, Ballenger Creek Middle School, Frederick, Maryland
Allen White, New Market Middle School, New Market, Maryland

Grade Level: 6–8

Objectives:

Students will be able to:

1. Identify and describe the four major cloud families: high, middle, low, and vertically developed; and
2. Associate cloud families and satellite images with daily weather patterns.

Relevant Disciplines:

Earth and space science, meteorology, photography, art, computer science

Time Requirement:

2–4 class periods

Image Format:

APT and GOES

Prerequisite Skills:

Students should be able to:

1. Identify cloud families they can see from the ground;
2. Identify cloud families from visible and infrared satellite images;
3. Identify typical weather associated with cloud families;
4. Operate a camera; and
5. Access a satellite image from the computer bank.

Vocabulary:

alto, cirrus, cumulonimbus, cumulus, stratus

Materials:

1. 35mm camera and/or Polaroid camera
2. Satellite cloud identification chart
3. Poster board
4. Construction paper
5. Glue, scissors, cotton, markers
6. Satellite images - computer bank
7. Photos of clouds - camera or magazines
8. Telex or slides of satellite images (20 or more)
9. Worksheet: *Cloud Families*

Preparation:

Before beginning the student activities the teacher should:

1. Obtain visible and infrared satellite images (about 20) illustrating a variety of low, middle, high and vertically developed clouds.

2. Organize materials into stations:
   a. Computer with software and stored images;
   b. Camera to photograph images once accessed;
   c. Camera to take outside photos and/or magazines as sources of cloud photos;
   d. Materials to assemble display: posterboard, glue, scissors, etc.;
   e. Materials to create 3-D clouds: cotton, glue;
   f. Reference materials: cloud charts, weather maps.

Note that current conditions may be cloudless or offer only uninteresting clouds. Also note that morning and afternoon sessions may observe very different types of clouds. Cloud observation schedules should be sensitive to these concerns; requiring students to observe clouds early in the morning and before sunset can offset predictable daily patterns.

Activities

1. Take students outside to discuss, view, and identify current cloud formation. Review weather associated with the current formation.
2. Review cloud families via satellite images using slides or telex.
3. Review directions for assignment - see Cloud Families worksheet.
4. Divide students into groups of four (cooperative learning groups).
5. **Day 1:** Have students plan/outline in their groups how they will organize their cloud families (chart, book etc.).
6. **Day 2:** Organize groups into rotating stations so that each group has an opportunity to access materials for each activity.
7. **Day 2–4:** Have groups rotate stations and complete activities.
8. **Final Day:** Display and have groups present their final projects.

Questions:

1. What cloud type would be associated with thunder?
2. What cloud type is made up of ice crystals?
3. What cloud type is associated with fair weather?
4. Compare/contrast a satellite image and ground image of the same cloud.

Extensions:

1. Require older students to break cloud families into specific cloud types.
2. Add cloud symbols as an additional identifier in the activity.
3. Have students obtain real data and record dates on their cloud charts. Save finished cloud charts and have students compare previous year(s) to current year.

References:

Loebl, Thomas S. *View From Low Orbit*
Cloud identification charts

CLOUD FAMILIES
STUDENT WORKSHEET

Objectives:

1. To identify and describe the four major cloud families: high, middle, low, and vertically developed.
2. To construct a display identifying cloud families.

Criteria:

1. Each group will construct a display identifying the major cloud families: high, middle, low, and vertically developed.
2. Each cloud family must include the following:
   - a. Cloud family name
   - b. Photo or magazine picture of each cloud family (from Earth looking up)
   - c. Satellite image of each cloud family with the cloud identified (from space looking down)
   - d. A brief description of each of the cloud families that includes typical weather associated with the cloud family.
   - e. A 3-D model of each cloud family using cotton.
3. Each display must:
   - a. Be titled
   - b. Have group members identified
   - c. Be accurate
   - d. Be neat/colorful

sample format

Location	Cloud Type	Description	Satellite Name	Ground Image	3 Dimensional	Type Weather
High						
Middle						
Low						
Vertically Developed						

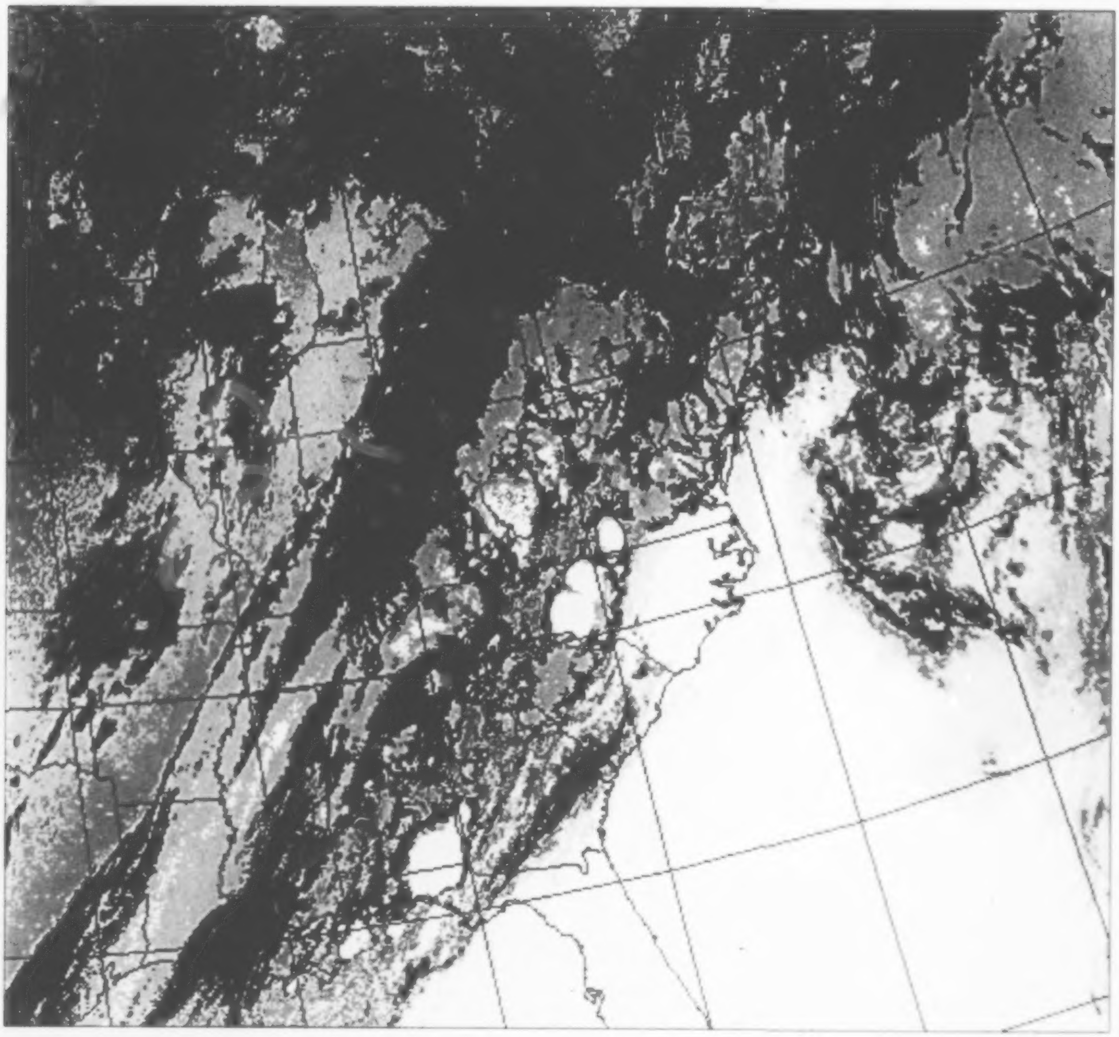
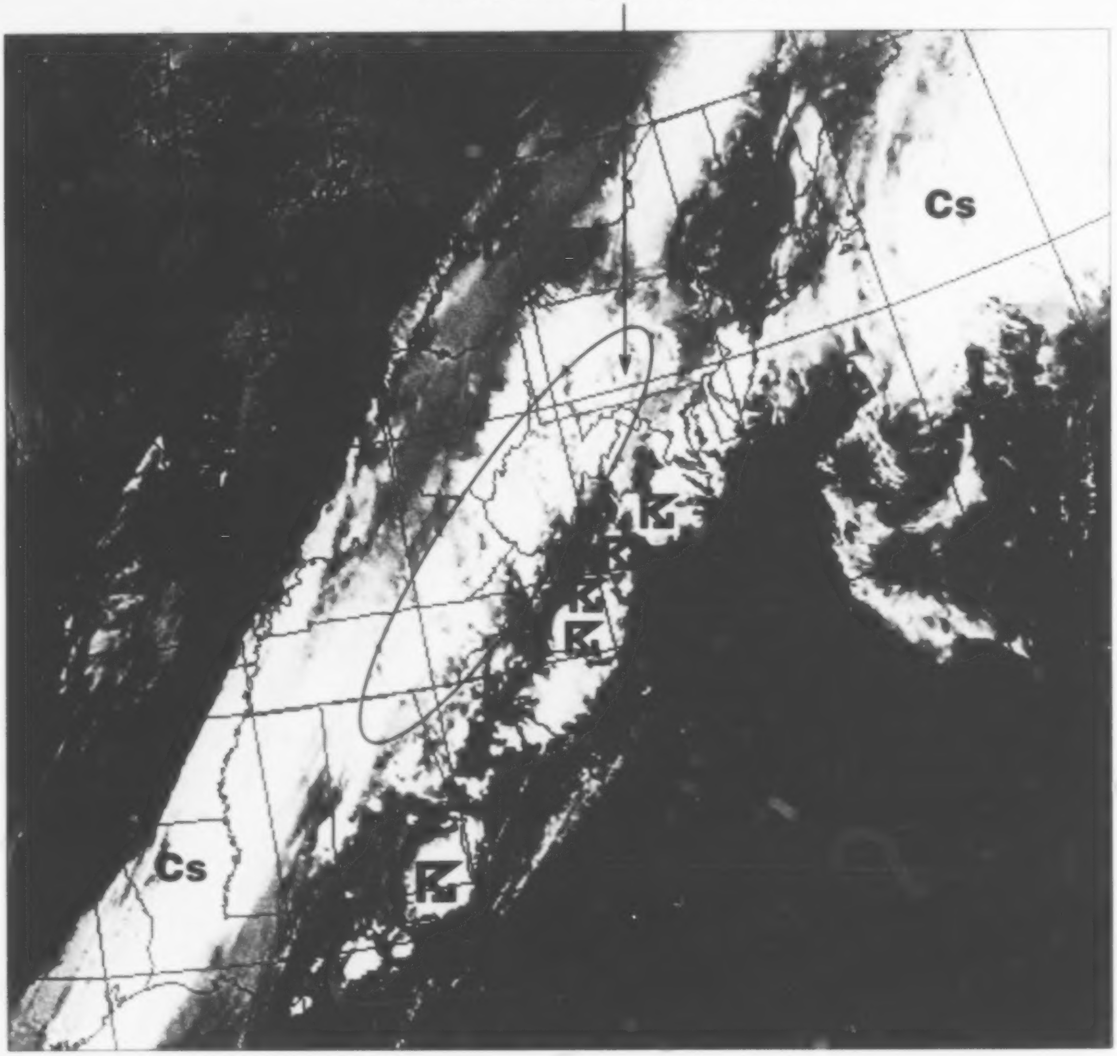


figure 71. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994, infrared
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

Have students use this in conjunction with figure 71b (the visible version of this image) to help identify clouds.


little thunderstorms

cumulus congestus or towering cumulus
mid-level, vertically developed clouds

figure 71a. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

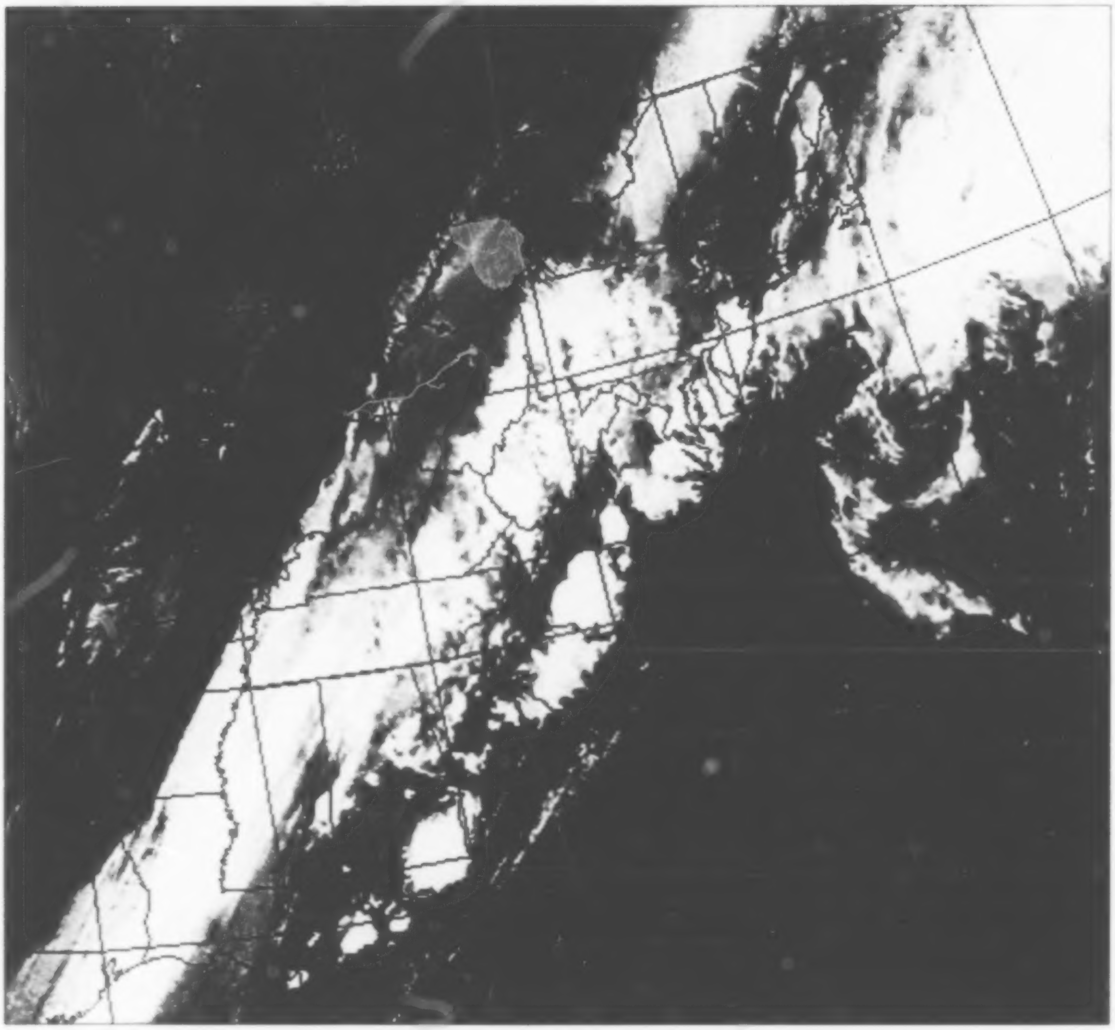


figure 71b. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

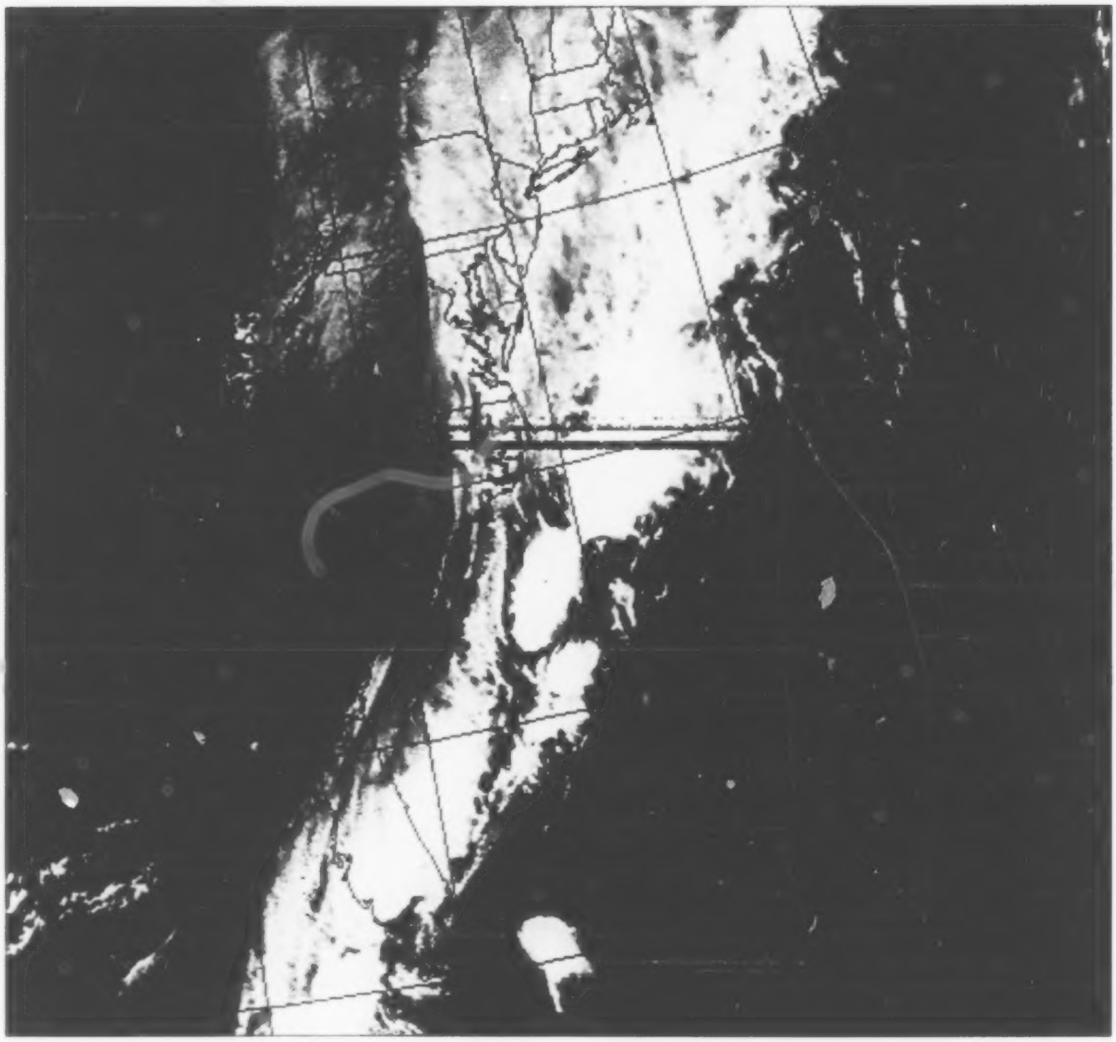
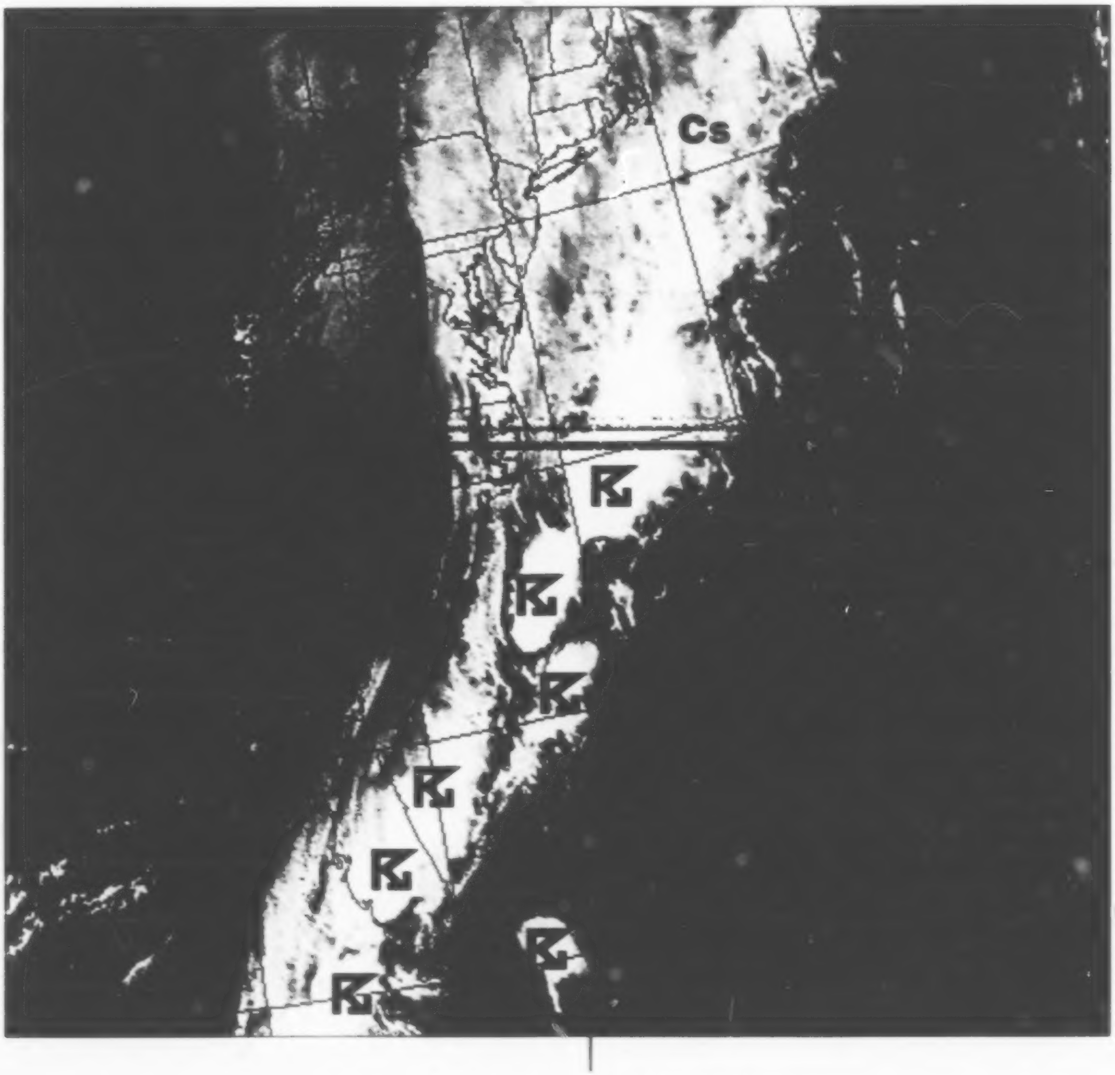


figure 72 NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium



Ci on edges of thunderstorm

figure 72a NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

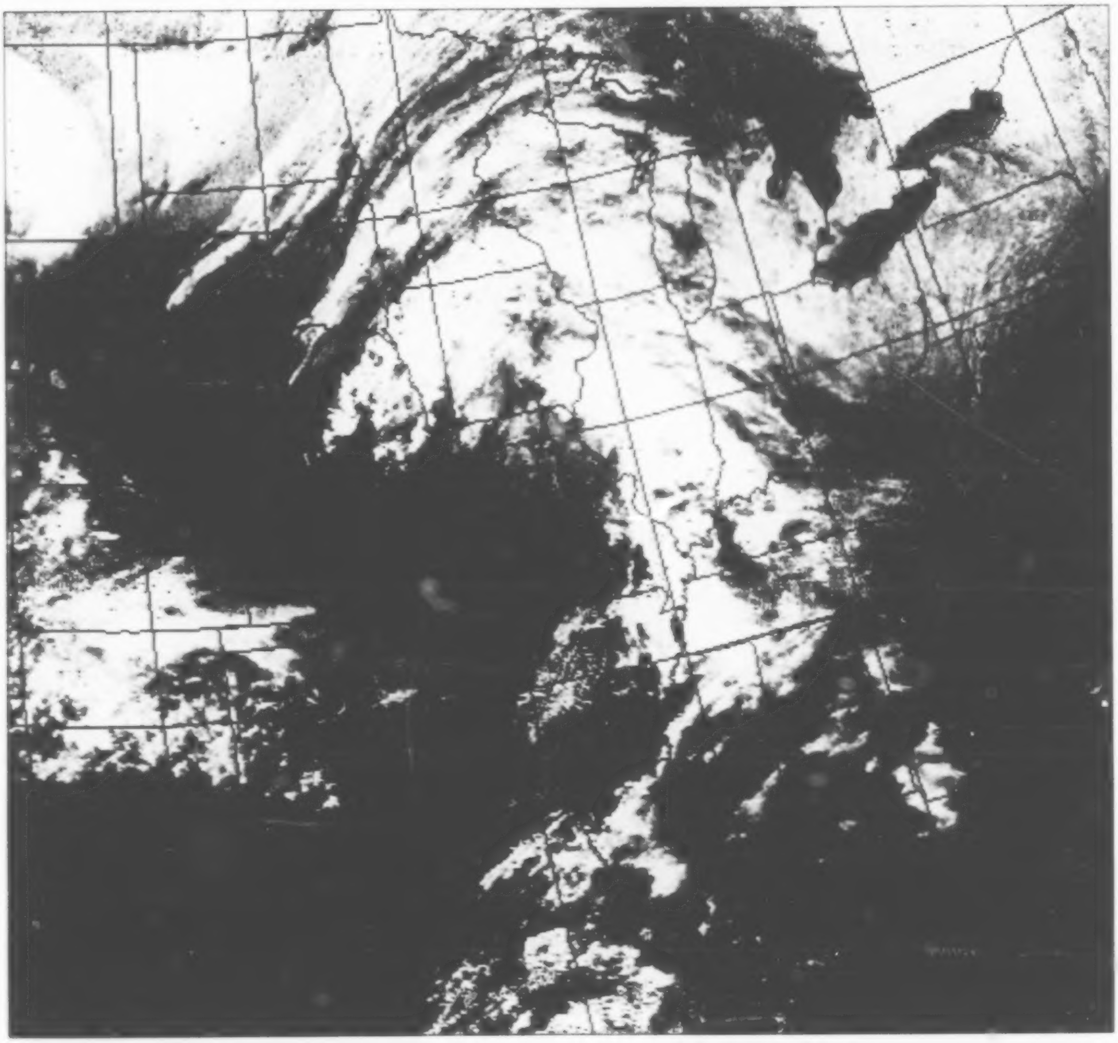


figure 73 NOAA 10, January 10, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

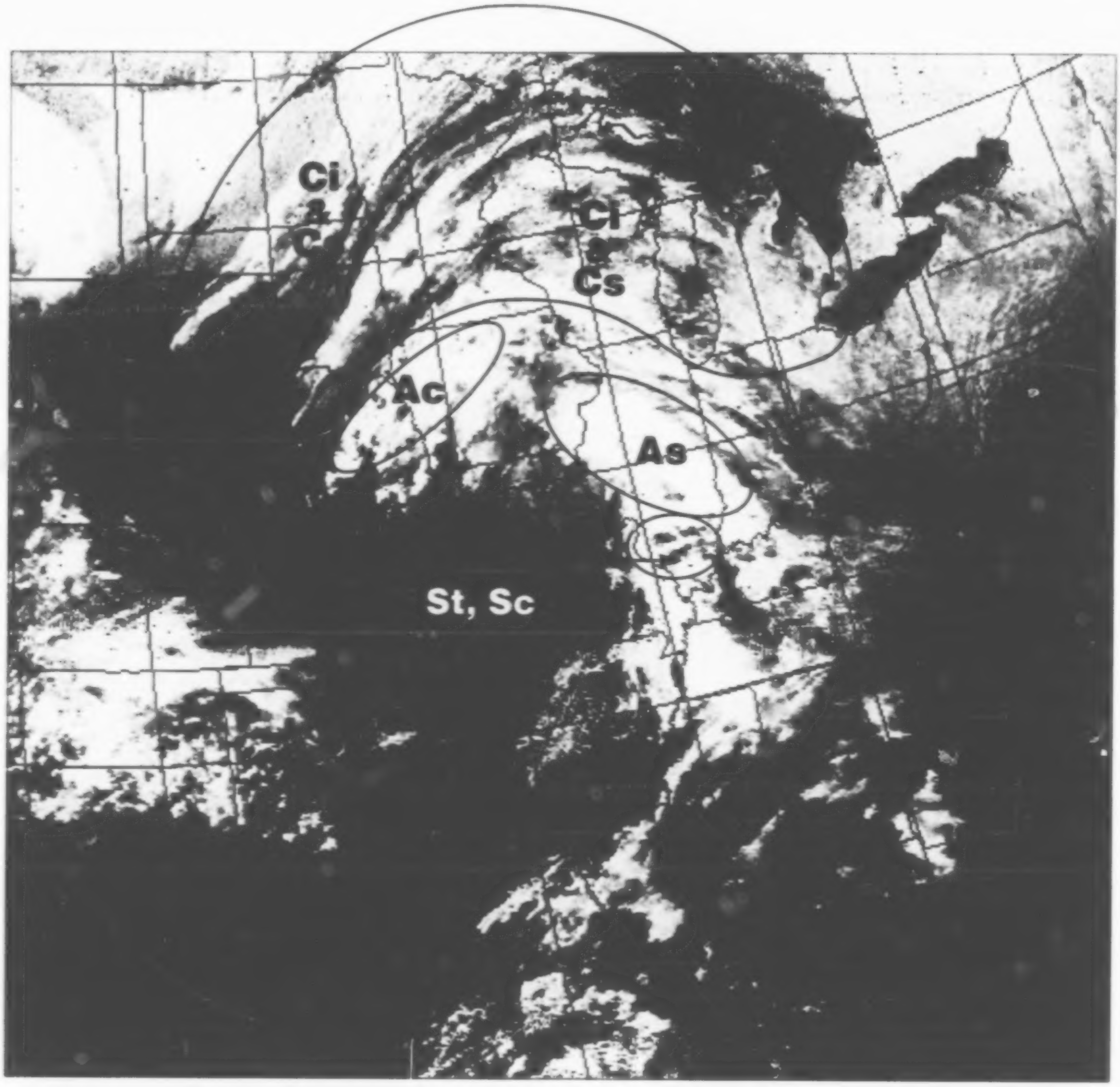

Ci
&
C
Ci
&
Cs
Ac
As
St, Sc

figure 73a NOAA 10, January 10, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

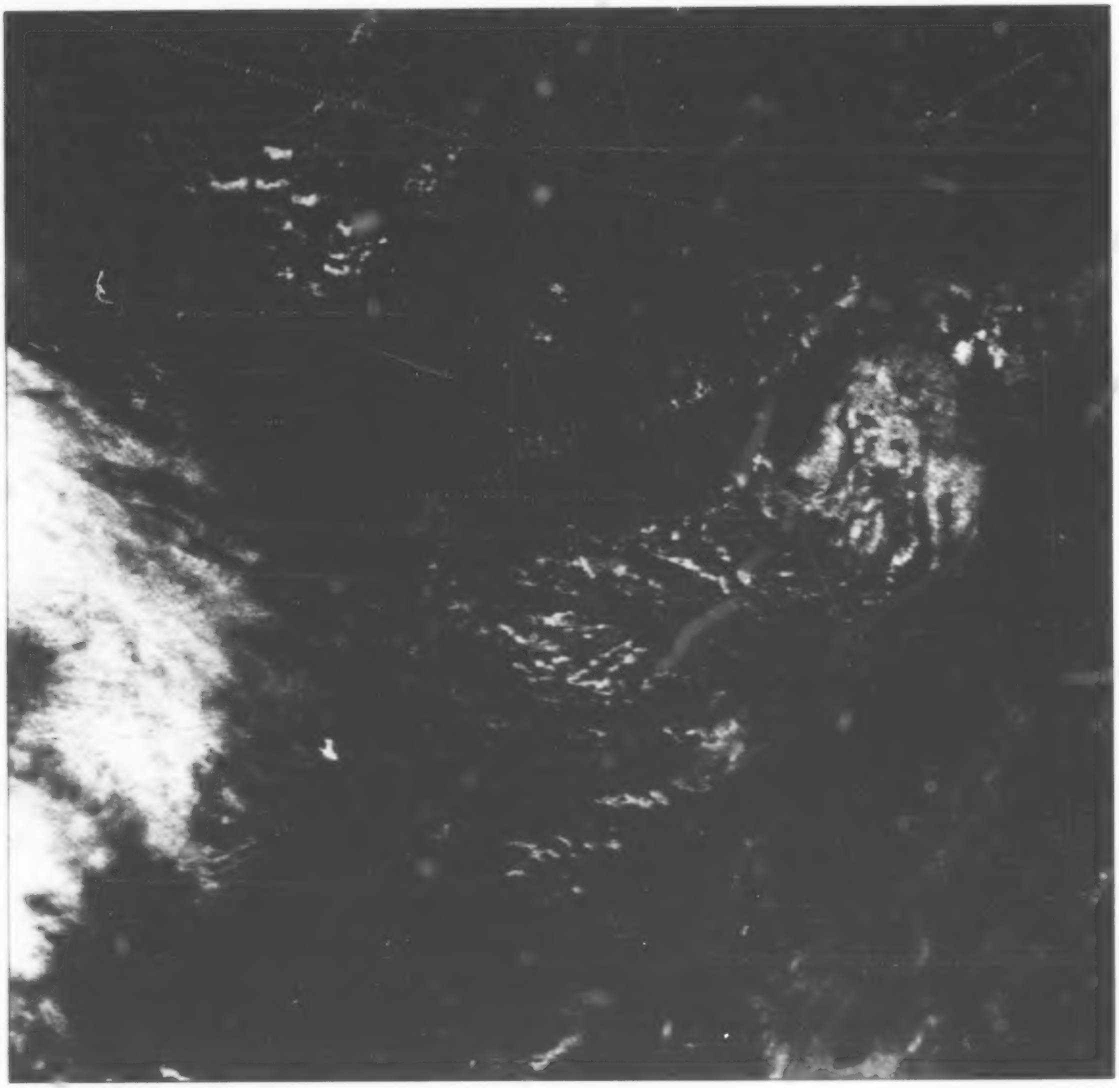


figure 74 NOAA 11, May 27, 1992
image courtesy of C. Davis, Hampstead, Maryland

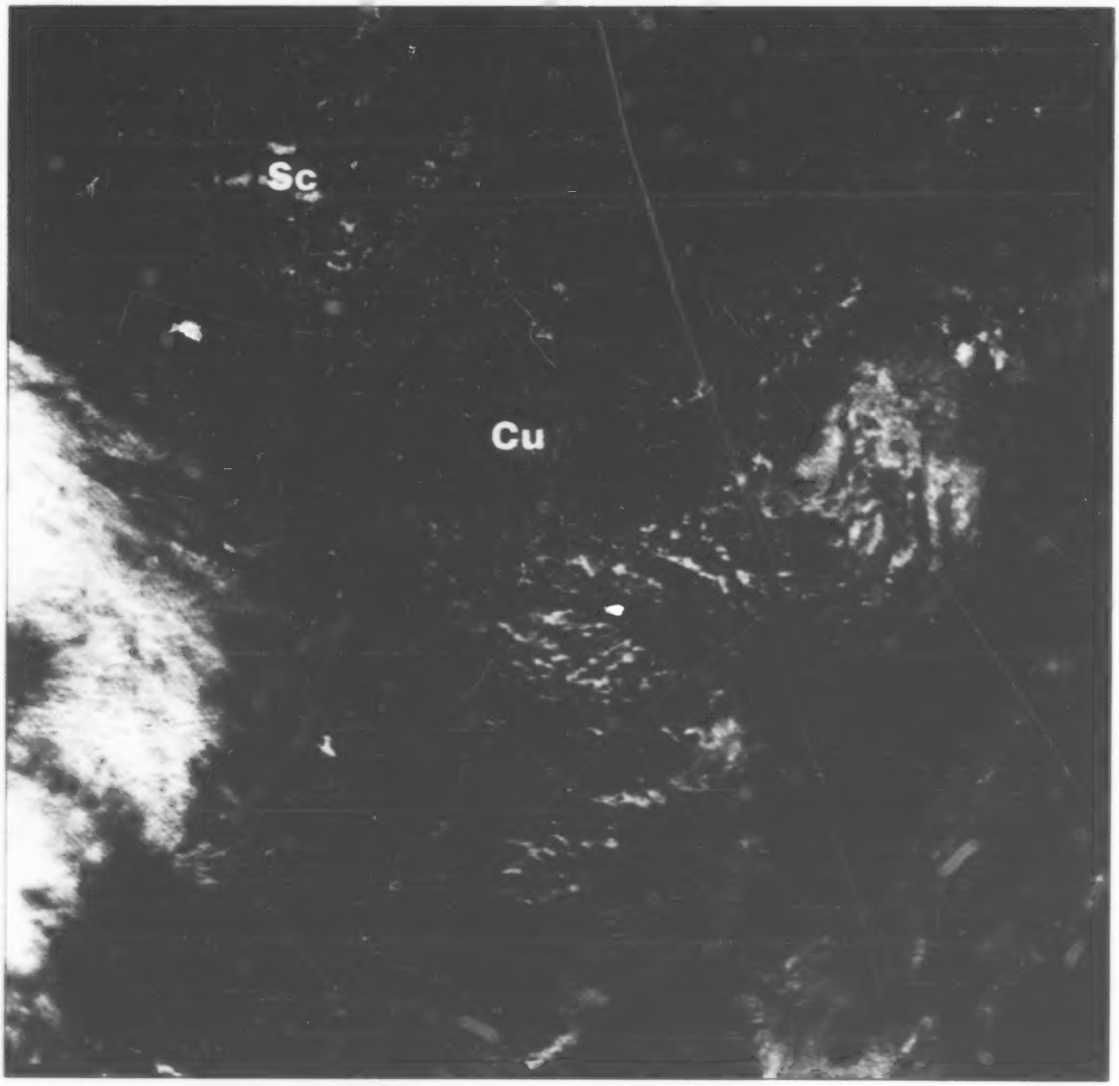


figure 74a NOAA 11, May 2[illegible] 1992
image courtesy of C. Davis, Hampstead, Maryland

CLOUD IDENTIFICATION

Authors:
Angeline Black, Kenmoor Middle School, Landover, Maryland
Renee Henderson, Forestville High School, Forestville, Maryland
Karen Mattson, Ballenger Creek Middle School, Frederick, Maryland
Allen White, New Market Middle School, New Market, Maryland

Grade Level: 6–8

Objectives:

1. Students will become familiar with identifying clouds on satellite images.
2. Student will be able to predict weather using satellite images, weather maps, and other weather data over a series of four days as a low pressure area passes north or south of two predetermined locations.

Rationale:
To associate cloud types and satellite images of clouds with daily weather patterns.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science, meteorology, computer science

Time Requirement:
One 40–50 minute period

Image Format:
APT

Prerequisite Skills:
Students should be able to:

1. Identify cloud types they can see from the satellite images;
2. Identify typical weather associated with cloud types;
3. Access a satellite image from the computer bank; and
4. Identify cloud types associated with fronts.

Vocabulary:
air pressure (millibar/inches), clouds (alto, cirrus, cumulonimbus, cumulus, nimbostratus, stratus), cold front, erosion, precipitation, stationary front, temperature, warm front, wind

Materials:

1. Series of satellite images for four consecutive days stored in a computer bank, or photographs of visible and infrared satellite images for four consecutive days
2. Cloud identification chart
3. *Cloud Identification* student worksheet
4. Newspaper weather maps for four consecutive days or a video of four consecutive days of weather maps from the Weather Channel

Preparation:
Before beginning the student activities the instructor should:

1. Obtain visible and infrared satellite images and newspaper or television weather maps on video for four consecutive days. The images and weather maps should show a typical comma cloud formation; and
2. Label point A to the north of the low pressure area on the images and maps, and label point B to the south of the low pressure area on the images and maps.

Activities

1. With student discussion, the teacher will model the current day's weather relative to the previously identified locations (point A and point B).
   a. Display the satellite image of current day on the overhead/computer screen.
   b. Discuss the current day's weather associated with cloud types.
   c. Relate the current day's newspaper or a video of a television weather map to the satellite image.

2. Divide students into groups (cooperative learning).

3. Distribute *Cloud Identification* worksheet, review the directions, and have students complete the worksheet.
   a. Discuss and draw hypothesis about four consecutive days of satellite images.
      1. Have the clouds moved?
      2. Have clouds dissipated or have more clouds developed?
      3. What kinds of clouds are at points A and B?
      4. What type of weather currently exists at points A and B?

   b. Distribute weather maps or show weather maps saved on video for four consecutive days. How does the actual weather relate to your hypothesis when you discussed the satellite images?

   c. Have students, working in groups, complete the *Cloud Identification* worksheet.

   d. Discuss trends observed over the four consecutive days that were observed in the satellite-images and on the weather maps.

   e. As a class, review possible responses to the worksheet.

Extension:
This activity can be completed in cooperative groups or as a whole class discussion. Some teachers may want students to write their responses for graded evaluation.

1. You are a farmer living at point B.
   a. How would the weather affect your crops over the four days?
   b. Would you be concerned about surface erosion of your fields over the four day period? Why or why not?
   c. How would your farming activities be affected?
   d. Compare/contrast the affects of the weather on farms at points A and B.

2. You are planning a camping trip to point A.
   a. Which day would be the best for your trip?
   b. What type of clothing should you take?
   c. How would your camping activities (hiking, sleeping, cooking) be affected?
   d. Compare/contrast points A and B as sites for a camping trip based on the weather.

References:
Cloud identification charts
"The Weather Channel"
Local or national newspapers

CLOUD IDENTIFICATION WORKSHEET

name ______________________________

Point A	Point B
DAY 1	DAY 1
Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:	Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:
DAY 2	DAY 2
Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:	Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:
DAY 3	DAY 3
Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:	Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:
DAY 4	DAY 4
Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:	Cloud type: Weather conditions: precipitation: wind: speed/direction: front type: temperature: air pressure:

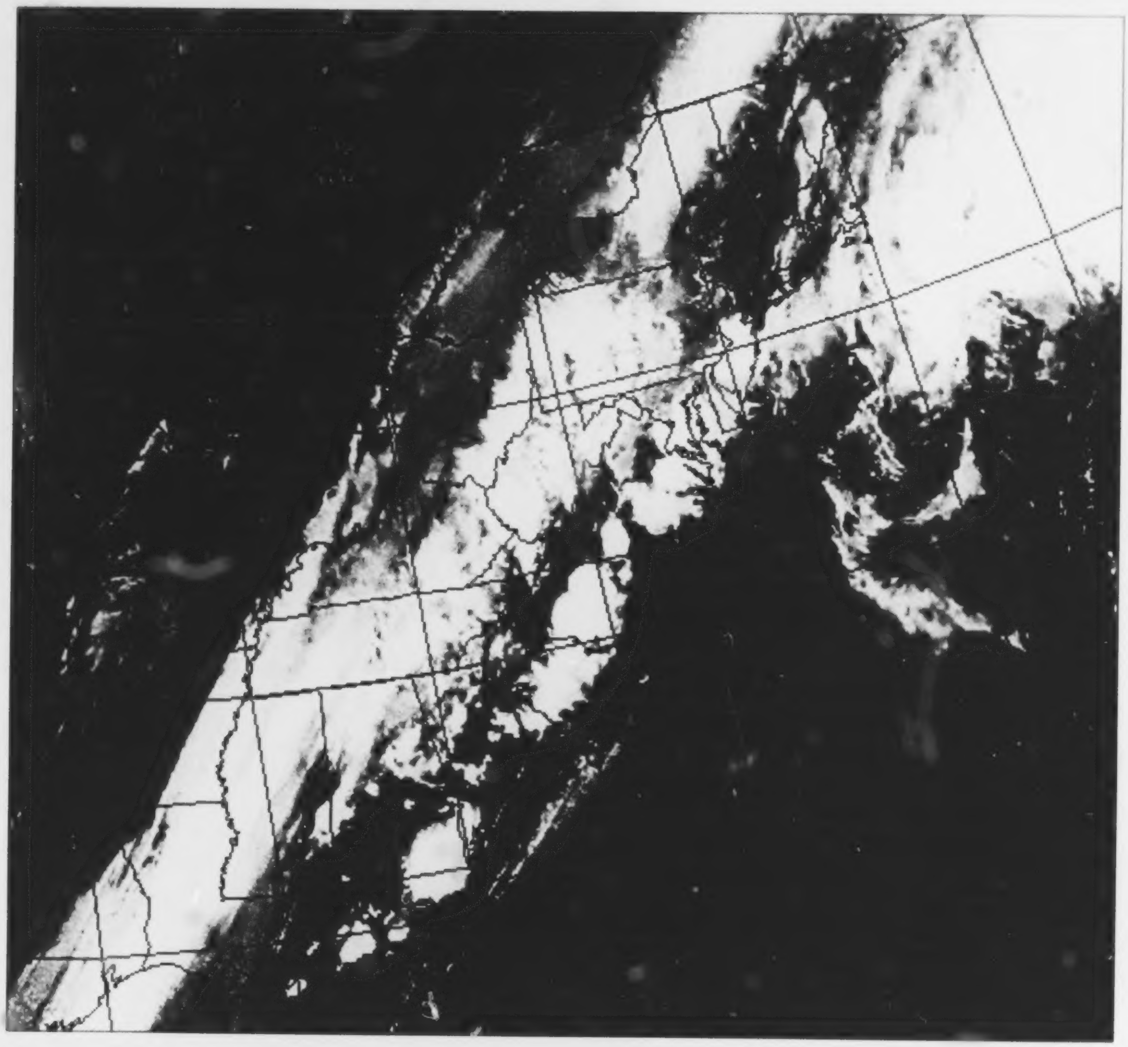


figure 75v. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
visible image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

Note: See figure 71a (page 175) for additional information about figures 75v and 75i.

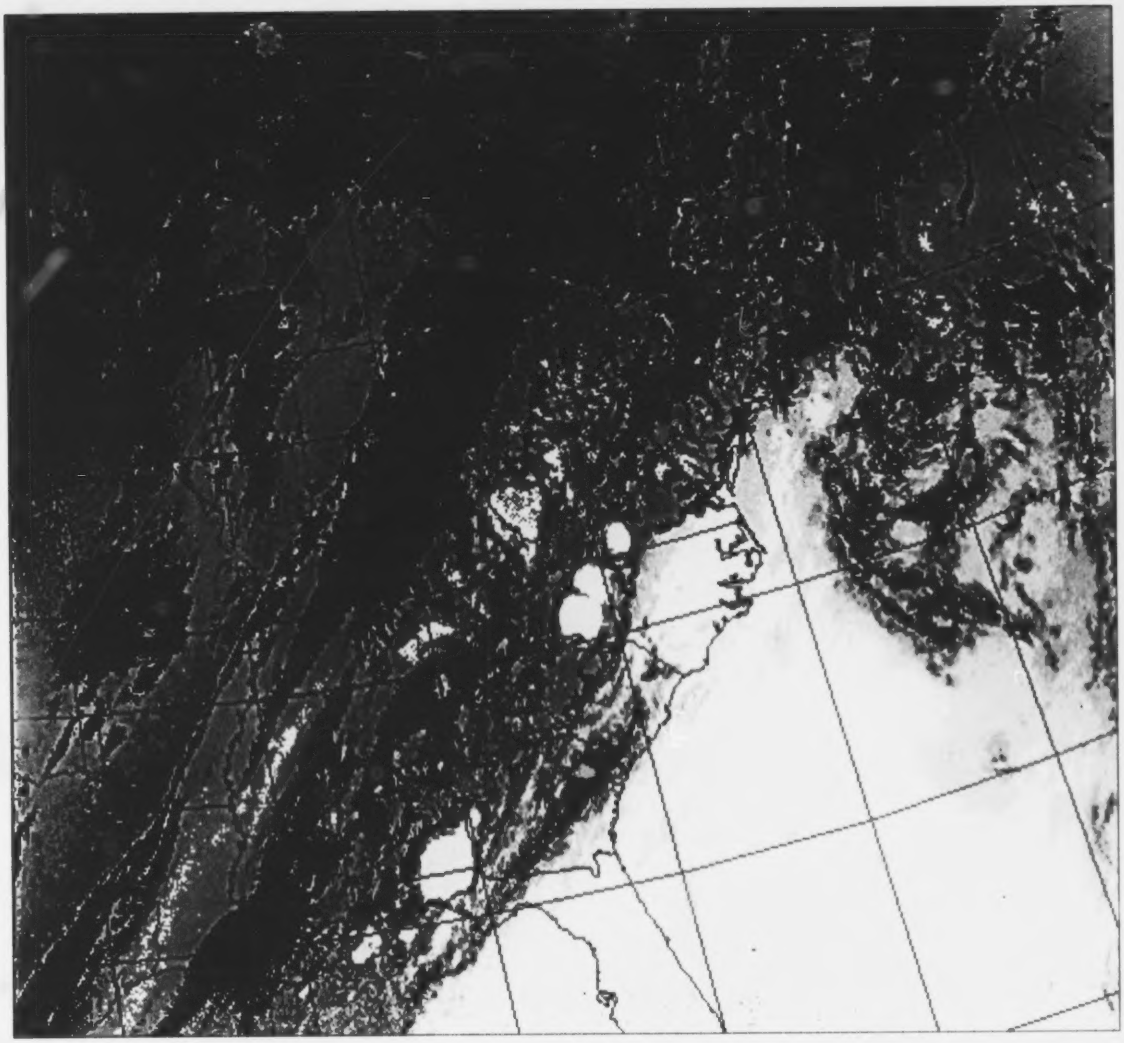


figure 75i. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

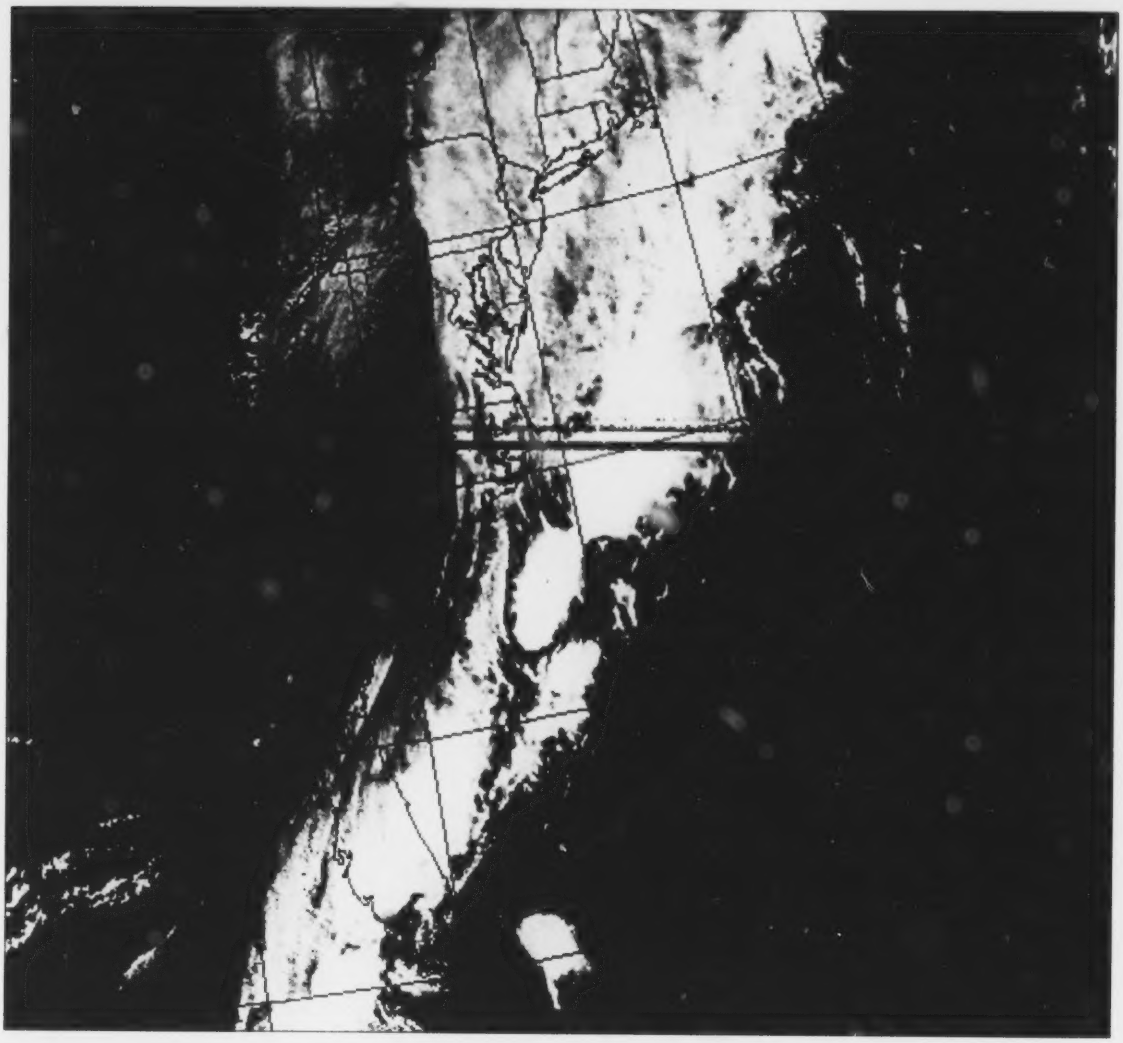


figure 76v. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
visible image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

Refer to figure 72a, page 178 for additional information abouth this image.

Reception of satellite images is often affected by local sources of interference—**noise**. On satellite images, interference typically appears as horizontal stripes, as in this image. Common sources of interference are household appliances, motors (heating and cooling, vacuum cleaners, etc.), radio and aircraft transmissions, automobiles, and fluorescent lights. The higher the frequency, the less susceptible the receiving equipment is to noise (geostationary reception is less affected than polar-orbiting satellite reception).

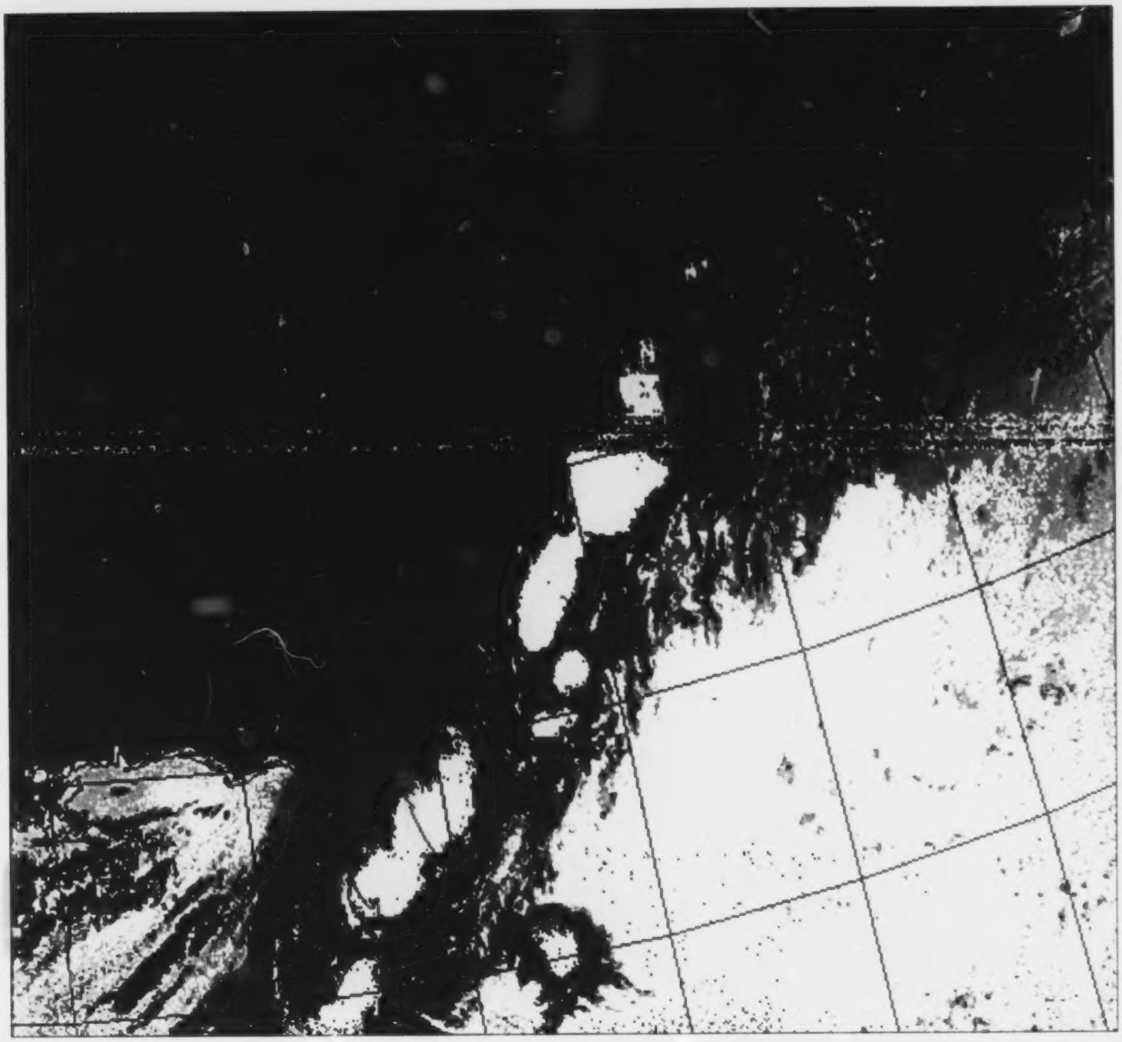


figure 76i. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

CLASSIFICATION OF CLOUD TYPES THROUGH INFRARED APT IMAGERY

Authors:
Stu Chapman, Southampton Middle School, Bel Air, Maryland
Bill Davis, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
Tony Marcino, Margaret Brent Middle School, Helen, Maryland

Grade Level: 5–8

Objectives:
Students will be able to:

1. Use statistical methods to analyze and display direct readout APT infrared (thermal) imagery;
2. Communicate experimental procedures through mapping and computer simulation;
3. Classify clouds into three types according to the altitude of the cloud tops using infrared APT imagery photographs; and
4. Use cloud classification data to predict possible locations where precipitation may be forecast.

Science Thinking Skills:
Categorizing, classifying, constructing, contrasting, decision-making, defining, describing, discussing, generalizing, identifying, identifying the main idea, justifying, observing, organizing, sequencing, summarizing, visualizing

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science, geography, mathematics, art

Time Requirement:
Three science periods on successive days:
day 1 - warm-up exercise, classifying clouds
day 2 - classifying clouds on infrared APT images
day 3 - simulating computer imaging software

Image Format:
APT infrared imagery

Materials:

1. 35 mm slides depicting at least nine major cloud types. If slides are unavailable, substitute textbook pictures.
2. Four to five sets of cloud cards displaying various cloud types and classifications (pages 199–201).
3. Student worksheets and *Cloud Type Survey*, U.S. outline map, one student scanner map, and the computer simulation worksheet, all enclosed.
4. APT groundstation(s), images obtained via internet, or photographs of satellite images.
5. One infrared APT image of the local geographic area - **large enough to display to the whole class** - which clearly displays local topographic surface features (such as the Great Lakes), and all three of the major cloud types as classified by height.
6. APT infrared images - at least three per group - showing at least two of the major cloud types (high, middle, low). These may be supplied on disks for available ground stations, or as photographs of satellite images.

Preparation:

Prior to the first lesson, divide the class into cooperative working groups of four or five and have each group cut out a set of six cloud cards (included). Each card will display the following information:

1. Picture of the cloud with its name
2. Altitude range (0–2 km, 2–6 km, 6–12 km) for each type - some altitudes may be supplied in meters or feet to encourage student conversion of units
3. Composition of the cloud (water, water and ice, or just ice)

You may want to add to the cards provided by making additional cards for altostratus, altocumulus, cirrostratus, cirrocumulus, and nimbostratus.

Reference:

Berman, Ann E. *Exploring the Environment Through Satellite Imagery.*

BACKGROUND: CLOUDS

Clouds may be classified by shape, content, or cloud height. For day 1, students will classify clouds by height, based on the appearance of cloud types in the polar-orbiter imagery. Infrared imagery is thermally sensitive, so areas of different temperatures display as different intensities on a gray scale (white is coldest, black is warmest, middle temperatures are shades of gray).

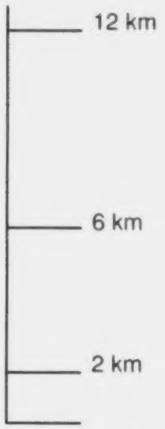
The two basic shapes under which clouds may be classified are:
stratus - layered and sheetlike and cumulus - puffy and heap-like
Many clouds exhibit combinations of both traits. Cloud content may include water droplets only, a mixture of water and ice, or just ice. Cloud heights are generally described as low (under 2 km), medium (2–6 km), or high (6–12 km); these are average cloud heights for the mid-latitudes.

The temperature of the atmosphere generally decreases with height. The rate of decrease in air temperature with elevation is called the environmental lapse rate. An average value for this lapse rate is about 7 degrees Celsius per kilometer. The direct relationship is **adiabatic** (page 48)—moisture helps control and decrease temperature.

In an infrared (thermal) image, temperature provides a quantitative measurement of cloud-top temperature with the coldest areas appearing to be the brightest. Low-level clouds, which are closest to the ground and therefore the warmest, appear dark gray and may be hard to distinguish from the ground. Mid-level clouds appear in medium (brighter) shades of gray due to their cooler temperature. High level clouds, the coldest, appear very pale gray or bright white on thermal images.

If you have an APT groundstation, you may wish to demonstrate how image processing can be used to help identify areas of differing temperature. Each pixel in the image represents a temperature value. *Stretching* the pixels (increasing the contrast) will make temperature variations more discernible. Students can readily see how the tops of cumulonimbus clouds appear dark on a white background, though they would appear all-white without the software manipulation of the image.

figure 77.



High Clouds
These clouds are generally found between 6 and 12 kilometers. Composed primarily of ice, they appear bright white on infrared imagery. Two examples are towering cumulonimbus and cirrus. Cumulonimbus appear as bright white splotches and are often associated with thunderstorm activity. Cirrus clouds appear as bright white streaks — as if they had been painted by a brush.

Middle Clouds
Heights are generally between 2 and 6 kilometers. On infrared images, they appear as a lighter shade of gray than the surface or low-level clouds. Two examples are altocumulus and altostratus. The former will have a mottled texture while the latter will appear more sheet-like. Be aware that the middle level clouds are usually the hardest to determine because they are often shielded by higher level clouds.

Low clouds
Heights generally do not exceed 2 kilometers. Two of the lowest clouds are stratus and fog. On the image, they appear a uniform dark gray shade and lack any texture. Often they are hard to distinguish from the ground because of similarities in temperature and the resulting similarity of the gray shades.

CLASSIFICATION OF CLOUD TYPES THROUGH INFRARED APT IMAGERY

Activities

Day 1 - Warm-up

Explain to the students that you will be assessing their prior knowledge of the characteristics of cloud types. To do this, you will show them slides or illustrations of various types of clouds. Be sure not to present the clouds in any sort of order. Describe each cloud as you present them with phrases such as "puffy or heap-like" for cumuliform or "layered or sheet-like" for stratiform clouds.

- After all slides have been viewed, assign each cooperative group to a workstation and distribute the set of index cards with the cloud information. Instruct students to classify the cards into two or more groups, based upon criteria they choose.

- After each group has completed their classification, have them share their classification criteria with the class.

- Have students answer the first two questions on the worksheet, *Classifying Cloud Types Through Infrared APT Imagery*. After they have answered questions (1) and (2), explain to students that they will classify clouds on the basis of their cloud height because the imagery provides temperature information which is directly related to cloud height. (Cloud temperature decreases as the altitude increases.)

- To see how the temperature varies with cloud height, ask students to use the standard atmosphere data provided on their worksheets to make a graph of the decrease in temperature with altitude. These temperature differences can be detected on infrared photographs. They should sketch the different cloud types found in each of the three layers, described as simply low, medium, or high on their *Cloud Type Survey*. Their completed should resemble figure 1.

Display one infrared APT image - large enough for the entire class to see - that contains examples of all three cloud types as classified by height.

Point out the relatively dark and warmer surfaces along with the familiar geographic feature you've included (such as the Great Lakes, Chesapeake Bay estuary, or the Baja peninsula). If you are working with an image at an active ground station, use the imaging software to reveal surface temperatures at various points on the image. Then point out the low, middle, and high cloud types and their resulting appearance on APT infrared imagery.

Day 2 - Classifying clouds on infrared APT images
For procedure, see student worksheet entitled *Cloud Classification*. For the answer to question 1, see 1st paragraph of *Background: Clouds*

Day 3 - Simulating Computer Imagining Software
Procedure on Day 3: Activities, student worksheet titled *Computer Simulation*, and student scanner map, included.

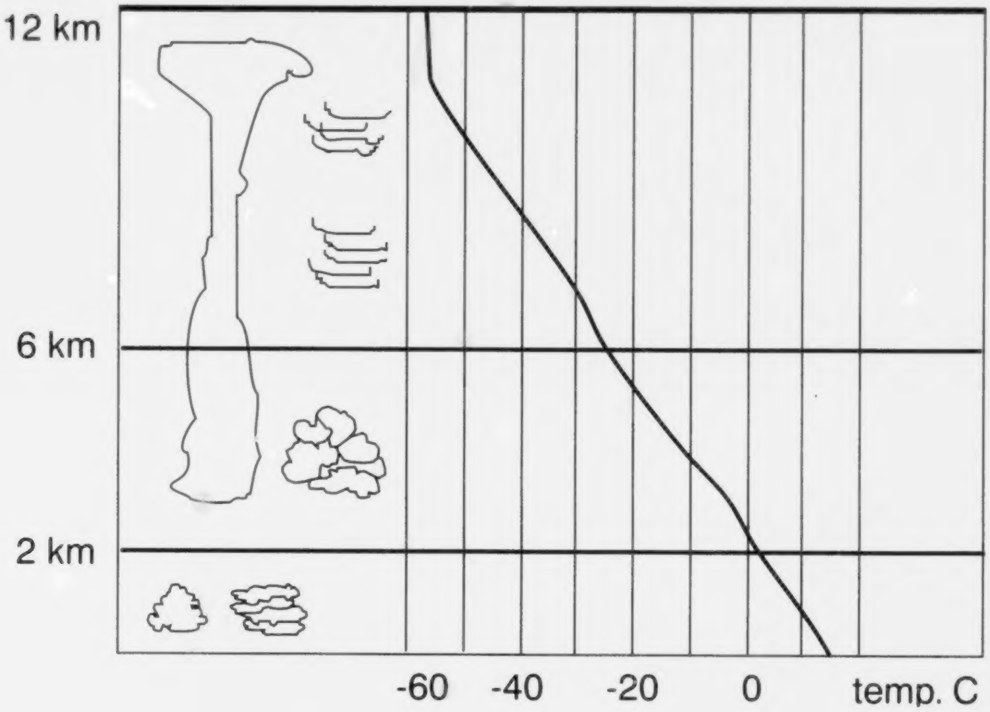


figure 78.

CLASSIFYING CLOUD TYPES THROUGH INFRARED APT IMAGERY

name ______________________

Your teacher will provide your group with a set of cards containing information about clouds. Lay each card on the desk. Look at the illustrations of each cloud and the information contained.

1. Divide your cloud cards into at least two - or more - groups based on the information and pictures with which you have been provided. Give each of your cloud-groups a name. How did your science group classify the clouds? List each group and describe how your group made its decisions.

2. Name some other ways that the same clouds could have been classified. Do you think any one way of classification is better than any other? Why or why not?

3. The temperature of the air in the atmosphere changes with its altitude above the surface. Your teacher will provide you with a worksheet entitled *Cloud Type Survey.* To understand how this change occurs, plot a graph on the worksheet that indicates air temperature at several different altitudes. Assume that the temperature of the surface is about 15 degrees Centigrade (about 59 degrees Fahrenheit). Use the data provided in the table, *standard atmosphere, altitude and temperature,* to plot your graph.

name ______________________

altitude in meters	temperature° C
0	15
1000	8.5
2000	2
3000	- 4.5
4000	-11
5000	-17.5
6000	- 24
7000	- 30.4
8000	- 36.9
9000	- 43.4
10,000	- 49.9
11,000	- 56.4

Table 1. standard atmosphere, altitude and temperature

3a. Using the graph you have plotted, estimate the temperature of the air at each of the following altitudes:

a. 6,500 meters ______________________

b. 9.5 kilometers ______________________

c. 1,250 meters ______________________

d. 0.5 kilometers ______________________

e. 1 mile (5,280 feet) [1 meter = 3.28 feet] ______________________

4. The Earth's atmosphere is believed to extend to about 120 kilometers (120,000 meters). Using the graph you have constructed, explain in your own words how the temperature of the air is related to the altitude. (*hint: Do you have enough data from your graph to answer this question with certainty?*)

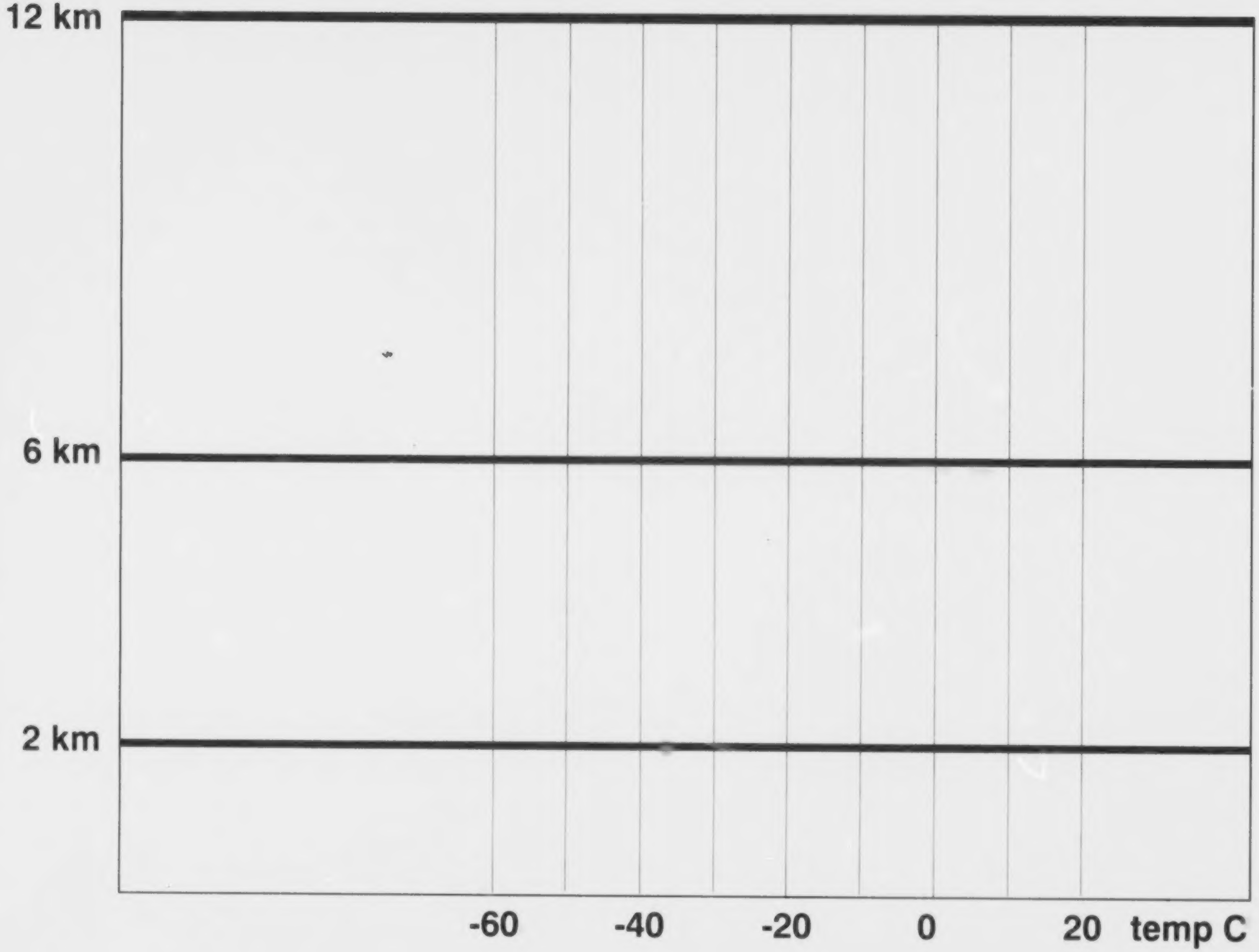
____

____

____

5. On the left-hand section of the *Cloud Type Survey*, sketch at least two of the different kinds of clouds which can be found in the low, middle, and high levels of the weather-producing part of the atmosphere (the troposphere).

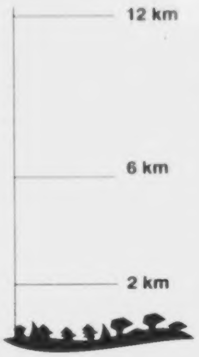
name ______________________



CLOUD TYPE SURVEY

CLOUD CLASSIFICATION

Your group will be provided with two or three polar-orbiting satellite images and a corresponding number of US outline maps. If you have a ground station, your teacher will help you locate images stored on the computer. Use the following criteria to help you in your classification of clouds.



HIGH CLOUDS
These clouds are generally found between 6 and 12 km. They are composed primarily of ice, and appear bright white on infrared imagery. Two examples are towering cumulonimbus and cirrus. Cumulonimbus appear as bright white splotches, and are often associated with thunderstorm activity. Cirrus clouds appear as bright white streaks - as if they had been painted by a brush.

MIDDLE CLOUDS
Heights are generally between 2 and 6 km. These appear as a lighter shade of gray than the surface or low-level clouds on infrared images. Two examples are altocumulus and altostratus. The former will have a mottled texture while the latter will appear more sheet-like. Be aware that the middle level clouds are usually the hardest to determine since they areoften shielded by higher level clouds.

LOW CLOUDS
Heights generally do not exceed 2 km. Two of the lowest clouds are stratus and fog. On the infrared image, they appear in a uniform dark gray shade and lack any texture. Often they are hard to distinguish from the ground because of similarities in temperature.

a. At the top of one of your outline maps, write the name of the satellite and its pass date - information shown on the computer screen or provided by your teacher.

b. Work with your group members to determine the positions of low, medium, and high clouds on the image.

c. Use a color code and color in portions of your three maps as follows:

dark color	low level clouds, identify them by name on your map
gray	mid level clouds, identify them by name on your map
red or yellow	high level clouds, identify them by name on your map

d. Repeat this process with each map and image.

1. In this activity, clouds are classified according to height (low, medium, high). Why is this classification method used instead of another?

2. Are there any areas on your maps where precipitation may be occurring? Which map, and in what states? How do you know?

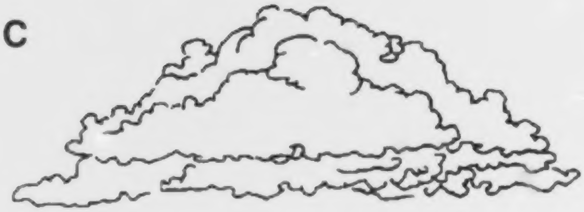
3. Sometimes the images can be processed by computer software. One of many possible enhancements of an image is called ***stretching*** (increasing pixel contrast). You have probably seen stretched cloud images by a weather forecaster on television. To illustrate the process of stretching, choose a colored pencil which has not been used in your color code, such as blue or green. On one of your maps, color over all of the mid-level clouds with your blue or green pencil. Using the graph you made yesterday, what temperatures correspond to the areas that you have stretched?

Name: **Cumulus**

Altitude: < **2 km**

Composition: **Water**

Temperature: **5° to 15° C**



Name: **Fog**

Altitude: < **5000 ft.**

Composition: **Water**

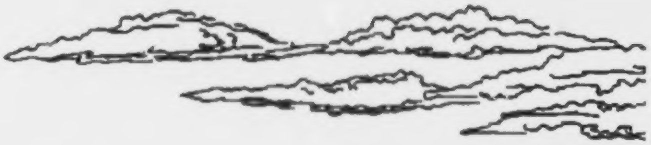
Temperature: **10° to 20° C**

Name: **Stratus**

Altitude: < **2 km.**

Composition: **Water**

Temperature: **5° to 15° C**

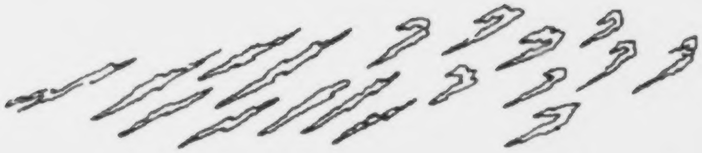


Name: **Cirrus**

Altitude: < **6 km.**

Composition: **Ice Crystals**

Temperature: **-50° to -60° C**

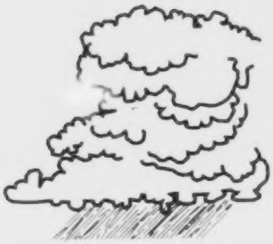


Name: **Cumulus congestus**

Altitude: **6 km**

Composition: **Water**

Temperature: **-10° to -20° C**



Name: **Cumulonimbus**

Altitude: **12 km**

Composition: **Water and Ice**

Temperature: **-50° to -60° C**

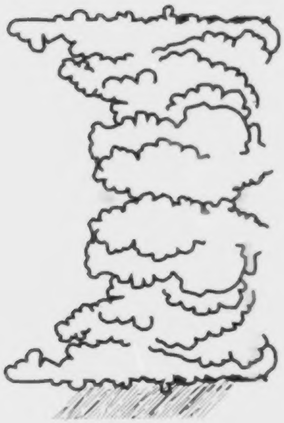


figure 79.

SIMULATING COMPUTER IMAGING SOFTWARE

Activities

Day 3

In this exercise, the method for producing a satellite-generated image will be studied. The concept of computer enhancement will be introduced, but instead of using a computer, the student will generate an image on a piece of graph paper superimposed upon a map of the eastern U.S. seaboard.

Students should imagine a broadcast of infrared data from a NOAA satellite on a descending orbit from the North Pole in the morning hours. An area is observed by the satellite as a series of temperatures, the information is encoded, and sent as radio signals. When the signal is received by an Earth station, the radio signals are decoded and displayed on a computer monitor. The image (this is not a photograph) produced is actually made up of thousands of tiny squares called picture elements or ***pixels***.

Each pixel is assigned a number value between 0 and 255. The number assignments are determined by the temperatures that were measured by the NOAA satellite sensors during its pass. In this system:

0 represents pure black (warmest)
255 represents pure white (coldest)
all values in between are shades of gray.

The value of each pixel is electronically transferred as a byte. A ***byte*** is a unit of eight bits of data or memory in microcomputer systems. ***Bit*** is a contraction of binary digit, which is the basic element of a two-element (binary) computer language.

Provide each student with:

- a Computer Simulation worksheet
- the Scanner Map Shading Chart
- a Student Scanner Map composed of 26 squares by 34 lines to represent 884 pixels

Students will use colored pencils to shade in each square (pixel) according to the suggested color code on the map and on the shading chart. They should note their start and completion times to enable them to calculate their rate and compare it with a NOAA satellite rate. It is important that they shade in one row of the image at a time, beginning at the top, since they are simulating a satellite descending from the North Pole. When the image is completed (p. 207) students should observe the familiar geographical features of the United States with a large cold front and its associated *comma cloud* formation over the Ohio Valley. A comma cloud is a band of cumuliform clouds that look like a comma on a satellite image. Make several transparency copies of the East coast map on the preceding page to help students locate the weather patterns.

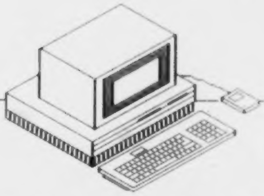
Answers for Computer Simulation Worksheet

1. 640 pixels x 480 pixels = 307,200 pixels
2. 24 pixels x 36 pixels = 864 bytes = 6912 bits

Answer for extension

The binary code equivalent of 80 is 01010000.

COMPUTER SIMULATION



name ______________________

Imagine a broadcast of infrared data from a NOAA satellite descending from the North Pole in the morning hours. The observed image must be encoded and then sent as a radio signal. The entire image seen is actually made up of tiny squares called picture elements or **pixels**.

The brightness of each pixel is assigned by a number value between 0 and 255. In this system,

0 represents pure black (warmest)

255 represents pure white (coldest)

all values in between are shades of gray

■

1 pixel = 1 byte = 8 bits

1 pixel is electronically transferred as 1 byte
1 byte equals 8 bits of data

1. The APT images you have been working with are rectangular, 640 pixels wide by 480 pixels long. How many pixels compose the image? __________

2. Pretend that you are a computer that will analyze several bytes of information. You will be presented with a table of 24 x 36 pixels. How many bytes of data is this? __________ How many bits of data? __________

   To determine your transmission rate per minute, enter your start time. __________

3. Shade the figure according to the information on page 205. When acquiring an image from a NOAA satellite in descending orbit, the satellite image will appear one line at a time from top to bottom. That is, all 26 pixels in the top row are colored in first. Then the second row is completed, and so on.

   Write the time when you completed the shading. __________

4. What is your bit rate? (How many squares–pixels–could you fill in per minute multiplied by eight bits per pixel.) __________

5. NOAA satellites transmit data at 120 lines per minute. How does this compare with your personal transmission? Remember, you have 34 lines by 26 pixels.

   ____

6. What cloud patterns might be detected from your observations?

   ____

   ____

7. From your map, can you determine if any precipitation might be occurring?

   ____

   ____

SCANNER MAP SHADING CHART

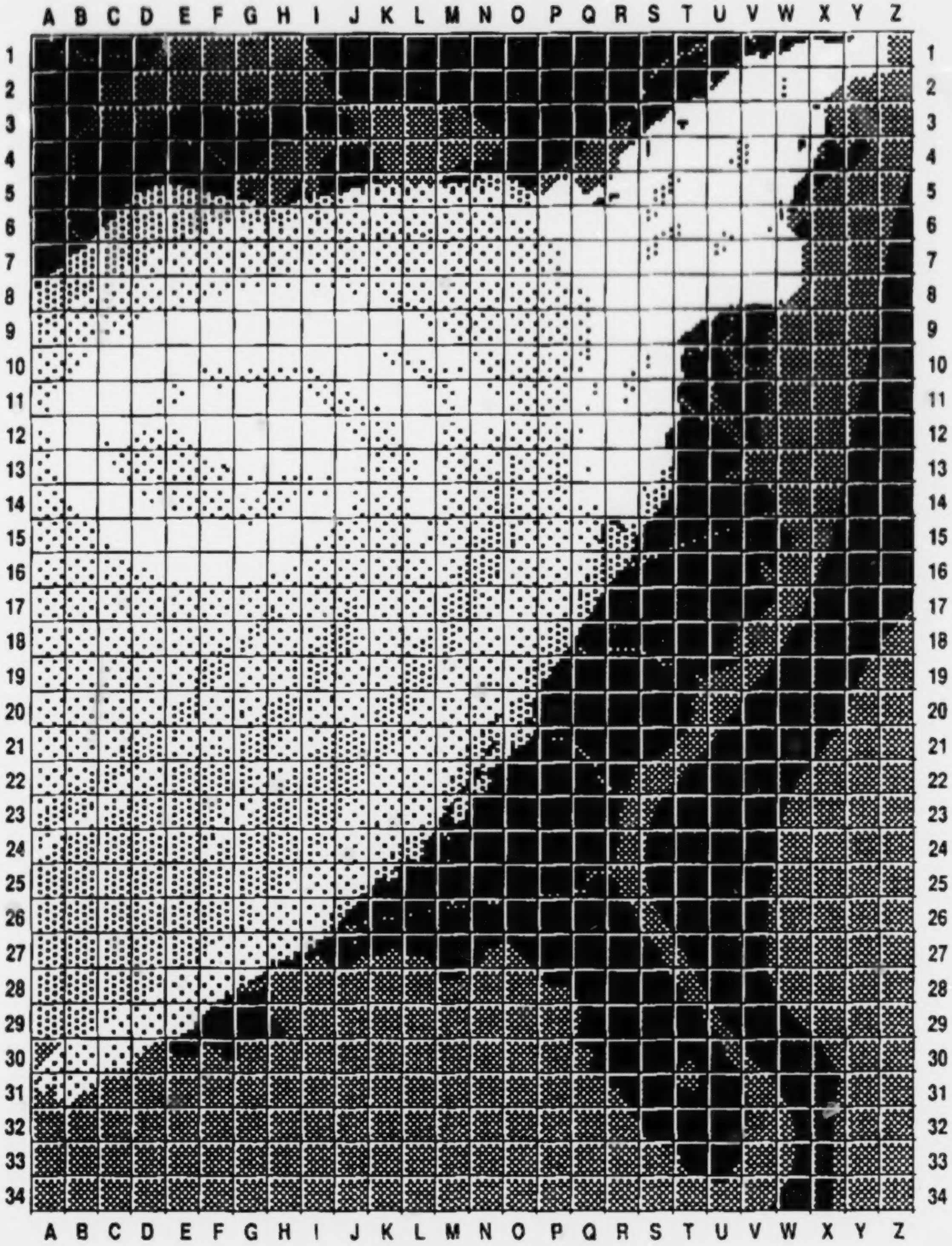
Shade the scanner map as shown in the box below.

Decimal Equivalent	Temperature Range	Color
0–45	> 15 ° C	black
46–90	between 10° C and 14° C	dark blue
91–135	between 5° C and 9° C	light blue
136–180	between 2° C and 4° C	orange
181–225	between -22° C & + 1° C	yellow
131–255	colder than - 22° C	white

STUDENT SCANNER MAP

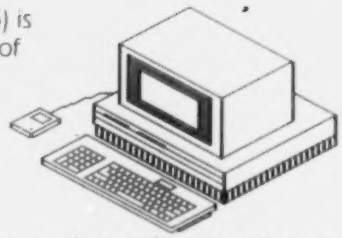
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
1	042	042	036	036	117	118	117	117	042	042	036	036	036	036	036	036	042	042	036	036	036	042	242	241	245	117
2	003	042	249	117	249	117	118	117	117	036	036	036	042	036	042	036	041	036	036	036	241	243	247	245	117	117
3	036	117	117	117	036	036	117	036	042	249	117	249	117	042	042	042	036	042	036	241	245	237	239	117	118	117
4	039	036	036	036	036	036	036	117	036	036	117	118	117	117	036	036	117	118	243	242	239	227	225	036	036	113
5	036	042	036	167	167	036	118	117	203	203	209	203	203	203	036	237	118	241	243	247	247	241	036	117	249	117
6	044	036	165	159	167	163	167	172	203	203	203	203	203	219	203	247	247	241	171	247	247	241	036	249	117	072
7	042	167	171	167	203	203	203	203	203	203	203	12	203	203	211	203	247	247	241	247	247	241	245	249	118	072
8	167	163	203	203	203	243	239	241	244	243	203	203	203	203	203	203	251	252	167	238	240	238	233	117	113	072
9	167	203	203	203	243	239	241	244	243	238	247	249	203	203	203	203	203	229	231	232	233	036	036	117	118	072
10	210	203	245	244	243	203	203	203	203	251	252	244	243	211	212	203	203	239	240	242	036	117	249	121	113	072
11	211	254	252	251	203	252	253	249	203	203	245	243	244	237	203	204	243	244	167	036	036	036	117	117	072	072
12	203	249	249	203	203	249	252	253	249	203	203	254	203	203	203	203	167	167	251	036	117	036	117	122	072	072
13	212	249	203	203	203	203	249	249	203	249	203	239	205	203	211	203	249	252	255	036	036	117	118	085	072	072
14	203	247	249	203	212	203	203	222	249	248	203	230	205	203	167	203	247	248	167	042	038	039	117	083	072	072
15	203	203	248	249	248	249	248	249	249	203	203	232	203	167	203	203	239	167	167	036	041	036	042	089	072	072
16	207	203	203	250	248	249	249	203	203	203	203	203	203	167	203	203	238	167	042	042	042	039	117	072	072	072
17	203	209	216	203	215	203	203	214	203	211	203	203	167	203	203	203	167	036	036	036	036	036	117	072	072	072
18	203	207	209	203	203	203	167	203	203	203	203	167	203	203	203	167	041	036	039	042	036	117	072	072	072	117
19	203	203	203	203	206	167	203	203	203	167	203	167	203	203	167	042	036	042	032	031	117	117	072	072	072	117
20	203	203	203	203	167	202	203	167	167	203	167	203	203	203	167	036	036	036	036	036	117	072	072	072	111	113
21	203	203	203	167	203	203	167	167	203	167	167	203	203	167	167	036	036	036	036	117	072	072	072	117	116	117
22	203	167	167	203	167	169	203	208	167	167	203	203	167	167	036	036	036	036	117	072	072	072	072	114	117	099
23	167	203	203	167	162	203	203	167	167	203	203	167	167	036	036	036	036	117	117	072	072	072	099	103	116	118
24	203	164	167	166	167	203	203	167	167	203	203	167	036	036	042	039	042	117	072	072	072	072	118	116	113	117
25	167	178	167	167	176	167	167	167	203	203	203	036	042	039	042	042	042	117	117	072	072	199	103	116	118	117
26	167	188	167	167	167	167	167	203	203	032	031	036	036	034	036	042	036	039	117	072	072	093	99	103	116	118
27	168	167	169	167	167	203	203	203	203	036	117	036	036	117	117	036	036	036	036	117	072	072	99	103	116	118
28	167	166	166	167	203	203	036	117	116	115	117	119	117	117	117	117	039	042	037	117	072	072	99	103	116	118
29	167	166	203	203	203	036	036	036	117	116	115	117	119	117	118	117	039	036	038	037	117	072	072	99	103	116
30	203	203	203	203	036	117	036	117	117	117	113	117	115	117	119	117	117	036	036	036	036	117	072	072	99	103
31	203	203	117	118	117	116	115	117	119	117	120	117	122	117	117	129	117	036	036	117	036	117	072	072	99	103
32	117	123	117	119	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	042	036	042	117	072	072	099	099
33	117	117	124	117	122	117	119	117	116	115	117	119	117	115	117	119	117	120	117	042	036	117	072	072	093	094
34	117	117	116	117	119	117	117	117	122	117	123	116	115	117	119	117	116	115	117	119	117	117	072	072	093	094

COMPLETED STUDENT SCANNER MAP


A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34

217

EXTENSION



How does the computer know which number (0 to 255) is being encoded? It receives the information in the form of computer information storage called a ***byte***. The byte itself is actually sent as a number in ***binary code*** - the binary system describes all numbers with combinations of 0 and 1. Each digit of the binary code is called a ***bit***. So each bit is either a 0 or a 1.

Examine the chart below and you will see that the binary number code system is very much like the decimal system that we use, except that ones, tens, hundreds, and thousands places are replaced by ones, twos, fours, eights, sixteens, and so on.

figure 80.

128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1	place
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	= 255
0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	= 37
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	= 128
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	= 203
								= 80

The example above shows how only four of the pixels in a picture are encoded. Each of the three signals is called a ***byte***, composed of eight ***bits***.

In the bottom row (or byte), see if you can provide the binary code which would provide the value of 80.

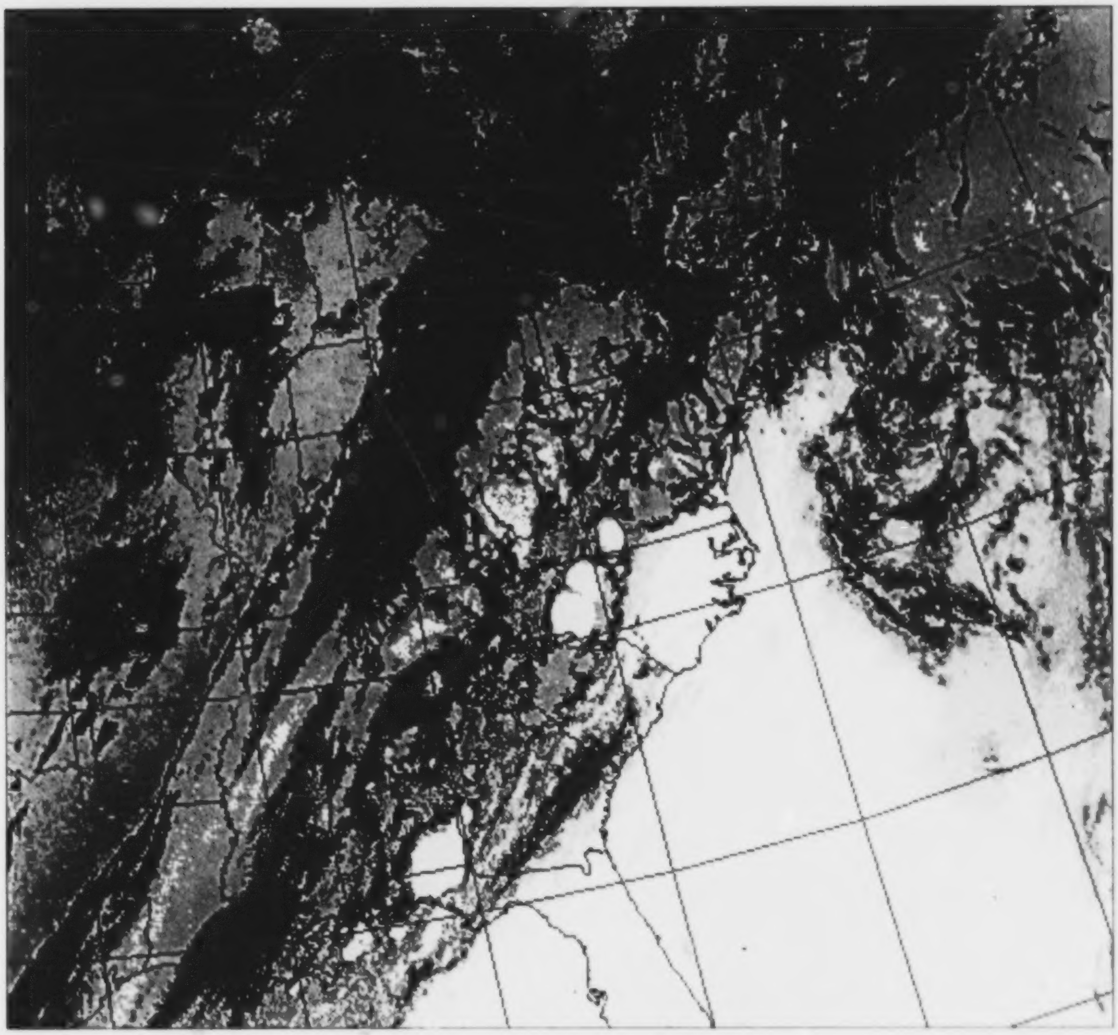


figure 81. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

little thunderstorms

cumulus congestus or towering cumulus
mid-level, vertically developed clouds

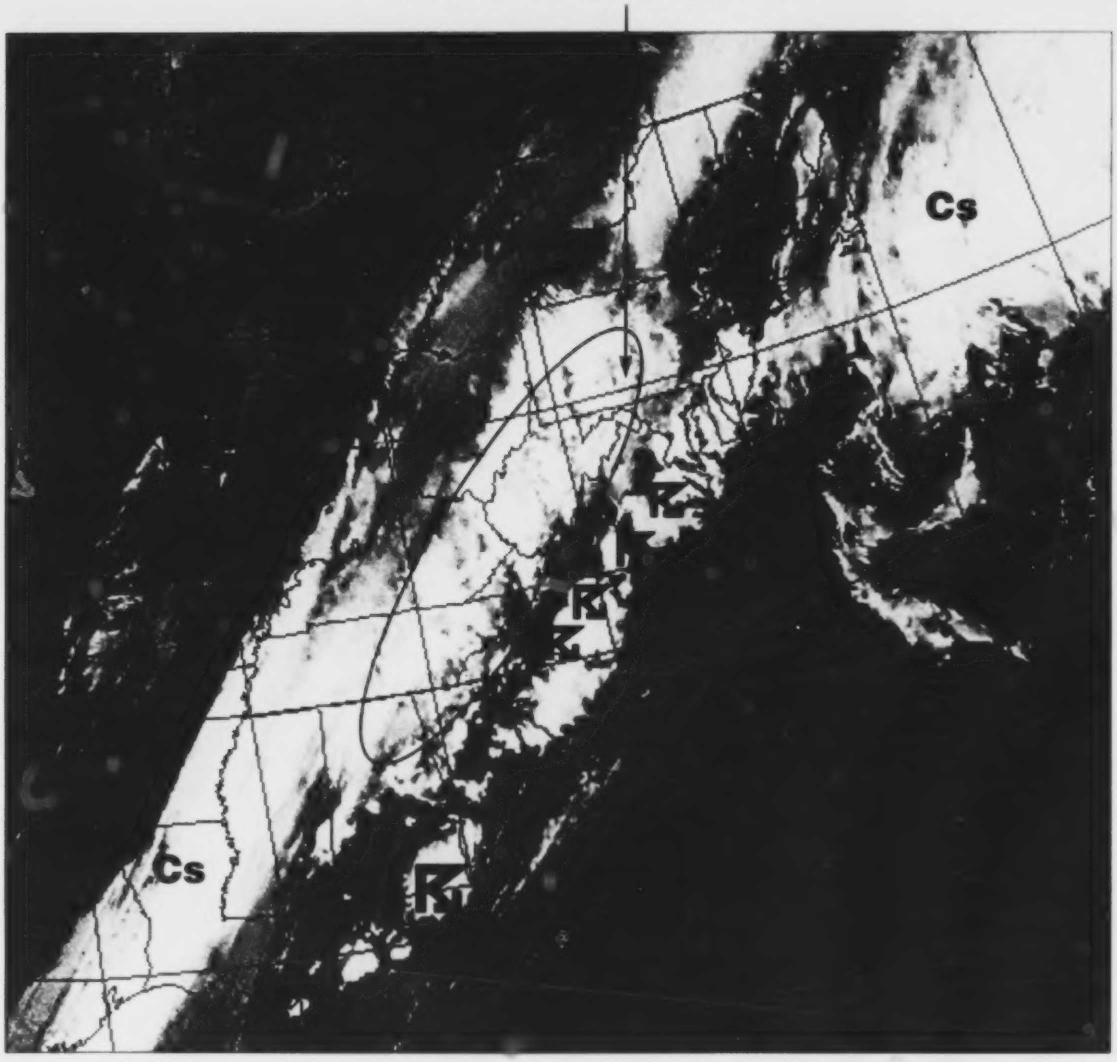


figure 81a. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

Visible image - counterpoint to figure 81

Images on computer will more clearly display temperature gradients and facilitate assessment of the infrared image.

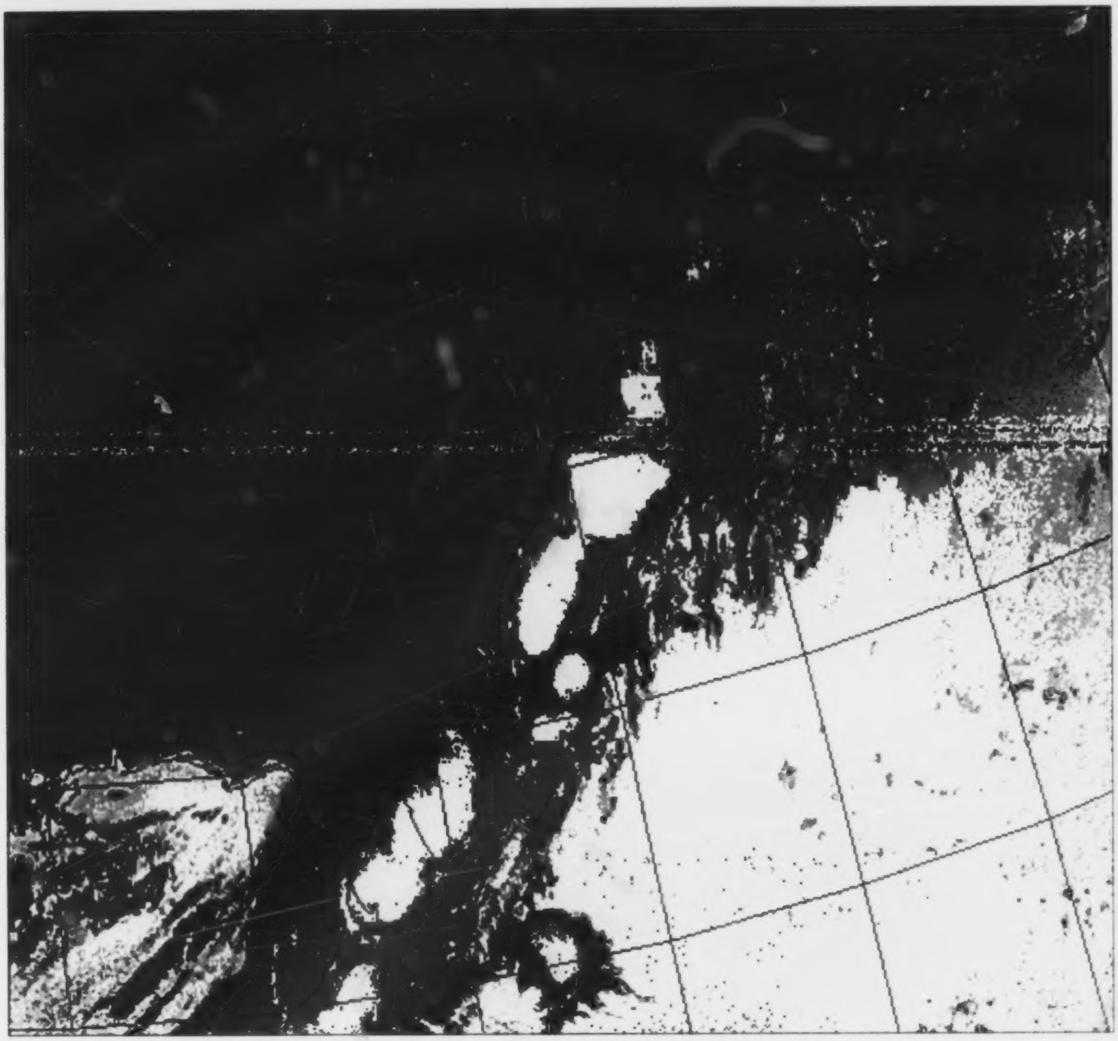
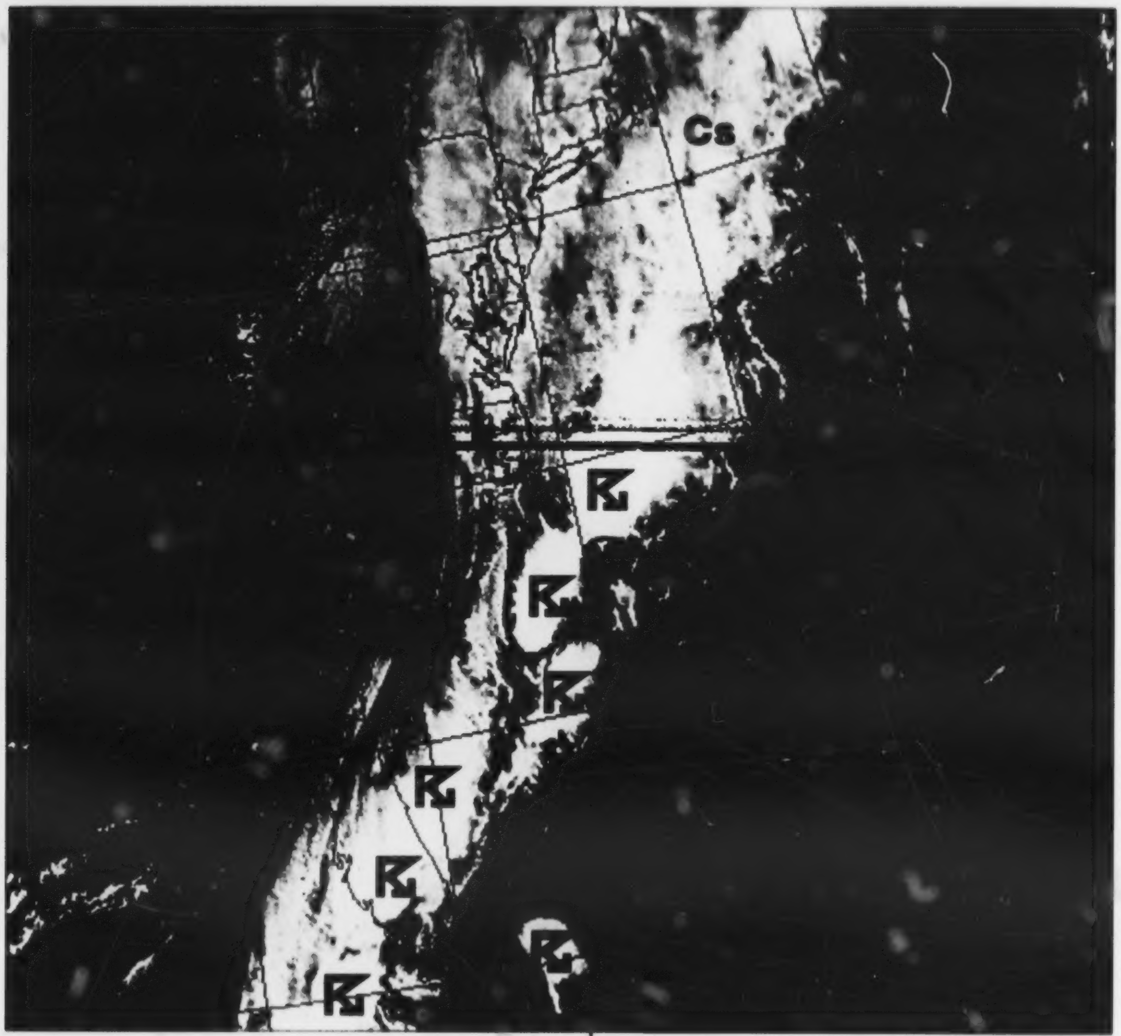


figure 82. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution,
Albert Einstein Planetarium



Ci on edges of thunderstorm

figure 82a. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

Visible image - counterpoint to figure 103.

Images on computer will more clearly display temperature gradients and facilitate assessment of the infrared image.

A COMPARISON OF VISIBLE AND INFRARED IMAGERY

Authors:
Stu Chapman, Southampton Middle School, Bel Air, Maryland
Bill Davis, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
Tony Marcino, Margaret Brent Middle School

Grade Level: 5–8

Objectives:
Students will compare APT visible and infrared imagery to demonstrate:

1. Organizing and presenting data; and
2. Interpreting evidence and inferring.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science, geography, art, oceanography

Time Requirement:
At least two science periods, one for lab, the other for assessment. Additional lab time may be provided to ensure student success.

Image Format:
APT, visible-infrared image pairs

Materials:

1. World atlas
2. Student worksheets, including outline maps of the areas described below
3. Colored pencils
4. APT visible and infrared images in pairs, large enough to display to the entire class, or as slides for projection
5. APT image pairs of visible and infrared images of:
   - Eastern USA containing low, middle, and high clouds
   - Southern Great Lakes region - preferably images recorded from an evening pass during the summer months
   - Gulf stream area - preferably taken during the winter months
   - Assorted images for assessment. The images should include several cloud types in thermal and visible images, as well as other objects such as a gulf stream on an infrared image

note: These images may be supplied as prints if an Earth station is not available.

Advance Preparation:

1. Divide the class into cooperative groups of at least 4 students.
2. Provide each group with at least three image pairs (infrared and visible images).

Activities

Warm-up:

Place a visible-infrared APT image pair on the screen for the entire class to view. The pair should contain at least two of the differences between the types listed in the Teacher Background, which can be readily pointed out to the students. Explain, using specific examples, some of the differences between infrared (IR) and visible imagery.

Procedure:

Pass out the visible-IR image pairs (listed under materials) to each cooperative group. Hand out worksheets. Ask students to examine the images and determine which are IR and which are visible. After students confer, you may wish to check with each group before allowing them to proceed.

As you walk about the room to monitor the students' success, the following points about the images will be helpful:

1. The warmer waters of the Gulf Stream will be readily distinguishable from the colder waters of the North Atlantic on the IR image. This differentiation will not be noticeable on the visible image.

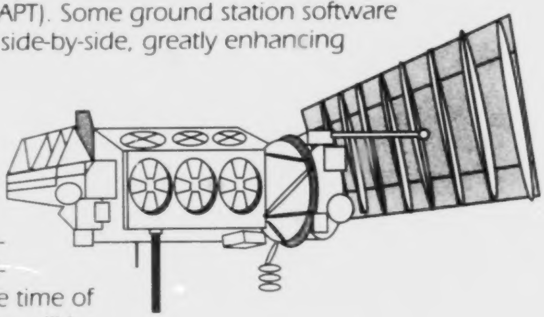
2. Clouds will look white on the visible image because they show reflected sunlight. Shadows will be readily apparent. If the shadows point westward, it is a morning image (sun in the eastern sky). If the shadows point eastward, it is an evening image (sun in the western sky). Clouds on the IR image will appear in differing shades of gray depending upon their temperature (related to their height).

3. A July IR image of a hot day will easily distinguish cities from their surroundings. The warm asphalt and concrete are radiating more infrared energy than the surrounding vegetation. The following are some of the cities that should be easily distinguished by students—with the help of a student gazetteer (a book containing geographical names and descriptions). This list is applicable when using imagery of the Southern Great Lakes region.
    - Detroit, Michigan
    - Milwaukee, Wisconsin
    - Toledo, Ohio
    - Indianapolis, Indiana
    - Dayton, Ohio
    - Columbus, Ohio
    - Fort Wayne, Indiana

4. On the following day, you may wish to give your students an assessment of their individual ability to identify visible and infrared images. Student instructions are on page 218. Using additional image pairs and practice will help ensure their success.

BACKGROUND: APT IMAGERY

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) polar-orbiting satellites provide both visible and infrared imagery of Earth in a low-resolution format called Automatic Picture Transmission (APT). Some ground station software is able to display both types of images side-by-side, greatly enhancing the comparison process.



The visible images display see-able topography, and are dependent upon sunlight to illuminate features. Consequently, it is productive to acquire visible images only during daytime. Only visible images contain shadows. Those shadows fluctuate with the time of day—shadows early and late in the day will be more pronounced than shadows in mid-day images.

Infrared images display gradients in temperature, with the warmest temperature appearing dark gray or black, and the coldest temperatures displayed as very pale gray or white. Infrared images are not limited by daylight, and provide equally informative images at noon or midnight. Large urban areas will appear on the image as a dark spot — indicating the concentration of concrete and other building materials that retain heat, as well as heat-producing inhabitants (people, cars, utilities, etc.). Such an area is called a heat island and is distinguishable from less developed areas that more quickly react to nature (heating up during daylight, cooling off at night, etc.).

The dominant feature in each image will be clouds.

- In the visible image, almost all the clouds will appear bright white—because reflected light is being observed.
- In the infrared image, the same clouds will appear as varying shades of gray depending upon their temperature (determined by their altitude above the Earth).
- Shadows appear only in visible images.
- Another distinguishing feature between two types of images is that shades of gray may appear in infrared images where little or no contrast is seen in visible images. For example, an image pair of the North Atlantic in winter will display far more shading of the Gulf Stream meshing with the cold Atlantic in the infrared image, than will the visible image.

COMPARING VISIBLE AND INFRARED IMAGERY

Student Activity Worksheet

name ______________________________

1. Your teacher provided your group with three pairs of APT images. Work with your group to determine which of the pairs are visible and which pairs are infrared. After class discussion, write some of the differences between visible and infrared images.

2. Find the image pair of the Eastern seaboard. Locate some specific geographic features such as capes, bays, estuaries, or peninsulas. Use your world atlas to help. Write the names of some of the features you have located.

3. On your infrared image, you should be able to easily see the warmer waters of the Gulf stream. On your worksheet map, color the waters of the Atlantic ocean light blue. Use a dark blue pencil to draw in the location of the Gulf stream, based on what you see in the infrared image.

If you have a direct readout ground station, have your teacher show you how to determine the temperatures of the water in the Gulf stream and the water surrounding it. Place these temperatures in several locations on your map.

4. Now locate the image pair which shows the mid-Atlantic region. The clouds on the visible image should appear mostly white, while the clouds in the infrared image are various shades of gray and white, depending upon their temperature. On the infrared image, the whites clouds are the highest in altitude (coldest) and the darkest gray clouds are the warmest because they are closest to the ground. Mid-level clouds will appear as a variation between gray and white, if they are visible at all. The whitest clouds are the highest in altitude (coldest).

Use your map of the mid-Atlantic region and three colored pencils to color in at least two different regions. One region should show the location of low-altitude clouds.

COMPARING VISIBLE AND INFRARED IMAGERY

Student Activity Worksheet

name

How does the appearance of the low-altitude clouds differ on each of the mid-Atlantic regions?

5. Which of the two images readily shows shadows? Locate some shadows on the image. Sketch the clouds and their shadows on your map. What time of day do you think this image was recorded—morning or evening? (circle one)

   Hint: Which way do shadows point in the morning?

6. Place the final pair of images in front of you. This should be a pair of images taken of the Great Lakes region during the summer months. On your map of the Great Lakes region, label the Great Lakes, using your atlas if necessary. On the infrared images, why does Lake Michigan appear as a different shade of gray than Lake Superior?

7. The image you are using was captured on a hot summer day. On the infrared image, dark areas indicate regions of higher temperature. Locate the city of Chicago, Illinois on your infrared image. Why would Chicago appear warmer than its surroundings?

8. How does the Chicago, Illinois area look different in the visible than in the infrared image?

9. Use your world atlas. Find as many different cities as you can. Mark those cities names and locations on your Great Lakes region map. Can you find more than six?

COMPARING VISIBLE AND INFRARED APT IMAGERY

Please complete each of the tasks individually.

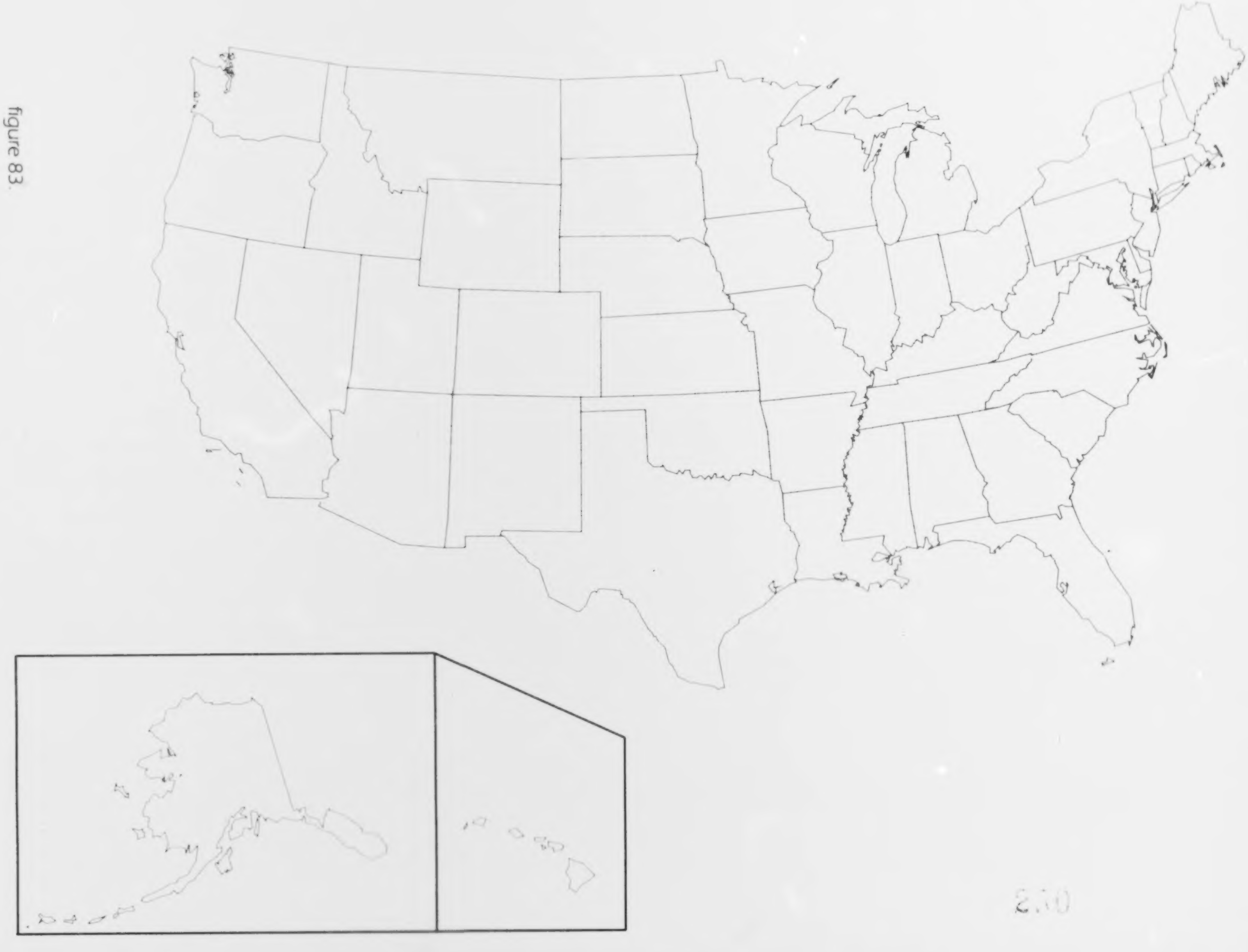
1. Write the word **visible** under the visible image. Write the word **infrared** under the infrared image.
2. Locate a specific geographical location. This should be very general, such as Southern Asia or Northwestern North America. Write the name of the area at the top of both images. You may use the atlas to help you.
3. Locate a region of very high clouds (low temperature) on your pair. Place a few snowflake symbols (⁂) on this region.
4. Locate a region of very low clouds (higher temperature). Mark on of these with an **X**.
5. Do either (a) or (b), depending on which features are available on your image.
   a. Identify a region of warm water (such as an ocean current) and mark this region with the words **warm H_2O**.
   b. Identify a specific city on your infrared photo. Mark the name of the city directly on the photo.

COMPARING VISIBLE AND INFRARED APT IMAGERY

Please complete each of the tasks individually.

1. Write the word **visible** under the visible image. Write the word **infrared** under the infrared image.
2. Locate a specific geographical location. This should be very general, such as Southern Asia or Northwestern North America. Write the name of the area at the top of both images. You may use the atlas to help you.
3. Locate a region of very high clouds (low temperature) on your pair. Place a few snowflake symbols (⁂) on this region.
4. Locate a region of very low clouds (higher temperature). Mark on of these with an **X**.
5. Do either (a) or (b), depending on which features are available on your image.
   a. Identify a region of warm water (such as an ocean current) and mark this region with the words **warm H_2O**.
   b. Identify a specific city on your infrared photo. Mark the name of the city directly on the photo.

figure 83.



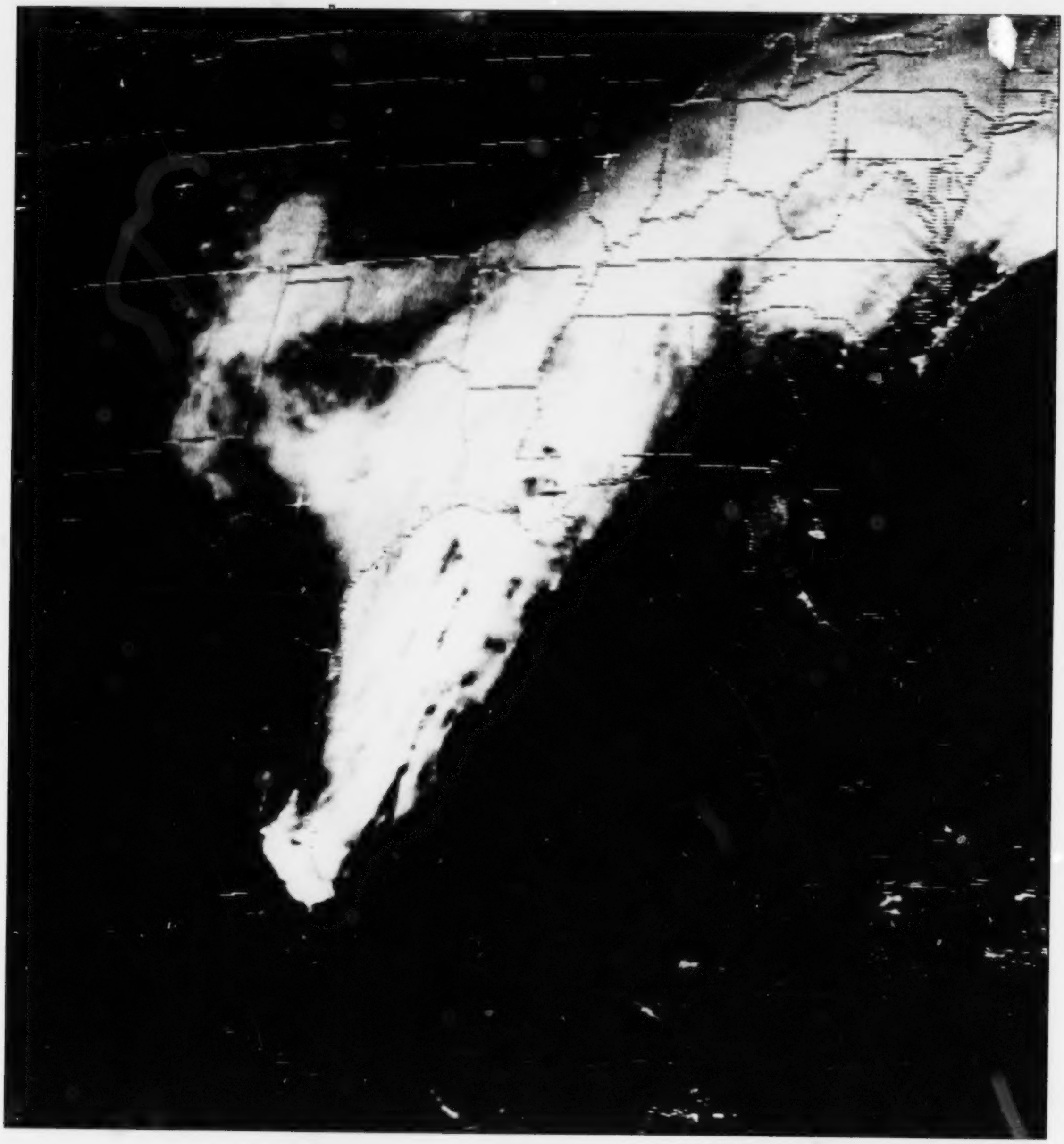


figure 84v. GOES visible image, March 9, 1994
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

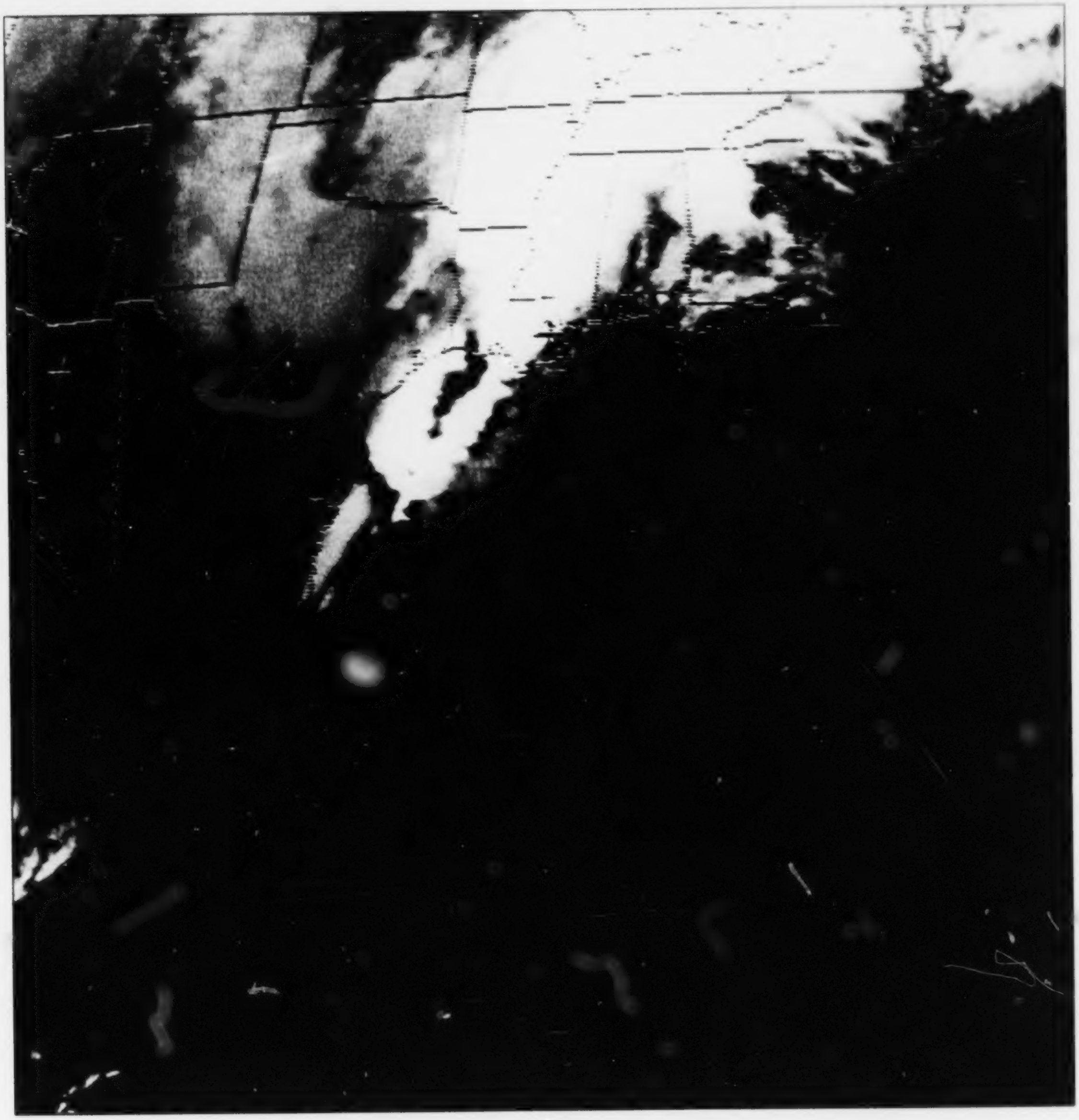


figure 84i. GOES infrared image, March 9, 1994
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

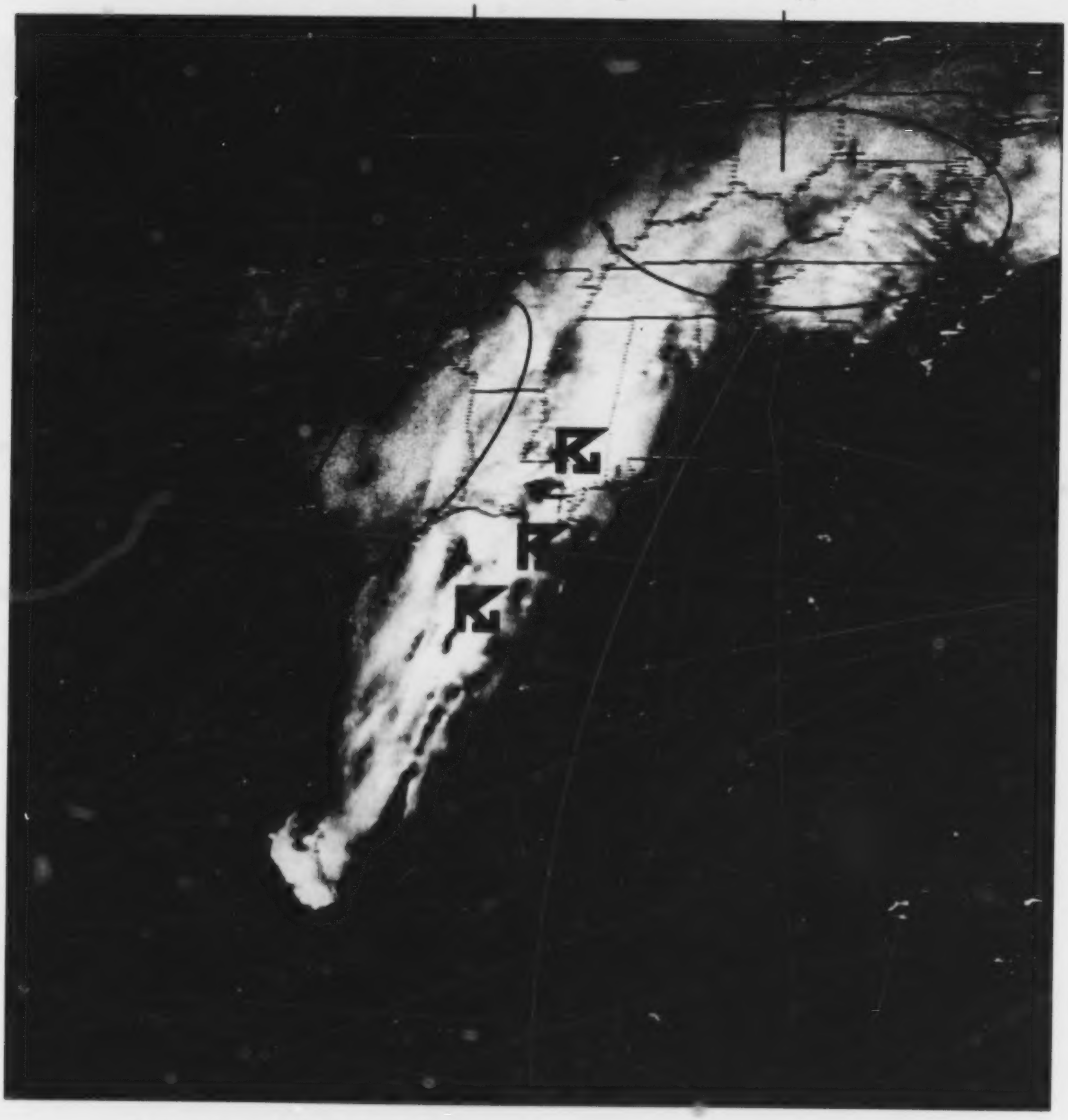

low clouds (see IR image)
but appear to be high on this visible image
mid- to upper level clouds

figure 84a. GOES visible image, March 9, 1994
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

RIGHT DOWN THE LINE: COLD FRONTS

Authors:
Gayle Farrar, Southern Middle School, Oakland, Maryland
Eileen Killoran, Glenelg Country Day School, Glenelg, Maryland
Stacey Mounts, Ballenger Creek Middle School, Frederick, Maryland

Grade Level: 8

Objectives:
Students will discover that a cold front is a boundary between air masses of different temperatures by:
1. Using a table of cities with temperatures and correctly labeling a blank U.S. map,
2. Differentiating between the coolest and warmest cities, and
3. Utilizing the satellite image and the map to draw in the location of the cold front.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science, geography

Time Requirement:
One class period

Prerequisite Skills:
Students should have:
1. A working knowledge of air masses, and
2. A brief introduction to frontal systems.

Materials:
1. Classroom map of North America with states and cities
2. Satellite image of the United States, taken at the time (or same day) as an approaching severe storm
3. Blank U.S. outline map
4. Weather page from *USA Today* or other newspaper
5. Student activity sheet

Activities

Warm-up:

1. **Think** of a time a strong storm occurred. What can you remember about it? Write down key words.
2. Now, **pair** with another student and share your "storm memories."
3. Note similarities to **share** with the class.

Give students an overview of the task. Then:

- Distribute blank U.S. maps
- Tell students to find the temperature for each city listed on the activity sheet. Temperatures can be found on the USA Today (or other newspaper) weather page.
- On your map, indicate the location of each city with its temperature. (Note: Be sure you have cities on each side of the front and that temperature differences are easily distinguished)
- Circle the six coolest in blue, the 6 warmest in red.
- Have the students work through the student activity sheet.

Note: The lesson warm-up for the following day could include a viewing of AM Weather from public television or other weather forecast. Be sure to videotape it the day of and after the storm.

RIGHT DOWN THE LINE: COLD FRONT

name

period

date

Student Activity Sheet

Step 1:
On your blank map, locate the positions of the cities listed below, use an atlas if needed. At the point on the map where each city is located, write the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit. Obtain the data from the newspaper.

Cities:

Cincinnati, OH
Columbus, OH
Buffalo, NY
Richmond, VA
Albany, NY
Baltimore, MD
Cleveland, OH
Pittsburgh, PA
Norfolk, VA
Philadelphia, PA
Washington, DC
Wilmington, DE

Step 2:

a. Circle the six coolest temperatures with a blue crayon or pencil.
b. Circle the six warmest temperatures with a red crayon or pencil.

Step 3:
Look at your satellite image of the United States.

Questions

1. What do you notice about the locations of the coolest and warmest temperatures?

2. Why do you think the temperatures are separated the way they are?

3. Now observe the satellite image of the eastern United States, taken the same day as the temperatures.

   A. Temperatures have been given for the various cities. According to the satellite image, are there any atmospheric features over these areas? Describe them (if any).

   B. Is there anything visible on the satellite photo which could explain the greatest temperature differences? Describe.

   C. Now, sketch this feature (from B) on your map of the United States.

   D. This feature forms at the boundary of two very different air masses. This feature is called a

236

figure 85.

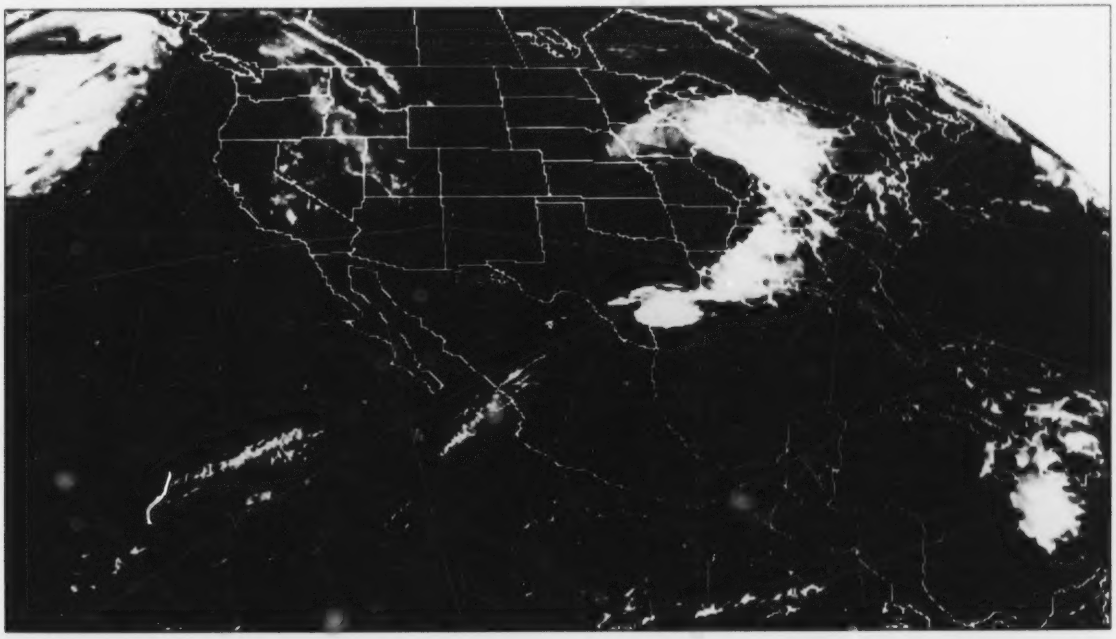


figure 86. GOES, April 30, 1994
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

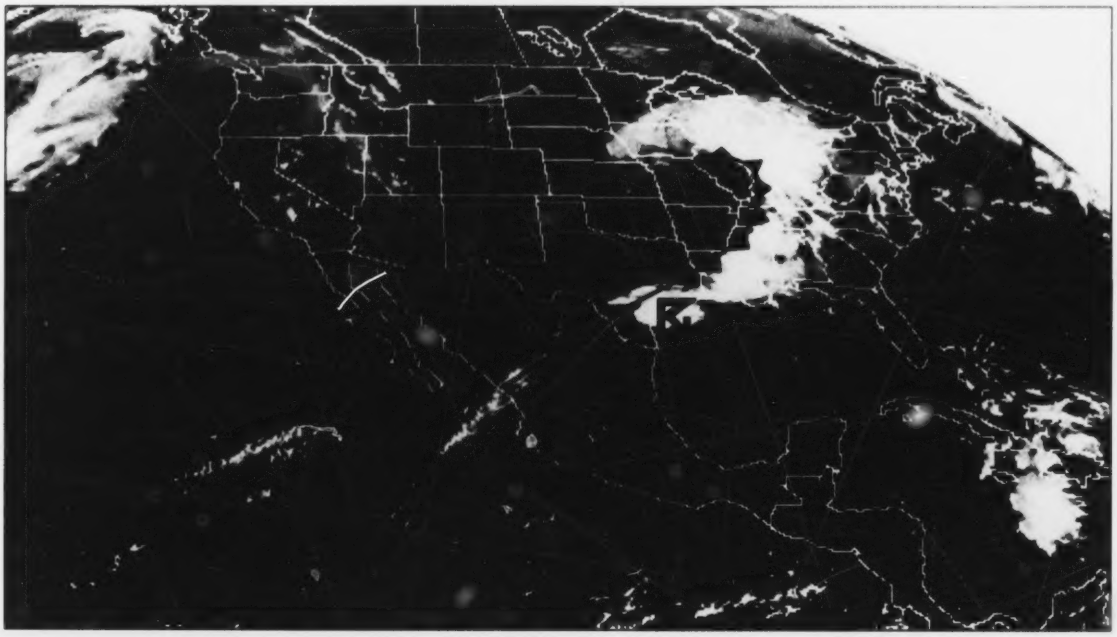


figure 86a. GOES, April 30, 1994
image courtesy of M. Ramamurthy, University of Illinois, Urbana/Champaign

240

To Ski or not to Ski

Authors:
Gayle Farrar, Southern Middle School, Oakland, Maryland
Eileen Killoran, Glenelg Country Day School, Glenelg, Maryland
Stacey Mounts, Ballenger Creek Middle School, Frederick, Maryland

Grade Level: 8

Objectives:
Students will apply the interpretation of satellite imagery to a "real life" situation by:

1. Interpreting a satellite image, and identifying features (land, water, snow) on the image;
2. Compiling data for five potential winter ski resorts on a chart; and
3. Selecting the best ski resort site and supporting the choice with written statements.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science, geography, economics, language arts

Time Requirement:
One class period

Image Format:
Polar-orbiter image

Prerequisite Skills:
Basic knowledge of how to identify features such as ice, snow, water, and mountains on a visible satellite image.

Vocabulary:
albedo

Materials:

1. Globe and a variety of maps of North America
2. Satellite image of the Great Lakes region (winter image, with snow cover and minimal clouds)
3. Student activity sheet

Activities

Warm-up:

1. **Think** about what things must be present for a winter ski resort to be successful (list individually).
2. **Pair** with another student.
3. **Share** ideas together with the class.

Give students an overview of the task:

Group cooperative learning

1. You will be given a satellite image of an area of the U.S.
2. First, identify the region using maps and globes.
3. Identify specific features by name (numbers).

Individual effort

4. Examine the potential ski resort sites (letters) and complete the data table.
5. Select the best winter ski resort site and support your answer. (Note: responses may vary with student abilities)

Extensions:

1. What other features can you identify?
2. Can you name them specifically?
3. Give the latitude and longitude of each potential ski resort site.

Divide students into cooperative learning groups

TO SKI OR NOT TO SKI

name ____________________

period ____________________

date ____________________

S tudent Activity Sheet

Questions:

1. This satellite image shows the __________ __________ region of the United States.
2. Identify the numbered features by name.

#1 ____________________

#2 ____________________

#3 ____________________

#4 ____________________

#5 ____________________

Data Table:

Winter Ski Site	COLORS			POSSIBLE TERRAIN					NOTES
	white	black	gray	mts.	water	ice	snow	low land	
A									
B									
C									
D									
E									

TO SKI OR NOT TO SKI

name ______________________

Student Activity Sheet

Conclusion:

1. If you were financing the construction of a winter ski resort, which location would you support?

2. In your own words, explain why you would support one ski resort over all the others. Remember, your data table is full of information for you to use…**be specific!**

INFRARED AND VISIBLE SATELLITE IMAGES

Authors:
Bob Mishev, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
Wayne Rinehart, North Hagerstown High School, Hagerstown, Maryland
Lonita Robinson, Suitland High School, District Heights, Maryland
Nancy Wilkerson, Prince George's County Public Schools, Maryland

Grade level: 9

Objectives:
Students will be able to:

1. Distinguish between visible and infrared energy on the electromagnetic spectrum, and
2. Compare and contrast visible and infrared satellite images.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science

Time Requirement:
One-two class periods

Image Format:
Geostationary and/or polar-orbiting, visible and infrared

Prerequisite Skills:
Map reading, graphing skills

Vocabulary:
crest, electromagnetic spectrum, infrared radiation, trough, visible radiation, wavelength

Materials:

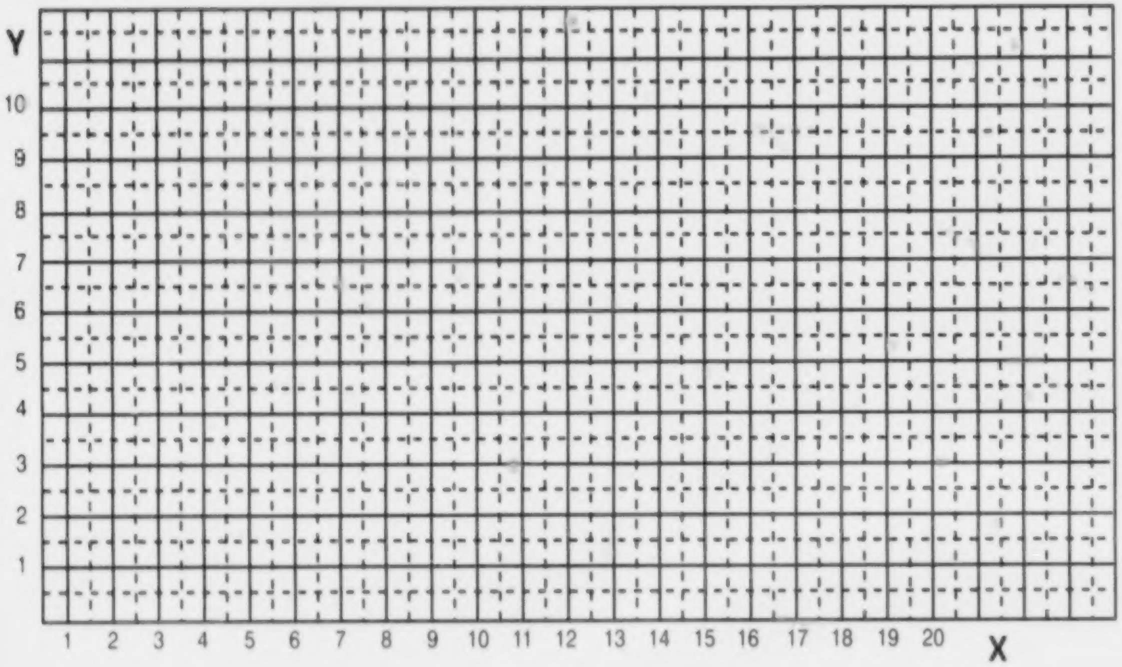
1. Map of United States
2. Graph paper
3. Textbook
4. Chart of electromagnetic spectrum
5. Visible and infrared satellite imagery

Activities

1. Plot values on *Activity 1* to show waves of varying lengths. Identify parts of a wave using vocabulary: crest, trough and wavelength.
2. Use textbook and chart to gather information on electromagnetic spectrum. Answer questions on *Activity 2*.
3. Use infrared and visible satellite imagery to complete *Activity 3*.

INFRARED AND VISIBLE SATELLITE IMAGES

Activity 1



PLOT:

X	Y
.5	8
1.3	5
2	2
2.7	5
3.5	8
4.3	5
5	2
6	5
7	8
8	5
9	2
10	5
11	8
12.5	5
14	2
15.5	5
17	8
19	5

label point (3.5, 8) **A**
label point (5, 2) **B**
label point (7, 8) **C**
label point 11, 8) **D**
label point (17, 8) **E**

Questions

1. **A** is called the ______________________ of a wave.
2. **B** is called the ______________________ of a wave.
3. The distance between **C** & **D** is called ______________________.
4. The distance between **D** & **E** is called ______________________.
5. How are **C** & **D** and **D** & **E** the same ______________________?
6. How are **C** & **D** and **D** & **E** different ______________________?

THE ELECTROMAGNETIC SPECTRUM

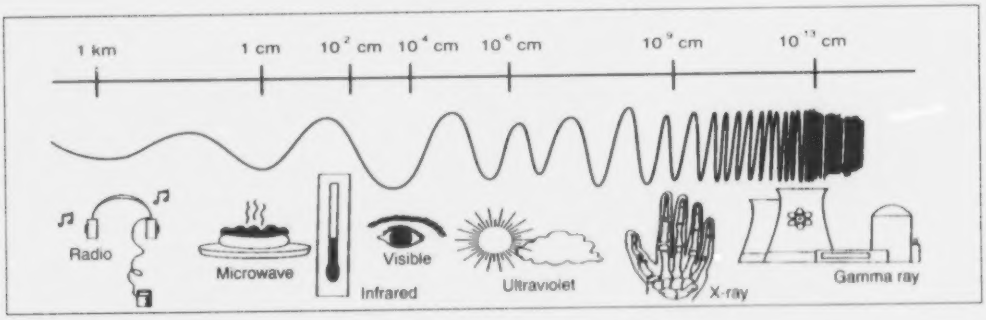


figure 87.

For hundreds of years, scientists believed that light energy was made up of tiny particles which they called "corpuscles." In the 1600's, researchers observed that light energy also had many characteristics of waves. Modern scientists know that all energy is both particles—which they call **photons**—and waves.

Photons are **electromagnetic** waves. These waves oscillate at different **frequencies**, but all travel at the speed of light. The **electromagnetic spectrum** is the range of wave frequencies from low frequencies (below visible light) to high frequencies (above visible light).

The **radio wave** category includes radio and television waves, and cordless and mobile telephone waves. These low-energy waves bounce off many materials including the ionosphere, a characteristic that enables radar applications. Radio waves are received and retransmitted by satellites for long-distance communication.

Microwaves pass through some materials but are absorbed by others. In a microwave oven, the energy passes through the glass and is absorbed by the moisture in the food. The food cooks, but the glass container is not affected.

Infrared or heat waves are more readily absorbed by some materials than by others. Dark materials absorb infrared waves while light materials reflect them.

Visible light waves are the very smallest part of the spectrum and the only frequencies to which the human eye is sensitive. Colors are different frequencies within this category.

The atmosphere protects Earth from dangerous **ultraviolet** rays from the Sun. Ultraviolet and extreme ultraviolet radiation are absorbed in Earth's atmosphere, although some longer ultraviolet wavelengths (UVB) penetrate to the ground. UVB can cause sunburn and is linked to most cases of skin cancer.

X-rays can penetrate muscle and tissue, making medical and dental X-ray photographs possible.

Gamma-ray waves, the highest frequency waves, are more powerful than X-rays and are used to kill cancerous cells.

Humans' limited senses are extended by technology. Technology that utilizes the full electromagnetic spectrum enable the most comprehensive investigation of Earth.

this lesson contains excerpts from Astro 1, Seeing in a New Light, Teacher's Guide With Activities, NASA

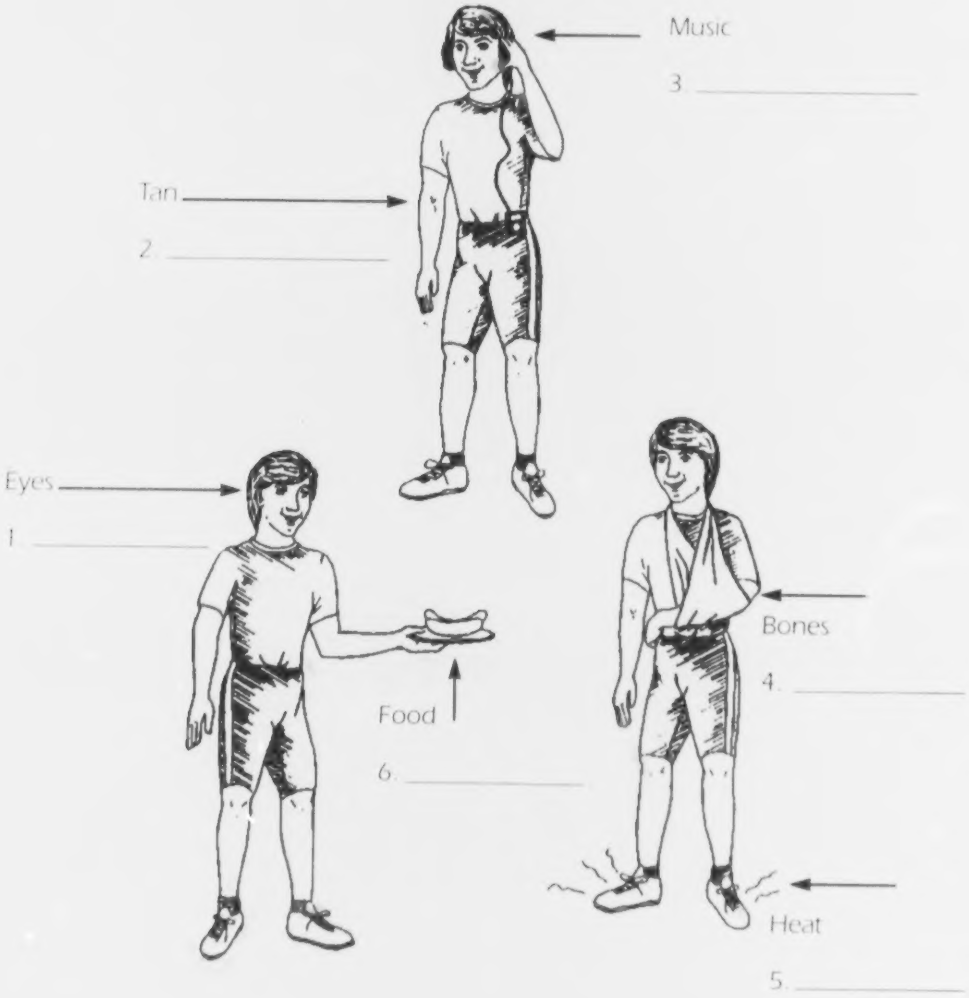
INFRARED AND VISIBLE SATELLITE IMAGES

Activity 2

Light and other kinds of radiation consists of photons that travel in waves.

The Spectrum and You

Different radiation wavelengths are part of your everyday life. Write the name of the wavelength in the blank the way that it affects your life.



microwaves

radio waves

infrared

ultraviolet

visible light

X-ray

Activity 3

Visible Radiation

Seen because of light reflected from objects such as land, clouds, etc.

Light areas indicate very reflective surfaces or colors; dark areas may be shadows, or indicate an area of refraction or the absorption of light.

Infrared Radiation

Seen because of the temperature or heat energy contained in an object.

Light areas indicate objects with lower temperatures while dark areas indicate warmer or more intense heat radiation.

Advantages/Disadvantages of visible vs infrared images

Visible Images	**Infrared Images**
Daylight use only*	Day or night use
Students familiar	Students unfamiliar

Use infrared and visible satellite imagery of same area to complete Activity 3. Divide each image into four quadrants.

Visible Image 1

1A	1B
1C	1D

Infrared Image 2

2A	2A
2A	2A

Questions

1. What distinguishing features can be identified?
   a. In sections 1A and 2A?
   b. In sections 1B and 2B?
   c. In sections 1C and 2C?
   d. In sections 1D and 2D?

2. Based upon your knowledge of visible and infrared radiation, identify sectors that show visible or infrared radiation.

3. In sections 1D and 2D, what differences can be seen?

4. In section 2D, why do we see differences in shades of gray?

* *The Defense Meteorological Satellite Platform (DMSP) does provide night-time (low light) imagery, however access to the data is limited.*

INFRARED AND VISIBLE SATELLITE IMAGES—PART 2

Authors:
Bob Mishev, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
Wayne Rinehart, North Hagerstown High School, Hagerstown, Maryland
Lonita Robinson, Suitland High School, District Heights, Maryland
Nancy Wilkerson, Prince George's County Schools, Maryland

Grade level: 9–12

Objectives:
Using weather satellite images, students will:

1. Identify areas of cooler or warmer surfaces on land and water;
2. Use currents to show some magnitude and direction of weather vectors (movements); and
3. Use water currents and cloud formations to identify some temperature differences.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science

Time Requirement:
1–2 class periods

Image Format:
Geostationary and/or polar-orbiting, visible and infrared

Materials:

1. Direct readout station or computer equipped to display imagery
2. Picture displays or a television that can interface with and display a computer screen

Procedure:

1. Display model images on the screen or bulletin board with identifiable features of: land masses, water bodies, clouds and/or currents.
2. Use a data display (liquid crystal display—LCD) or other display method to enable all students to see imagery.
3. Entire class interacts with imagery displayed.

Activities

Hands-on student identification of:

- Land masses e.g., Florida, Baja
- Water bodies e.g., Great Lakes, Chesapeake
- Cloud formations (small storms, thunderstorms, cyclones, hurricanes)
- Currents (air or water, jet streams)

Note: Some events, such as hurricanes, are seasonal. Timing is critical when using real-time imagery. Developing an archive of files will provide flexibility.

Extensions:

1. Practice, practice, practice
2. Follow a storm, make predictions

figure 88

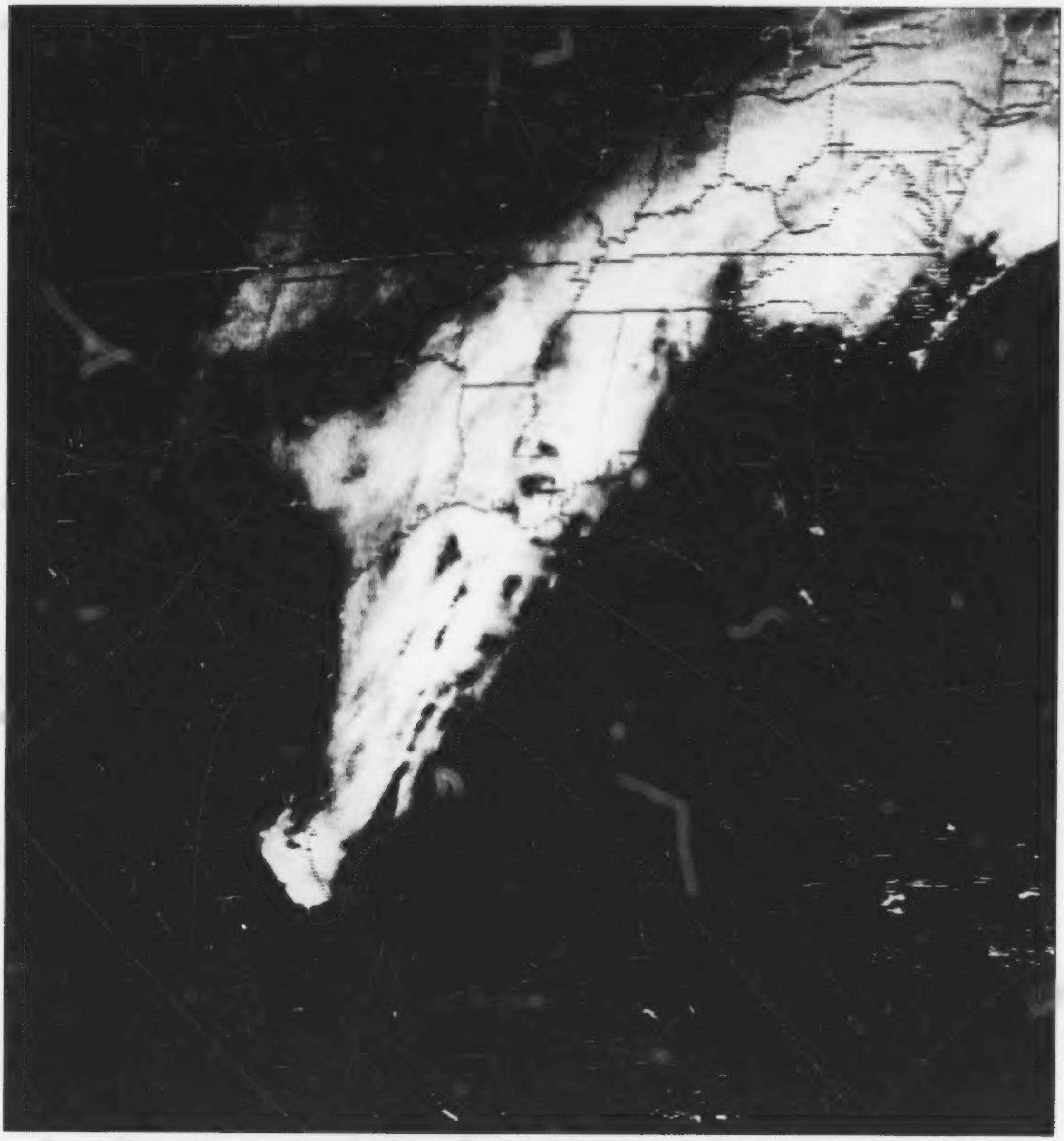


figure 89v. GOES visible image, March 9, 1994
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

Refer to page 222 for additional information about the image.

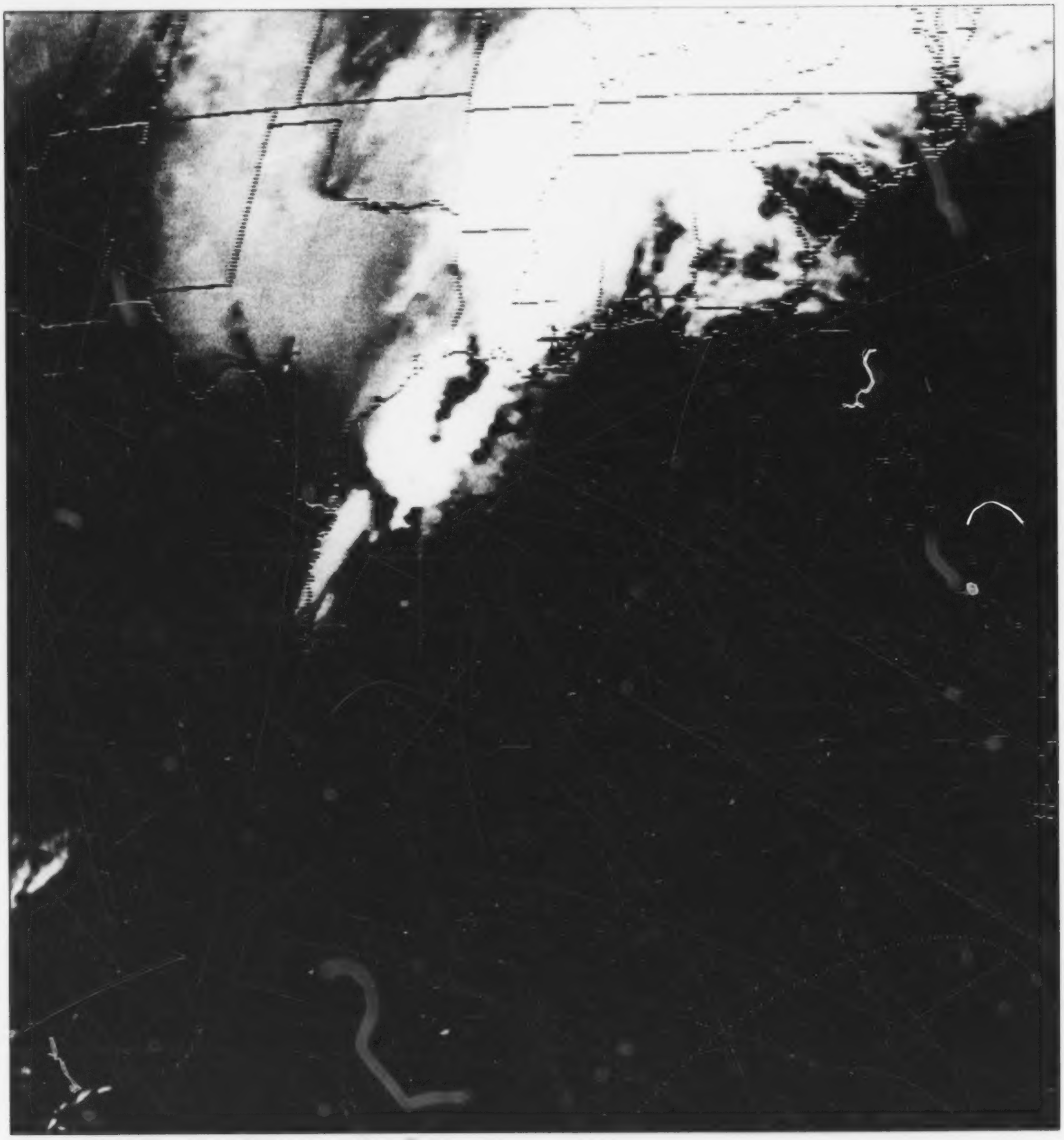


figure 89i. GOES infrared image, March 9, 1994
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

UNDERSTANDING A THUNDERSTORM-DEVELOPMENT THROUGH EXPIRATION

Authors:

John Entwistle, Damascus High School, Damascus Maryland
Carolyn Ossont, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
Hans Steffen, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
John Webber, Aberdeen High School, Aberdeen, Maryland

Grade Level: 9

Objectives:

Students will be able to:

1. Identify the features, patterns, and stages of a thunderstorm; and
2. Explain how the thundercloud evolves.

Relevant Disciplines:

Earth science, meteorology, computer science

Time Requirement:

Two to three periods

Image Format:

APT, visible and infrared

Prerequisite Skills:

1. Knowledge of how clouds form
2. Ability to analyze satellite images

Materials:

1. APT images (visible and infrared pairs preferable, one per group) with a particular cloud type circled for identification
2. Thunderstorm reference sheet
3. Data sheet
4. Cloud fact cards, cut apart (pages 246–248)
5. Teacher-provided reference materials about clouds and satellite imagery
6. *Thunderstorm Reference Sheet* (page 245) for each cooperative learning group

Preparation:

The teacher should spend at least one period preparing the class for this activity. During this preparation time, discuss with the class why and how clouds form. Once students understand the dynamics of cloud formation, go into specific detail concerning the evolution of a thunderstorm—from cumulus cloud through dissipation stage.

Note that this activity describes *standard* thunderstorms. The development of multi- and super-cell thunderstorms won't match what is described here.

Reference:

Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment.*

Activities

1. Divide students into cooperative learning groups (each group has five roles to fill).
2. Pass out one *Data Sheet* to each group.
3. Each group divides up the tasks listed at the bottom of the data sheet (chairperson, recorder, traveler, reporter, researcher).
4. Teacher randomly gives one satellite image to each group as well as a *Thunderstorm Reference Sheet*.
5. After analysis of the satellite image, the group decides which five cloud facts they should receive from the teacher. Making multiple sets of the cards will ensure that each group decides which cards they want, rather than choosing by default. The card types describe: appearance, temperature, source card, associated weather, and vertical development.
6. After reviewing their five cloud fact cards, the group must decide which, if any, of the fact cards pertain to the cloud indicated on their satellite image. Do research from provided materials, allow ten minutes for research.
7. When it is determined which cards are needed or not needed, students may choose to trade cards with other groups through the traveler — to obtain the cards they need.
8. The traveler may approach other groups which have determined the cards they need and make trades for cards to complete the data sheet.
9. When all fact cards are collected, the recorder should complete the data sheet and arrange the fact cards in the order on the data sheet.
10. The reporter for each group, in turn, names the group's cloud and reads each cloud fact card (start with cumulus and go through each stage, ending with dissipating cumulonimbus).
11. Data sheets and fact cards are turned into the teacher for grading.

Extensions:
On the day following this activity, discuss in detail with the class the formation of lightning, tornadoes, hail, and the damage they inflict.

Investigate multi-cell and/or super-cell thunderstorms.

DATA SHEET

Group Number ______

Cloud type indicated on your satellite image ______________________________
Cloud Facts: MUST pertain to your cloud

Source ______________________________

Temperature ______________________________

Appearance ______________________________

Vertical Development ______________________________

Associated Weather ______________________________

Satellite Image, describe what you see. ______________________________

____

____

Names

______________ **Chairperson:** Controls discussion, directs research.

______________ **Recorder:** Completes data sheet compiled by group.

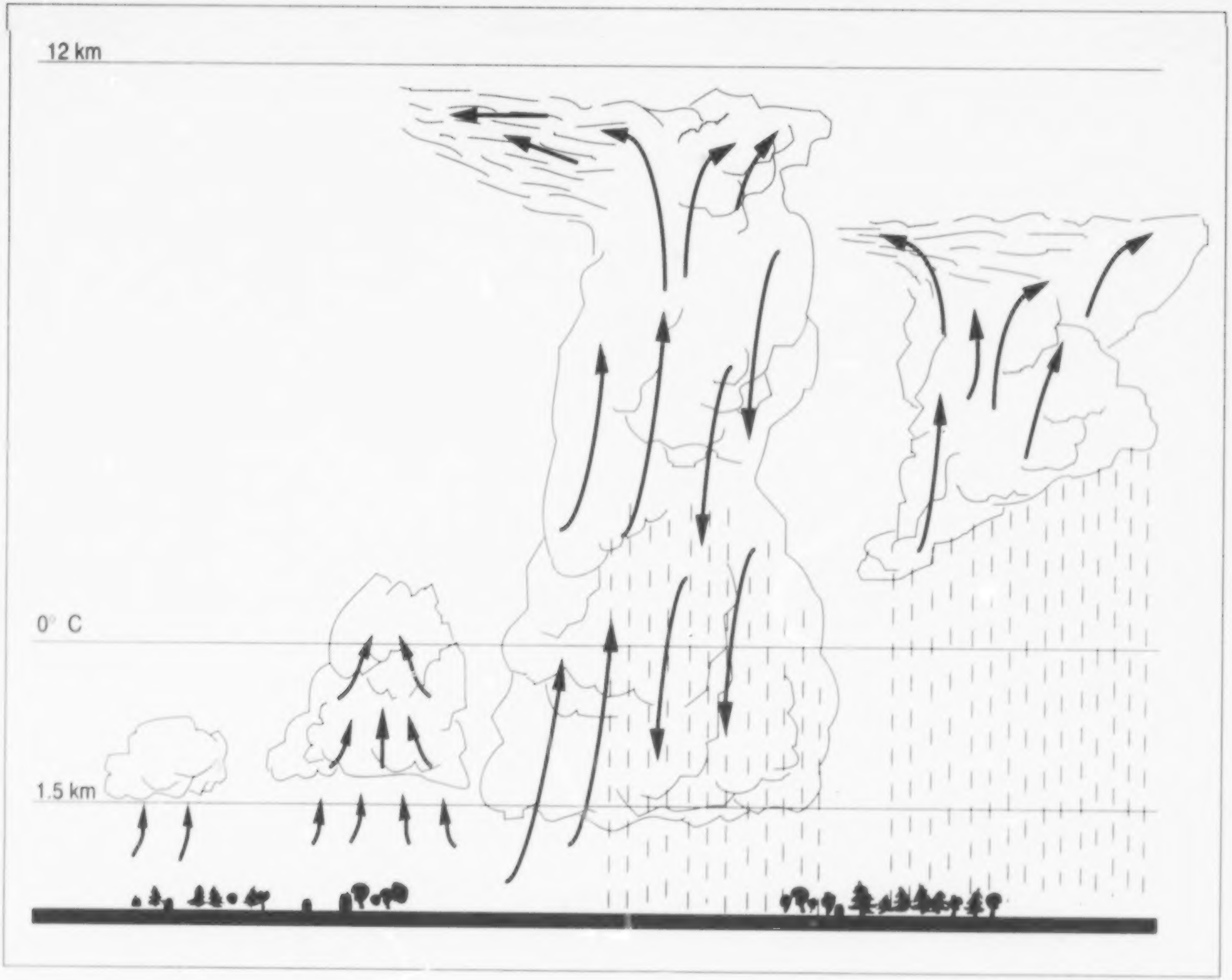
______________ **Traveler:** Moves efficiently through other groups to trade for needed cloud facts.

______________ **Reporter:** Reports results of groups conclusions.

______________ **Researcher:** Optional depending on size of group.

THUNDERSTORM REFERENCE SHEET

figure 90.


12 km
0° C
1.5 km

Appearance Card

Towering Cumulus

Resembles head of cauliflower

Temperature

-50° C top

0° C base

Appearance Card

Cumulus

Puffy, floating cotton

Temperature

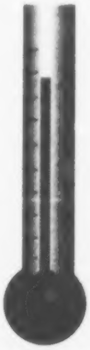
-10° C top

24° C base

Appearance Card

Mature Cumulonimbus
(thunderhead)

Top - ice crystal
Mid - ice crystal/water droplets
Low - water droplets



Temperature

-15° C top

20° C base

Appearance Card

Dissipating Cumulonimbus

Cirrus anvil cloud remains

Temperature

-60° C top

24° C base

Source Card Evaporation continued due to increase in temperature	**Associated Weather** Occasional showers
Source Card Evaporation from lakes, oceans, or other bodies of water	**Associated Weather** Light showers Increased clearing Cooler temperature
Source Card Evaporation causes air to become more moist. Rising air is now able to condense at higher levels and the cloud grows taller. The freezing cloud particles become too heavy to be supported by rising warm air and it rains. Lightning develops when the cloud becomes unstable and experiences turbulance.	**Associated Weather** Moderate thermals Fair
Source Card Downdrafts occur throughout the cloud. Deprived of its rich supply of warmed humid air, cloud droplets no longer form. Light showers below and upper level winds dissipate the cloud.	**Associated Weather** Possibility of hail, rain, lightning, thunder—some or all of each. Strong winds

Vertical Development top 12 km base 1 km	Vertical Development top 1.5 km base 1.0 km
Vertical Development top 11 km base 5 km	Vertical Development top 6.0 km base 1.5 km

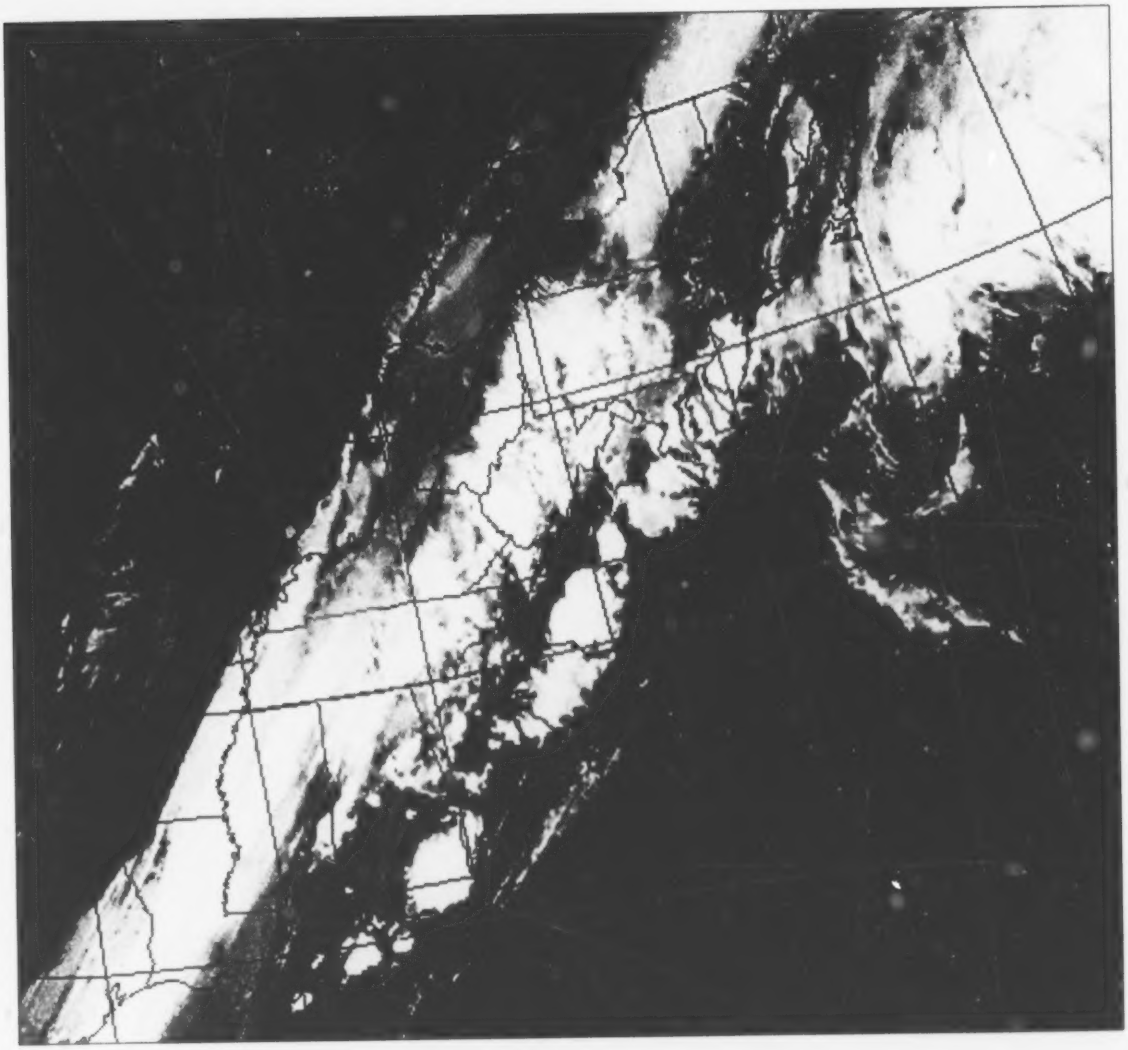


figure 91v. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
visible image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution,
Albert Einstein Planetarium

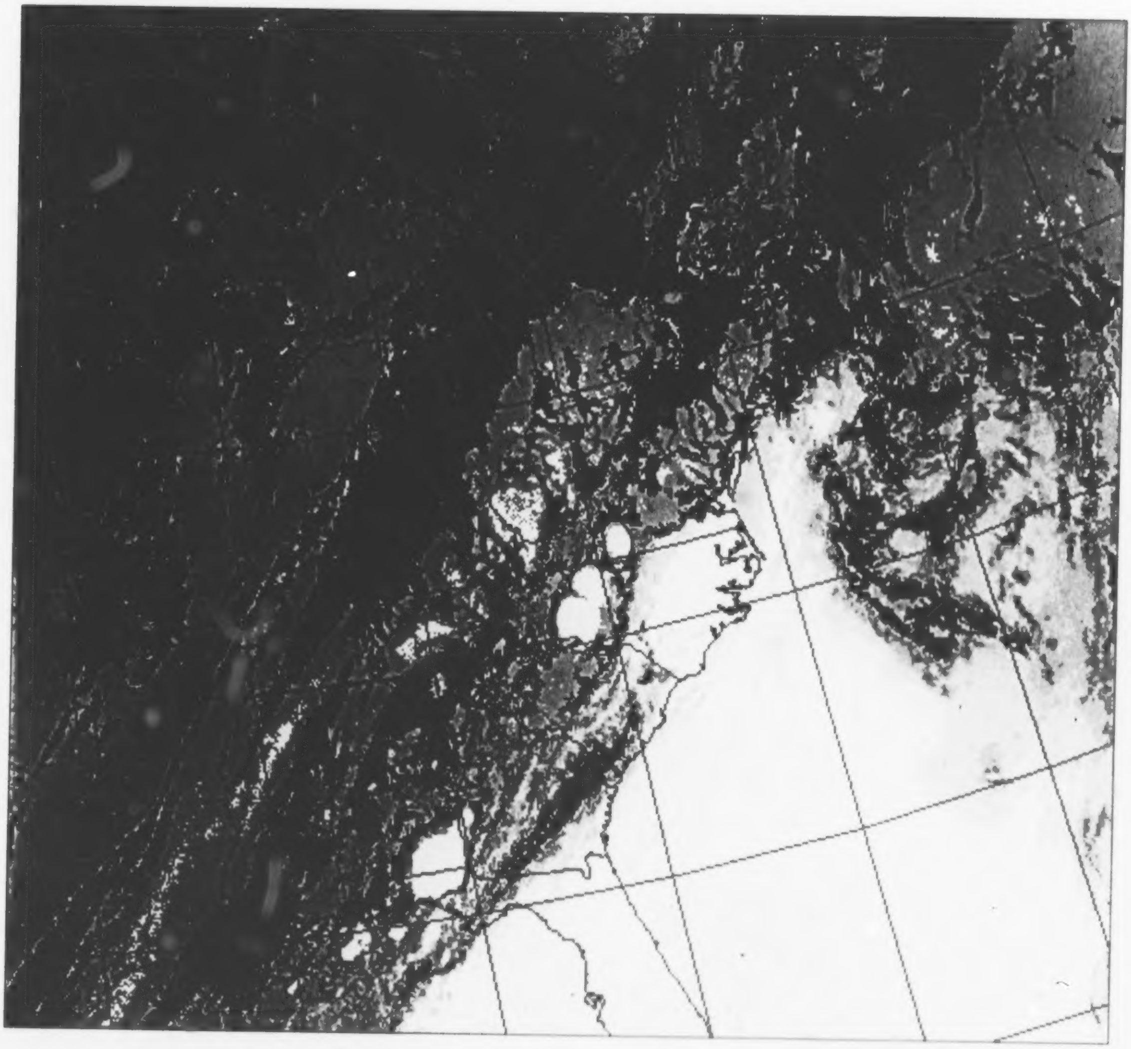


figure 91i. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

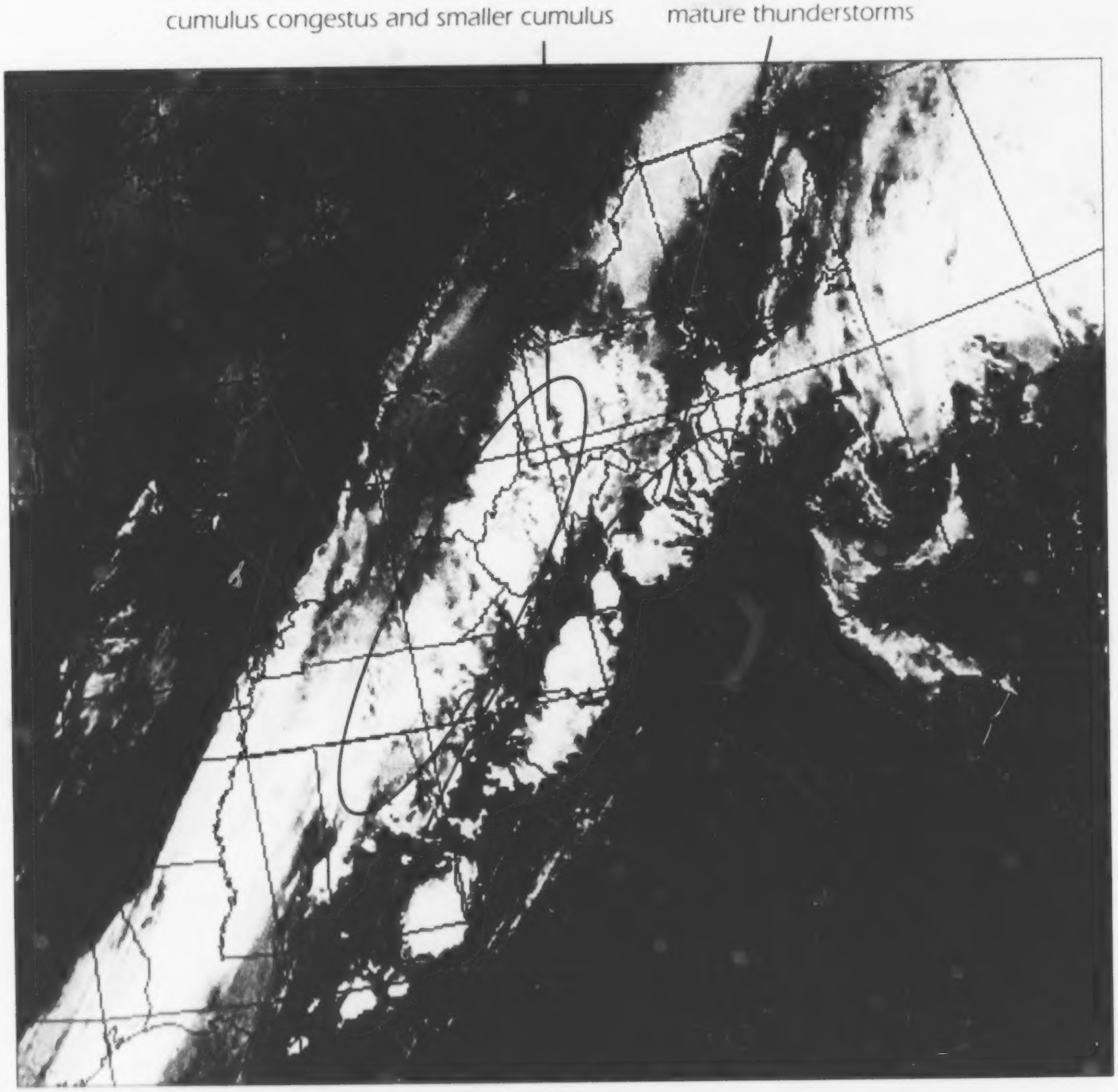

cumulus congestus and smaller cumulus
mature thunderstorms

figure 91a. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
visible image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

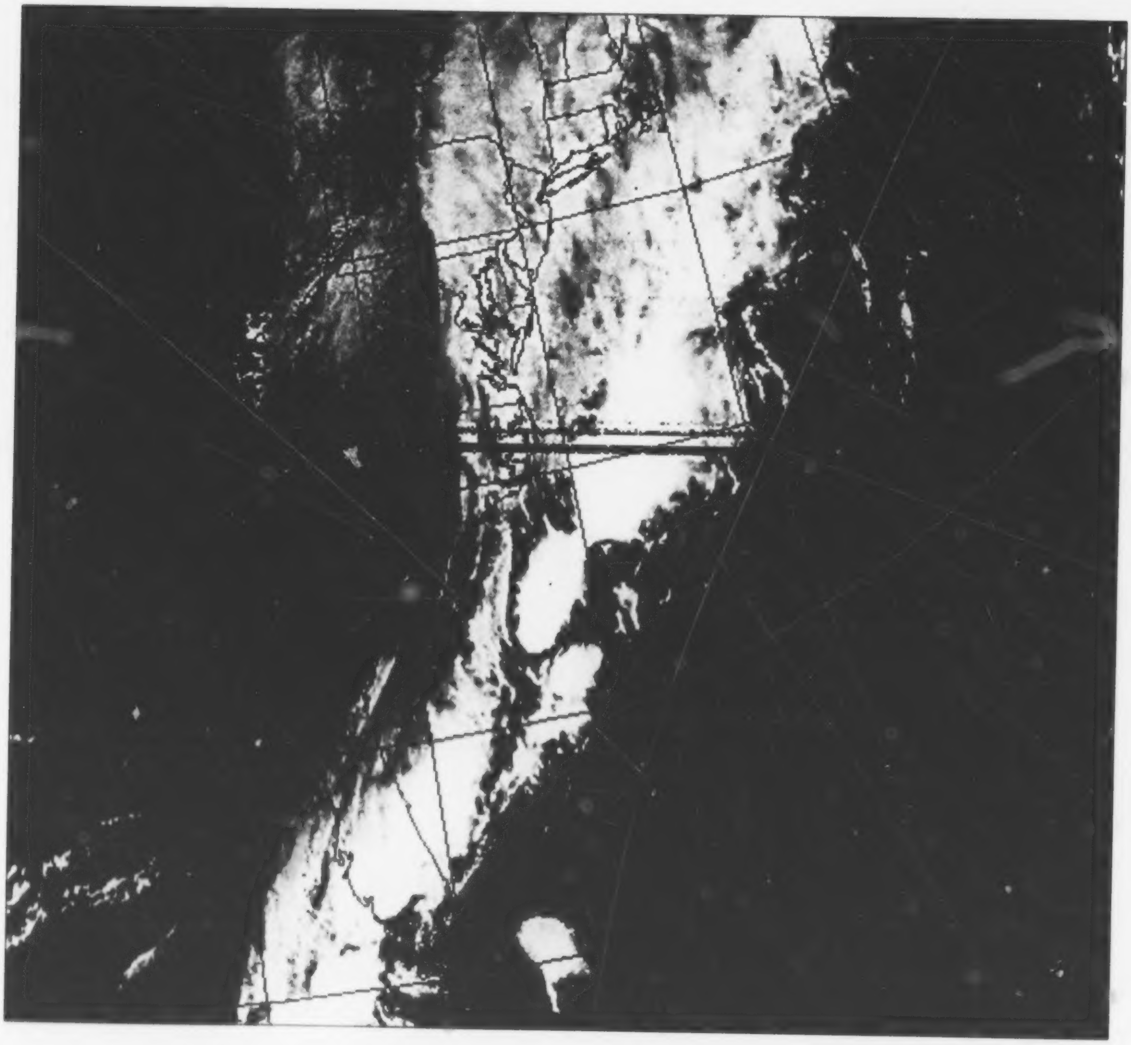


figure 92v. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
visible image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

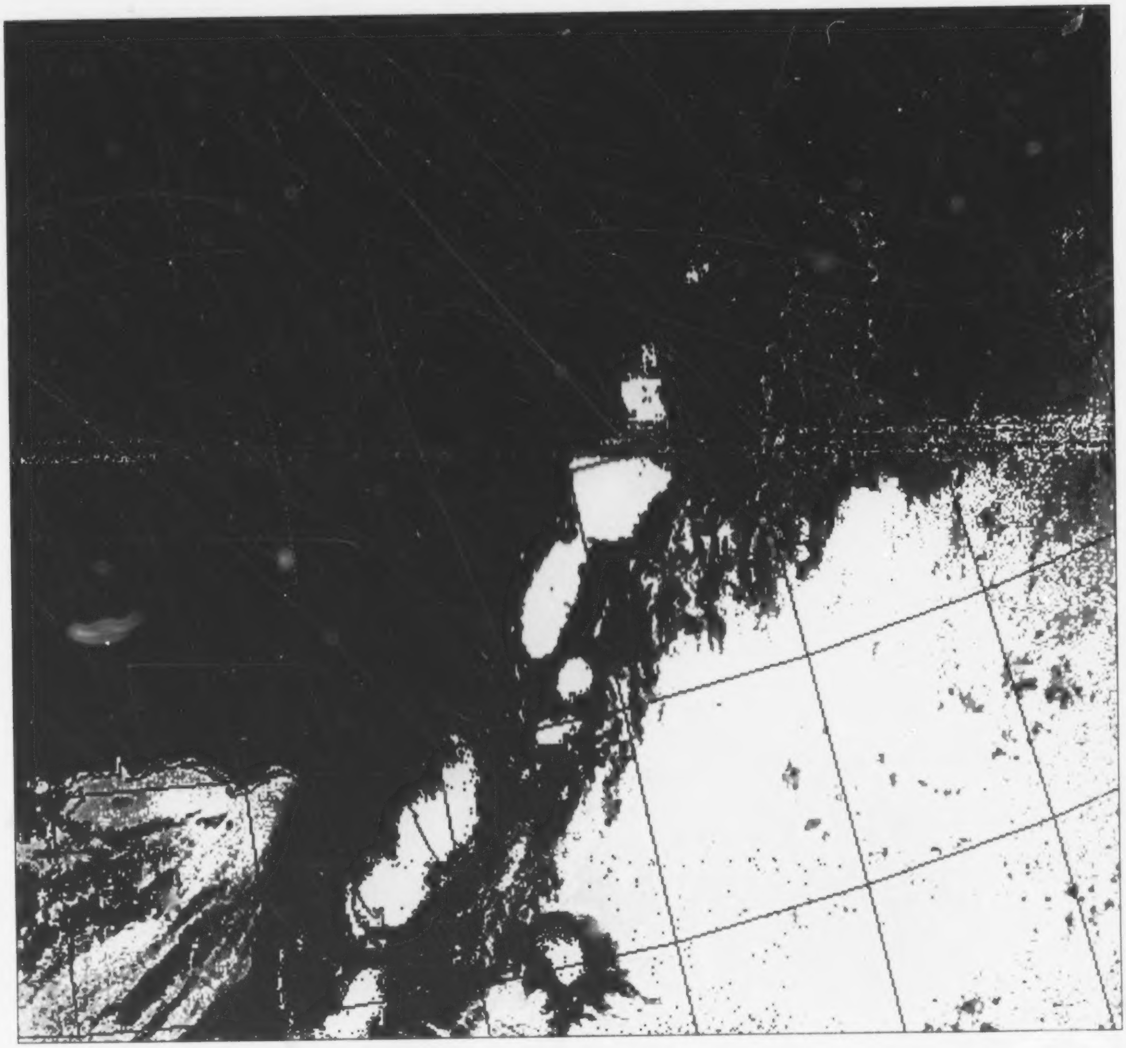


figure 92i. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution,
Albert Einstein Planetarium

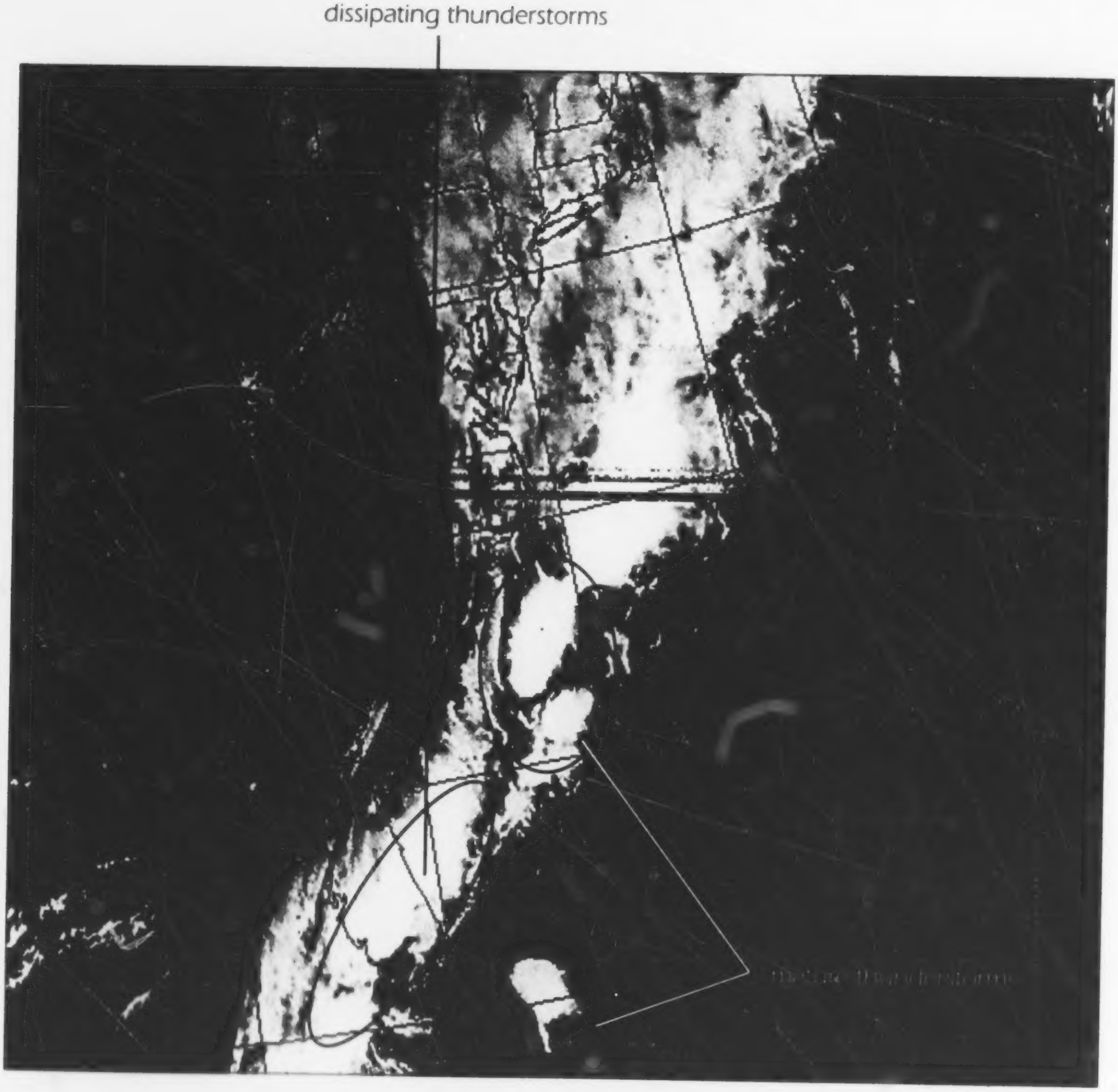

dissipating thunderstorms
mature thunderstorms

figure 92a. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
visible image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

See page 188 for information about image noise.

ANIMATION CREATION

Authors:
John Entwistle, Damascus High School, Damascus, Maryland
Carolyn Ossont, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
Hans Steffen, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
John Webber, Aberdeen High School, Aberdeen, Maryland

Grade Level: 7–12

Objective:
To create a computer animation of a sequential series of WEFAX images which will assist in identification of fronts, clouds, hurricanes, and storm movement.

Materials:
1. IBM/compatible computer system
2. Romeo file * (see page 256)
3. A collection of visible or infrared WEFAX satellite images on computer disk in .GIF format. The images should have been obtained at consistent time intervals.

Background:
1. Two programs are needed to create the animation. *ANIMATE* creates the animation, and *PLAY* displays the animation file created by ANIMATE.
2. The programs must be run from a hard disk drive.
3. The animation is smoother if run on a computer with a fast microprocessor.
4. Only .GIF format image files can be animated using these programs.

Procedure:
1. Make a new directory on your hard drive using the following command.

```
MD ROMEO ENTER
```

2. Change to the new directory using the following command.

```
CD ROMEO ENTER
```

3. Copy the file named "ROMEO.ZIP" from the directory/drive where ROMEO.ZIP has either been downloaded, or the drive on which ROMEO.ZIP is located, using the following command:

```
COPY ROMEO.ZIP TO ROMEO ENTER
```

4. Unzip ROMEO.ZIP using the following command (this command assumes that you have PKUNZIP on your hard drive and in your path. If you don't have PKUNZIP, download it from a bulletin board system [BBS] such as those listed on the following page. The newest version of PKUNZIP and associated files is called "PKZ204G.EXE).

```
PKUNZIP ROMEO.ZIP ENTER
```

Note: You must have at least 2.5 MB of free hard drive space in order to unzip and run this program. Additional information on the PATH statement in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file may be found in your DOS manual. A sample PATH statement looks like this:
PATH = C:\;C:\DOS;C;\ARCFILE

Procedure (con't):

5. Collect your sequential WEFAX image files.

6. Place the image files in the ROMEO subdirectory. Be sure the image files are listed in the subdirectory in chronological order. The closer together the chronological files are obtained, the smoother the animation. Images collected every hour work best, although images collected every two, four, or six hours also give good results. Animation works well with 10 or more image files.

7. To animate the files, be sure you are in the subdirectory containing the file DTA.

8. To create the animation file, type:

   ```
   DTA \*.GIF/SD/SW   ENTER
   ```

   where the path is the path to the image files. This will create the file ANIM.FLI, the more images in the animation, the longer this process will take.

9. To show the animation, type

   ```
   PLAY ANIM.FLI   ENTER
   ```

10. The file, ANIM.FLI should be renamed since each subsequent animation created by DTA will be called ANIM.FLI.

11. Additional, in-depth information about the programs DTA and PLAY are found in their .DOC or .TXT files.

References:

Mason, David K., *DTA (Dave's TGA Animation Program) 1.8f*
Mason, David K., *Animate, 1992.*

*** The Romeo file may be obtained from:**

NASA Spacelink via modem at (205) 895-0028
Internet at spacelink.msfc.nasa.gov

BorderTech Bulletin Board (410) 239-4247 no charge to educators except long distance phone cost

Dallas Remote Imaging Group (DRIG) Bulletin Board System
There is a fee to use this BBS. (214) 394-7438

The animation software is shareware, meaning that it is not free. Trilobyte will support the product and send you new versions as they become available. To register, send $39 to Trilobyte, PO Box 1412, Jacksonville, Oregon 97530.

There are two animation files and 9 individual frame files on the disks. The file, ROMEO, contains 10 images, taken by GOES West. This animation covers 5 hours in the life of the hurricane.
The file ROMEO.ALL contains the original 10 images plus an additional number of frames that extend the animation to over a day's period of time.

PKUNZIP may be downloaded from Spacelink, or the Border Tech or DRIG BBS.

WHEREFORE ART THOU, ROMEO?

Authors:
John Entwistle, Damascus High School, Damascus, Maryland
Carolyn Ossont, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
Hans Steffan, DuVal High School, Lanham, Maryland
John Webber, Aberdeen High School, Aberdeen, Maryland

Grade Level: 7–12

Objectives:
Students will be able to follow the path of a Pacific Ocean hurricane and be able to:

1. Identify a hurricane by its properties, as shown in a series of sequential, animated GOES images;
2. Determine actual size, velocity, and direction of movement of a hurricane; and
3. Predict the path that a hurricane will take.

Time Requirement:
2 to 4 class periods

Image Format:
Geostationary infrared images

Background:

1. Read *U.S. Geostationary Environmental Satellites and Background: Hurricanes*
2. Collect a series of infrared GOES satellite images on computer disk (images acquired at one hour intervals).
3. Download the files described in the previous lesson, *Animation Creation*. Included are two animation files and 9 individual frame files. The file, ROMEO, contains 10 images, each taken from GOES West, covering 5 hours in the life of the hurricane. The file ROMEO.ALL contains the original 10 images plus an additional number of frames that extend the animation to over a day's period of time.

Materials:

1. Computer
2. Romeo files*
3. Metric ruler
4. 1 piece of acetate and marking pen per student group

Preparation:

1. Review background information
2. Set-up the computer system
3. Distribute 1 sheet of acetate and marking pen per student group
4. Distribute student data sheet

References:
Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment.*
Risnychok, Noel T. *"Hurricane!" A Familiarization Booklet.*
Williams, Jack. *The Weather Book.*

* See the lesson *Animation Creation* regarding software.

U.S. GEOSTATIONARY ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITES

Background

Geostationary or geosynchronous satellites orbit the Earth at a speed and altitude (approximately 22,240 miles) that allow them to continuously hover over one area of the Earth's surface and provide constant coverage of that area. The U.S. Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellites (GOES) view almost a third of Earth's surface and provide continuous western hemisphere coverage.

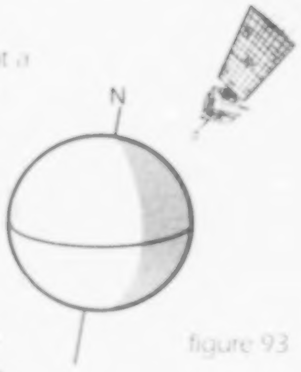


figure 93

GOES provides low-resolution direct readout service called Weather Facsimile (WEFAX). WEFAX transmissions include visual reproductions of weather forecast maps, temperature summaries, cloud analyses, etc. via radio waves. WEFAX visible images have a resolution of eight kilometers, meaning each pixel represents an area eight kilometers on a side. Infrared images have a resolution of 4 kilometers. WEFAX is formatted in a 240 lines-per-minute transmission rate.

GOES

- Provides continuous day and night weather observations
- Monitors weather events such as hurricanes and other severe storms
- Relays environmental data from surface collection points to a processing center
- Performs facsimile transmission of processed weather data to users (WEFAX)
- Provides low-cost satellite image services; the low resolution version is called weather facsimile (WEFAX)
- Monitors the Earth's magnetic field, the energetic particle flux in the vicinity of the satellite, and x-ray emissions from the sun

GOES I-m Primary Sensor Systems:

Imager is a five-channel (one visible, four infrared) imaging radiometer that senses radiant energy and reflected solar energy from the Earth's surface and the atmosphere. The imager also provides a star-sensing capability, used for image navigation and registration purposes.

Sounder is a 19-channel discrete-filter radiometer that senses specific radiant energy for vertical atmospheric temperature and moisture profiles, surface and cloud-top temperature, and ozone distribution.

Communications Subsystem includes weather facsimile (WEFAX) transmission and the search and rescue (SAR) transponder.

Space Environment Monitor (SEM) consists of a magnetometer, x-ray sensor, high-energy proton and alpha detector, and an energetic particles sensor, all used for in-situ surveying of the near-Earth space environment. The real-time data is provided to the Space Environment Services Center—which receives, monitors, and interprets solar-terrestrial data and forecasts special events such as solar flares or geomagnetic storms.

HURRICANES

Background

Hurricanes are severe tropical cyclones with pronounced rotary circulation whose winds consistently exceed 74 mph or 64 knots (1 knot = 1.15 miles/hour). One beneficial quality of hurricanes is serving as a source of rain to land in their path, although the rain is often delivered in devastating quantities. A mature hurricane orchestrates more than a million cubic miles of atmosphere, typically has an 8 to 12 day cycle, and averages about 300 miles in diameter. Winds may exceed 150 knots, and generate waves of 50 feet or more over deep ocean.

Hurricane winds are produced, as all winds are, by differences in atmospheric pressure. The hurricane's energy is derived from the latent heat of condensation. The maximum strength that a storm can achieve is determined by the temperature difference between the sea surface and the top of the storm. Water below 80 degrees Fahrenheit does not contribute much energy to a hurricane so all storms are doomed once they leave warm tropical waters. However, the remnants of some large hurricanes may travel for days over cold ocean before dissipating.

Hurricanes form over tropical waters where the winds are light, the humidity is high, and the surface water temperature is warm (typically 79 degrees F or greater) over a vast area. All hurricanes develop an eye. Within the eye, an average of 20 to 50 kilometers in diameter, clouds are broken and winds are light with very low surface air pressure. Hurricane strength is generally unrelated to overall size, however very strong hurricanes usually have small eyes (less than 10 miles or 16 kilometers in diameter), which has the effect of concentrating the hurricane's energy. Hurricane Gilbert's (1988) eye displayed the lowest sea-level pressure ever recorded in the Western Hemisphere with 26.22 inches (888 millibars) of mercury—compared to the standard 29 inches of mercury in North America, and 30 inches in the tropics. Surrounding the eye is the eye wall, a ring of intense thunderstorms that whirl around the storm's center and extend upward to almost 15 km above sea level.

Although the high winds of hurricanes inflict a lot of damage, it is the waves and flooding associated with the storm surge that cause the most destruction. High winds generate waves over 10 meters (33 feet high), and an average hurricane brings six to twelve inches of rain to the area it crosses. Storm surge claims nine of ten victims in a hurricane.

While a hurricane lives, the release of energy within its circulation is immense. The condensation heat energy released by a hurricane in one day, converted to electricity, could supply the United States' electrical needs for about six months. Hurricane season in the Northern Hemisphere normally lasts from June through November; more hurricanes occur in the Pacific than in the Atlantic Ocean.

storm surge The combined effect of high water and high winds that produce a rise in ocean level that drenches low-lying coast.

storm tide
The combination of high tide and storm surge.

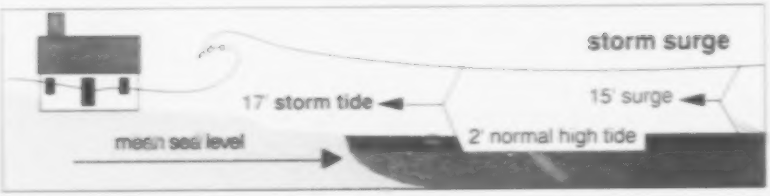


figure 94

TEACHER NOTES FOR ACTIVITIES 1 & 2

Activity 1

1. Run the computer animation by typing: P L A Y R O M E O ENTER
2. Slow the animation by typing: 9
3. Observe the animation; identify the hurricane.
4. Answer the observation questions.

Questions

1a. Which direction is the hurricane moving? How do you know?
1b. Which direction are the clouds in the hurricane moving?
1c. Using a copy of *Cloud Pattern Types used in Intensity Analysis* chart, locate the shape of the hurricane and identify the strength of the hurricane.

Hurricane Pattern Types Chart is from NOAA Technical Report NESDIS 11, listed in bibliography.

Activity 2

1. Before beginning the activity, the teacher should set-up the computer system and display the picture "SCALE" from the Romeo disk by typing:
   P L A Y S C A L E ENTER
2. Tape a piece of acetate to the computer monitor.
3. Students need to copy the distance scale from the screen onto the acetate.
4. View the individual hurricane sequence by typing:
   P L A Y R O M E O . 1 ENTER
5. Mark the center of hurricane Romeo.
6. Trace the coastline onto the acetate.
7. Repeat procedures 4 & 5 for frames Romeo 2, ... Romeo 9.
8. Remove the acetate from the computer screen.
9. Connect the points marking the center of the hurricane.

"Scale" was not included on disk at time of writing so there was no response to that command.

The activity should employ a scale of about 1 centimeter equals 136 km. This proportion was developed using a CRX monitor and may be adjusted for monitors of different size by the following method:

Play Romeo 1 to display a still frame of hurricane. Enhance image to view pixels. Measure from hurricane center to southern edge by counting the number of pixels. Multiply that number by 8 (there is an 8 km resolution per pixel for the images). Restore image to default size on screen. Using a center of the hurricane to the southern edge. The metric distance can then be placed in ratio to actual distance.*

Example: (On CRX monitor there were 17 pixels between center and edge (remember frame is enlarged) 17 x 8 km = 136 km. Standard frame measured 1 centimeter from center to edge, resulting in a 1 cm = 136 km scale.

* The GOES image is distorted by the curve of the Earth. That has been ignored for the purpose of this activity but should be considered for higher level work.

Record the Following Information on Your Data Sheet

2a. Using the scale, determine the distance between each point.
2b. Determine the total distance hurricane Romeo traveled.
2c. Determine the speed the center of the hurricane moved between each dot.
2d. Determine the average speed the hurricane moved.

WHEREFORE ART THOU, ROMEO? STUDENT ACTIVITIES

Activity 1

1. Run the computer animation by typing:
   PLAY ROMEO ENTER
2. Slow the animation by typing: 9
3. Observe the animation, identify the hurricane.
4. Answer the observation questions.

Questions

1a. Which direction is the hurricane moving? How do you know?
1b. Which direction are the clouds in the hurricane moving?
1c. Using a copy of *Cloud Pattern Types used in Intensity Analysis* chart, locate the shape of the hurricane and identify the strength of the hurricane.

Activity 2

1. Before beginning the activity, set-up the computer system and display the picture "SCALE" from the Romeo disk by typing:
   PLAY SCALE ENTER
2. Tape a piece of acetate to the computer monitor.
3. Students need to copy the distance scale from the screen onto the acetate.
4. View the individual hurricane sequence by typing:
   PLAY ROMEO.1 ENTER
5. Mark the center of hurricane Romeo.
6. Trace the coastline onto the acetate.
7. Repeat procedures 4 & 5 for frames Romeo.2, ... Romeo.9
8. Remove the acetate from the computer screen.
9. Connect the points marking the center of the hurricane.

Record the Following Information on Your Data Sheet

2a. Using the scale, determine the distance between each point.
2b. Determine the total distance hurricane Romeo traveled.
2c. Determine the speed the center of the hurricane moved between each dot.
2d. Determine the average speed the hurricane moved.

Activity 3

1. Return to the computer and tape the acetate onto the computer screen, aligning the center of the hurricane images with the dots on the acetate.
2. Load ROMEO.1.
3. Draw a line (radius) from the center of the hurricane to the southern edge of the spiral bands.
4. Repeat procedures 2 & 3 for each frame.
5. Remove the acetate from the computer screen.
6. Determine the diameter of hurricane Romeo for each image. Record this information on your data sheet.

Questions for Activities 2 & 3

3a. Describe the circulation pattern of the clouds around hurricane Romeo.
3b. Compare the distances traveled between each of the images. Is there a pattern? Explain your answer.
3c. Compare the diameters of the hurricane images. Is there a pattern? Explain your answer.
3d. Based on your drawing and the data collected, predict a possible location for Romeo in the next 3, 6, 9, 12, 24 hours. Check to see if your hurricane movement prediction was correct by typing:

P L A Y   R O M E . A L L   ENTER

3e. Predict what will happen to the shape of Romeo over the next 3, 6, 9, 12, 24 hours.
3f. Based on your drawing, what might be one reason that a hurricane would lose strength?
3g. If you were a meteorologist in Hawaii, would you issue a hurricane warning? Explain your answer.

Extensions:

1. Collect GOES images and animate a sequence.
2. Using ROMEO.ALL, compare the movement of hurricane Romeo to the clouds in the north-central and the central parts of the U.S.

References:

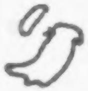
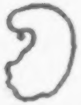
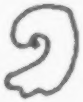
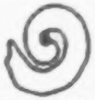
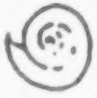
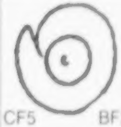
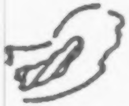
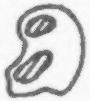
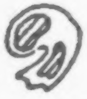
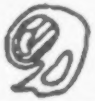
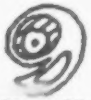
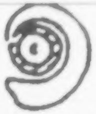
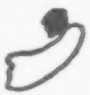
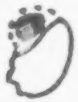
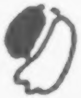
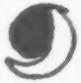
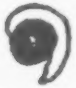
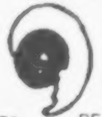
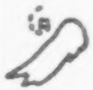
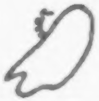
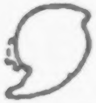
Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment.*
"A.M. Weather for Teachers."
Dvorak, Vernon F. "Tropical Cyclone Intensity Analysis Using Satellite Data."
Mason, David K. "DTA, Dave's/TGA Animation Program 1.8f." 1992.
Mason, David K. "Animate." 1992.
Williams, Jack. *The Weather Book.*

HURRICANE ROMEO
ACTIVITIES DATA SHEET

name ______________________

Image	Distance Between Hurricane Image Centers (cm)	Actual Distance Between Hurricane Centers (km)	Hurricane Image Diameter (cm)	Actual Hurricane Diameter (km)
Romeo 1				
Romeo 2				
Romeo 3				
Romeo 4				
Romeo 5				
Romeo 6				
Romeo 7				
Romeo 8				
Romeo 9				
Total Distance				

CLOUD PATTERN TYPES USED IN INTENSITY ANALYSIS

Developmental Pattern Type	Pre-Storm	Tropical Storm		Hurricane Pattern Types		
		Minimal	Strong	Minimal	Strong	Super
	T 1.5 ± .5	T 2.5	T 3.5	T 4.5	T 5.5	T 6.5 - T 8
Curved Band Primary Pattern Types				 CF4 BF 1/2	 CF4 BF1-1/2	 CF5 BF2
Curved Band Enhanced Infrared Image (EIR)					 CF5 BF 1/2	 CF5-1/2 BF1
Central Dense Overcast (CDO) Pattern Type Visible Images Only				 CF4 BF 1/2	 CF5 BF1	 CF6 BF1
Shear Pattern Type						

T	for tropical number representing wind speed. The rate is defined as T-number per day.
CDO	Central Dense Overcast cloud mass over curved features or over eye.
CF	Central Feature such as CDO or eye.
BF	Banding feature. The amount of banding that coils around the CDO. Banding features can be very important in visible imagery analysis, adding as much as 2.5 T-numbers to the intensity estimate.

figure 95 excerpt from NOAA Technical Report —see bibliography

A Cold Front Passes

Authors:

Sarah Clemmitt, Montgomery Blair High School, Silver Spring, Maryland
Onyema Isigwe, Dunbar High School, Washington, DC

Grade Level: 9–12

Can be adapted for other grade and ability levels.

Objectives:

At the conclusion of this project, the students will be able to:

1. Identify satellite-viewed features associated with a cold front,
2. Identify surface data trends associated with the passing of a cold front,
3. Track the movement of a cold front, and
4. Predict the arrival of the cold front.

Rationale:

To enable students, in groups of four, to apply the information they have learned about cold fronts to analyze satellite images and synoptic data they have collected.

Relevant Disciplines:

Earth and space science, computer science, mathematics, English

Time Requirement:

One-and-a-half to two weeks

Image Format:

APT or GOES, visible and/or infrared

Prerequisite Skills:

This lesson is not intended as an introductory activity.

1. The students should be familiar with manipulating and enhancing satellite images.
2. The students should be familiar with weather patterns, including cold fronts, and the variables inherent in their passing.
3. The students should have experience in using a thermometer, a barometer, an anemometer, and a sling psychrometer.

Vocabulary:

air mass, clouds (cirrus, cumulonimbus) cold front, dew point, velocity

Materials:

1. access to images
2. anemometer
3. barometer
4. sling psychrometer
5. thermometer

Activities

Introduction:

At this point students have already learned quite a bit about weather patterns. They know what a cold front is, as well as the variables that will change as a front passes. In this activity that knowledge will be used to:

1. Identify satellite features associated with a cold front,
2. Identify surface data trends associated with the passing of a cold front,
3. Track the movement of a cold front, and
4. Predict the arrival of the cold front.

Student instructions are on page 268 and can be copied and distributed to the class. Students are expected to turn in a written report that includes the following sections:

1. Title page - names of group members and dates of study
2. Introduction - summary of what you know about cold fronts (include citations) and a statement about the objective of your report
3. Materials and methods
4. Data
   - Information collected from the satellite images including the position of a cold front
   - Predicted velocity of the front
   - Table of surface data
   - Graphs demonstrating ground data trends
5. Discussion
6. Citations

1. Pull up the day's satellite image of your location.

   Depending on the computer facilities available, this can be done a number of ways. Most likely you will need to save the image on discs for the students to use during their class periods.

2. Using the satellite image, indicate the position of the cold front. Also, note the types of clouds you see and their positions relative to the cold front (are they on the leading edge? trailing edge? middle?)

   Because the students need to include this information in their report, you may wish to use the "Position of a Cold Front" worksheet on page 267, or allow each group to devise their own presentation format. In order for the students to indicate the position of the cold front, they may need a printout of the image to trace, or a map to transfer the location onto.

3. Step #2 should be repeated for 2 or 3 images in order to get a good idea of the movement associated with this front.

   The front may be moving quickly, so it may be best to do this with a few images captured on the same day. Otherwise the cold front may pass before the students have made their predictions.

4. Based on the images you have analyzed thus far, calculate the average velocity of the cold front. There are a number of ways to do this. Students should decide on a method, then show all their steps to illustrate how they have chosen to proceed.

Decide how much information about velocity to give your students. Distances can be determined in a number of ways, such as counting pixels or creating a scale based upon known distances. More advanced students should be made aware that the distance between the fronts does not necessarily follow the boundaries of the pixel. To be accurate, they may need to find the corner-to-corner distance across the pixel. Also, beware that a derived distance scale may be distorted due to the Earth's curvature.

5. Using your velocity calculations, predict when this cold front will pass through your area. Show your work.

6. For the next few days (in some cases, hours), until the cold front passes through, do two things:
   a. Record the following information in the table on page 266:
      - cloud type - sketches or photos may be included
      - date
      - dew point (relative humidity if hygrometer is available)
      - time
      - pressure
      - precipitation
      - temperature
      - wind direction and speed
      - any other observations

   b. Continue to analyze the daily (or more frequent) satellite images. Prediction of the arrival time for the cold front should be adjusted if the velocity of the cold front varies with time. Include all of the predictions in the final report.

7. After the front has passed, write a discussion section that includes the following:
   a. A summary of the satellite observations.
      - General location and movement of the front (latitude and longitude)
      - Velocity and arrival predictions made (discuss any adjustment made to the prediction)

   b. A summary of the trends seen in the surface data collected.
      - General trends seen in each variable.
      - Does the data match what is expected when a cold front passes?
      - Can you explain the variables that do not match a cold front?

   c. A discussion of the similarities and differences between *a* and *b*.
      - Was your prediction accurate? Why or why not?
      - Do the cloud types seen in both data sets correlate? Why or why not?
      - How accurate is this method of prediction?
      - What could be done to ensure a more accurate prediction (discuss at least two options)?

Variations on this Lesson:

1. Limit the study to just one or two variables, as appropriate to grade level.
2. Stagger the due dates for the reports to ensure that the students do not fall behind and become overwhelmed.
3. Require peer editing of a rough draft of the report.
4. Use other phenomena in place of a cold front, e.g., a tropical storm turning into a hurricane.
5. Have students from period to period collaborate their surface data to obtain a more accurate picture of surface activity.

Student Activities

Written Report

Students are expected to turn in a written report that includes the following sections:

1. Title page - names of group members and dates of study
2. Introduction - summary of what you know about cold fronts (include citations) and a statement about the objective of your report
3. Materials and methods
4. Data
   - Information collected from the satellite images including the position of a cold front
   - Predicted velocity of the front
   - Table of surface data
   - Graphs demonstrating ground data trends
5. Discussion
6. Citations

Observation of the Front

1. Obtain the day's satellite image
2. Using the image, indicate the position of the cold front and complete the chart on page 271. Also, note the types of clouds you see and their positions relative to the cold front (are they on the leading edge? trailing edge? middle?).
3. Step #2 should be repeated for 2 or 3 images in order to get a good idea of the movement associated with this front.
4. Based on the images you have analyzed thus far, calculate the average velocity of the cold front. There are a number of ways to do this. Decide on a method, then show all your steps so your teacher knows how you have chosen to proceed.
5. Using your velocity calculations, predict when this cold front will pass through your area. Show your work.
6. For the next few days (in some cases, hours) until the cold front passes through, do two things:
   a. Record the following information in the table on page 270:
      - cloud type - sketches or photos may be included
      - date
      - dew point (relative humidity if hygrometer is available)
      - pressure
      - precipitation

- temperature
- time
- wind direction and speed
- any other observations

b. Continue to analyze the daily (or more frequent) satellite images. Prediction of the arrival time for the cold front should be adjusted if the velocity of the cold front varies with time. Include all of the predictions in the final report.

Analysis

After the front has passed, write a discussion section that includes the following

1. A summary of the satellite observations.
    - General location and movement of the front (latitude and longitude).
    - Velocity and arrival predictions made (discuss any adjustment made to the prediction).

2. A summary of the trends seen in the surface data collected.
    - General trends seen in each variable.
    - Does the data match what is expected when a cold front passes?
    - Can you explain the variables that do not match a cold front?

3. A discussion of the similarities and differences between a and b.
    - Was your prediction accurate? Why or why not?
    - Do the cloud types seen in both data sets correlate? Why or why not?
    - How accurate is this method of prediction?
    - What could be done to ensure a more accurate prediction (discuss at least two options)?

A COLD FRONT PASSES
TABLE OF SURFACE DATA

names ______________________

____

date					
time					
dew point					
pressure					
precipitation					
temperature					
wind direction					
wind speed					
cloud types and coverage					
other observations					

POSITION OF THE COLD FRONT

place image here

date	names
time	
satellite	
cloud type	
other observations	

WILL THERE BE A RAIN DELAY?

Authors:
Terrence Nixon, Maryland Science Center, Baltimore, Maryland
Sandra Steele, Pikesville High School, Baltimore, Maryland
Sushmita Vargo, Washington International School, Washington, DC

Grade Level: 9–12

Objectives:

Using satellite images, students will be able to:

1. Identify general cloud types,
2. Identify areas of precipitation based on the locations of appropriate cloud types,
3. Identify areas of low pressure and frontal boundaries based on cloud patterns, and
4. Predict weather based on analysis of visible satellite images and other weather information.

Relevant Disciplines:

Earth and space science, geography, meteorology, marketing, business

Time Requirement:

One class period

Image Format:

APT or GOES images. Use images from different time periods so student predictions will vary.

Prerequisite Skills:

Students should be familiar with elements of mid-latitude cyclone development. This could be the culminating activity for a weather unit.

Vocabulary:

cloud types, cold front, pressure systems, warm front, weather symbols

Materials:

1. APT or GOES visible images (1 visible image per pair of students)
2. Outline map of the United States
3. Student handout

Activities

1. Distribute to each pair of students: 1 visible satellite image, 1 political map, 1 student worksheet
2. Explain that the first game of the world series will be played in Baltimore (or your city or nearest city with a team) tomorrow and that they are the meteorologists responsible for predicting the weather. Note: you may wish to reword the activity to reflect your location and team.
3. Allow the students 20–25 minutes to discuss and answer the worksheet questions in pairs.
4. Have students share their predictions with the class. Insure that each group can back up their predictions by asking questions concerning cloud identification, front location, etc. Allow other students to ask questions.
5. Instead of forecasting game day weather, have students forecast weather over a holiday (will it snow on Thanksgiving, rain on Memorial Day, etc.?).
6. Verify the forecasts by using weather information from newspapers or TV.

Extension:
Track and compare *Farmer's Almanac* forecasts with local weather.

WILL THERE BE A RAIN DELAY?

Student Worksheet

Objective:
The Orioles have won the American League Championship. The series will be played in Baltimore at Camden Yards. Your objective is to predict the cloud cover and precipitation condition for the World Series game that will be played tomorrow by analyzing the satellite image.

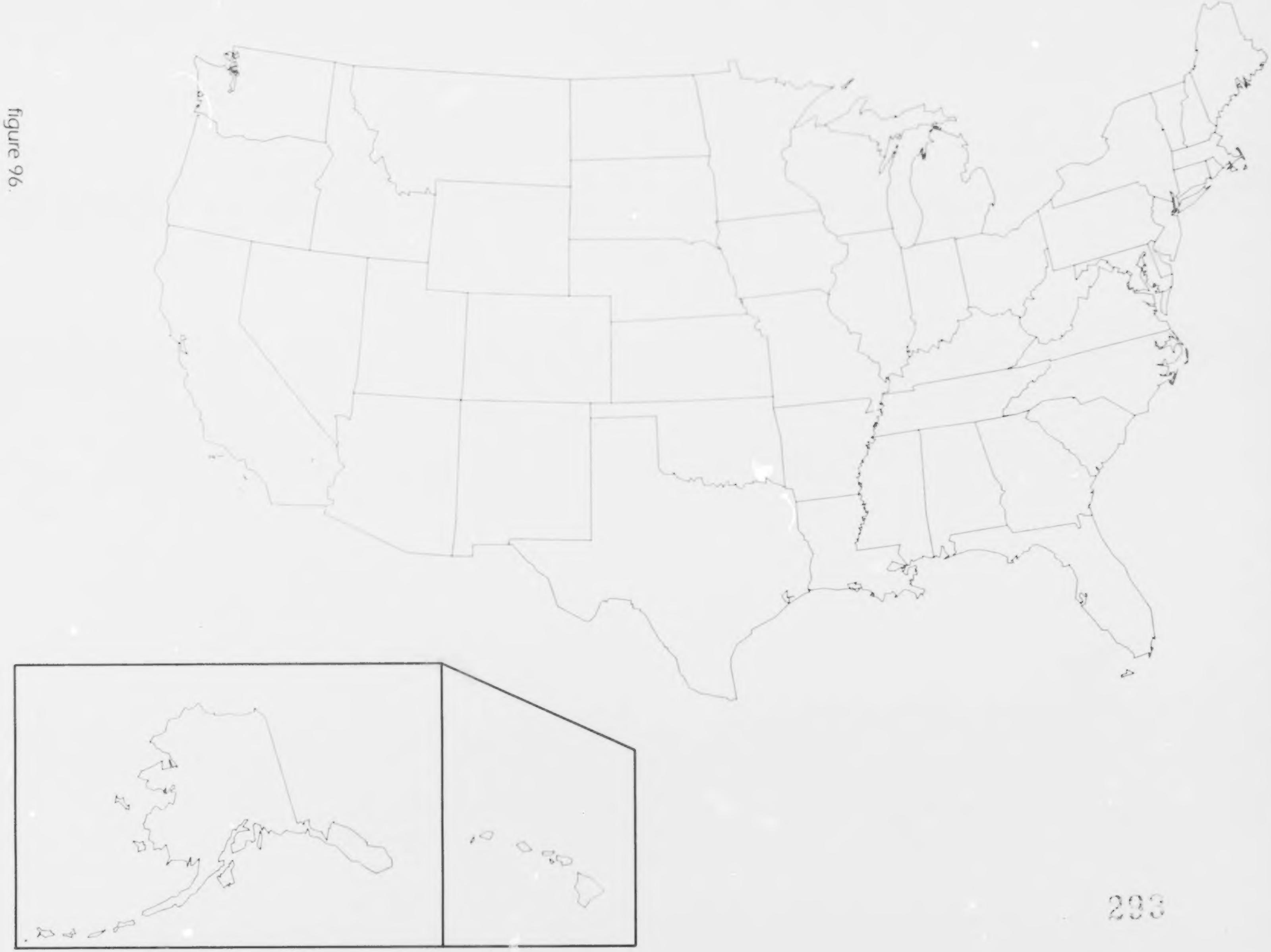
Materials:
1. Visible satellite image
2. Outline map of the United States

Activities

Observe the satellite image and complete the following questions:

1. What large scale cloud type is associated with a low pressure system?
2. Can you find this cloud shape on the image, and determine its location on your outline map? Label this location with the symbol for low pressure (**L**).
3. What image patterns are associated with thunderstorm activity? Comment on the characteristic gray shade and shape.
4. Find these thunderstorm images on the satellite image and label them on your out line map using the thunderstorm symbol (☈).
5. Shade in the area on your outline map which contains a concentration of (☈) symbols.
6. On the outline map you have just labeled, and using the satellite image, identify a geographic location of a cold front. Label this on your map with the symbol for a cold front (}).
7. Locate Baltimore on the outline map. Label it with a dot (•).
8. Comparing the satellite image on your labeled map, predict the cloud cover and precipitation in Baltimore for tomorrow, World Series Day.

figure 96.



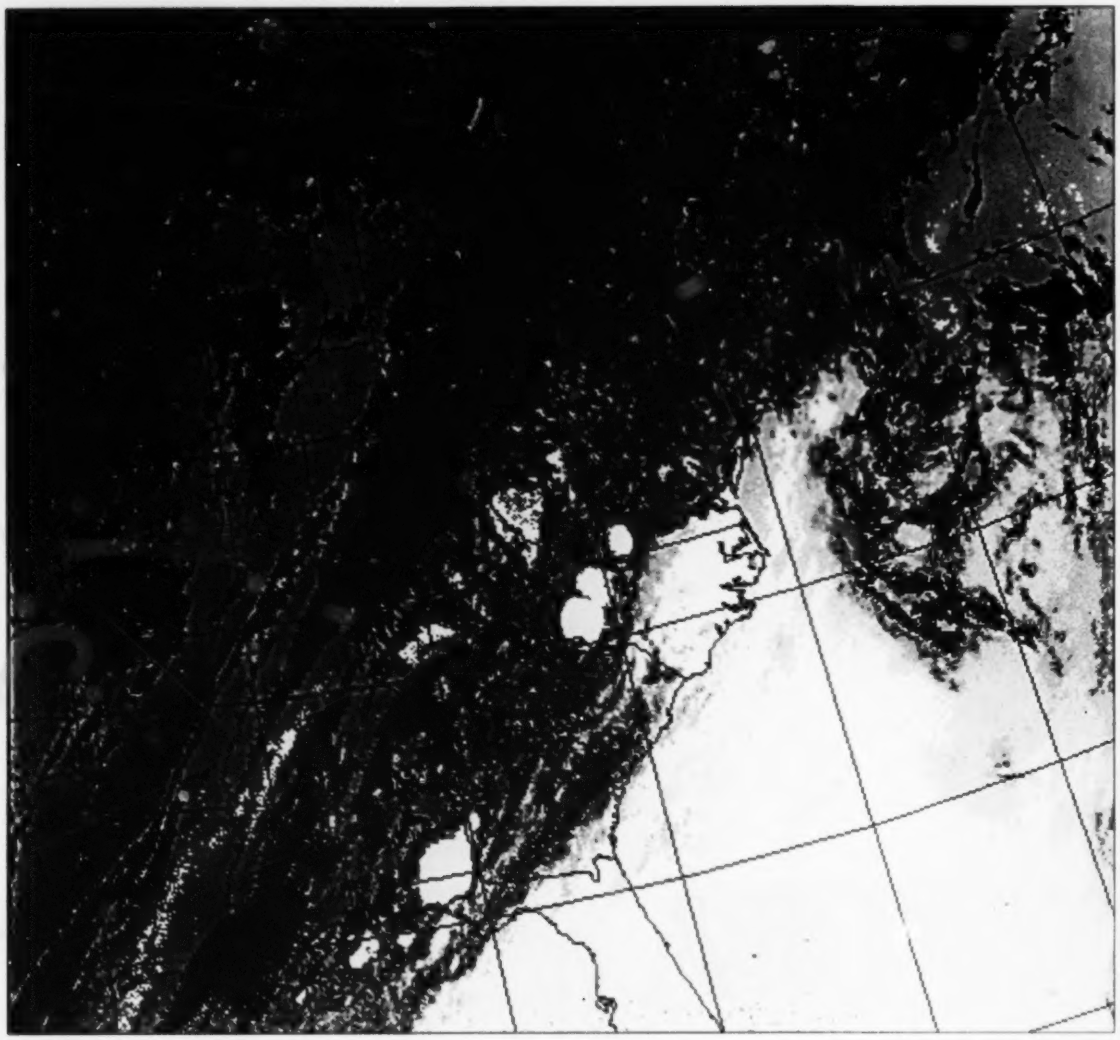
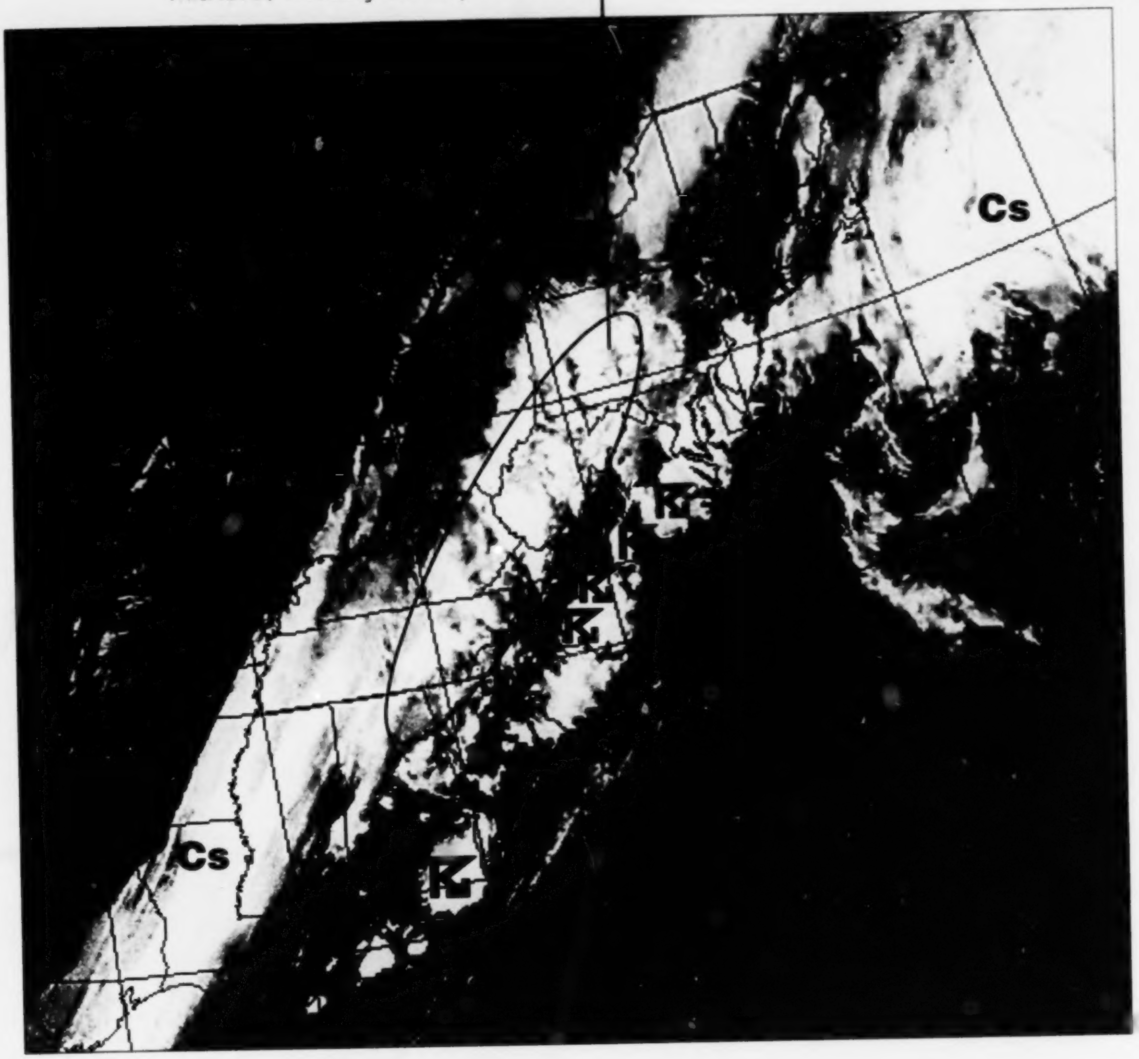


figure 97i. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution,
Albert Einstein Planetarium



little thunderstorms

cumulus congestus or towering cumulus
mid-level, vertically developed clouds

figure 97a. NOAA 10, March 28, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution, Albert Einstein Planetarium

visible image - counterpoint to figure 97i

Images on computer will more clearly display temperature gradients and facilitate assessment of the infrared image.

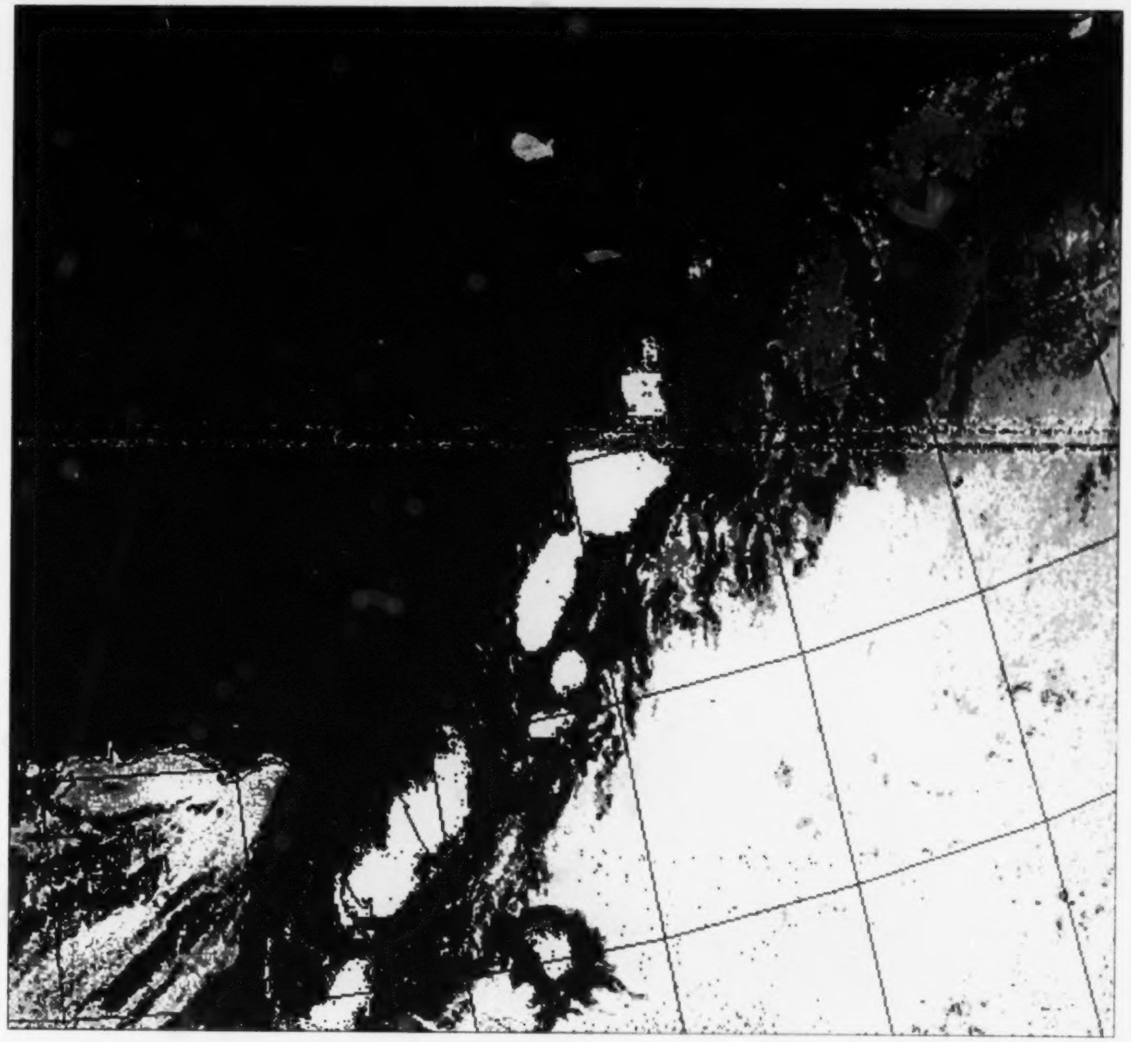
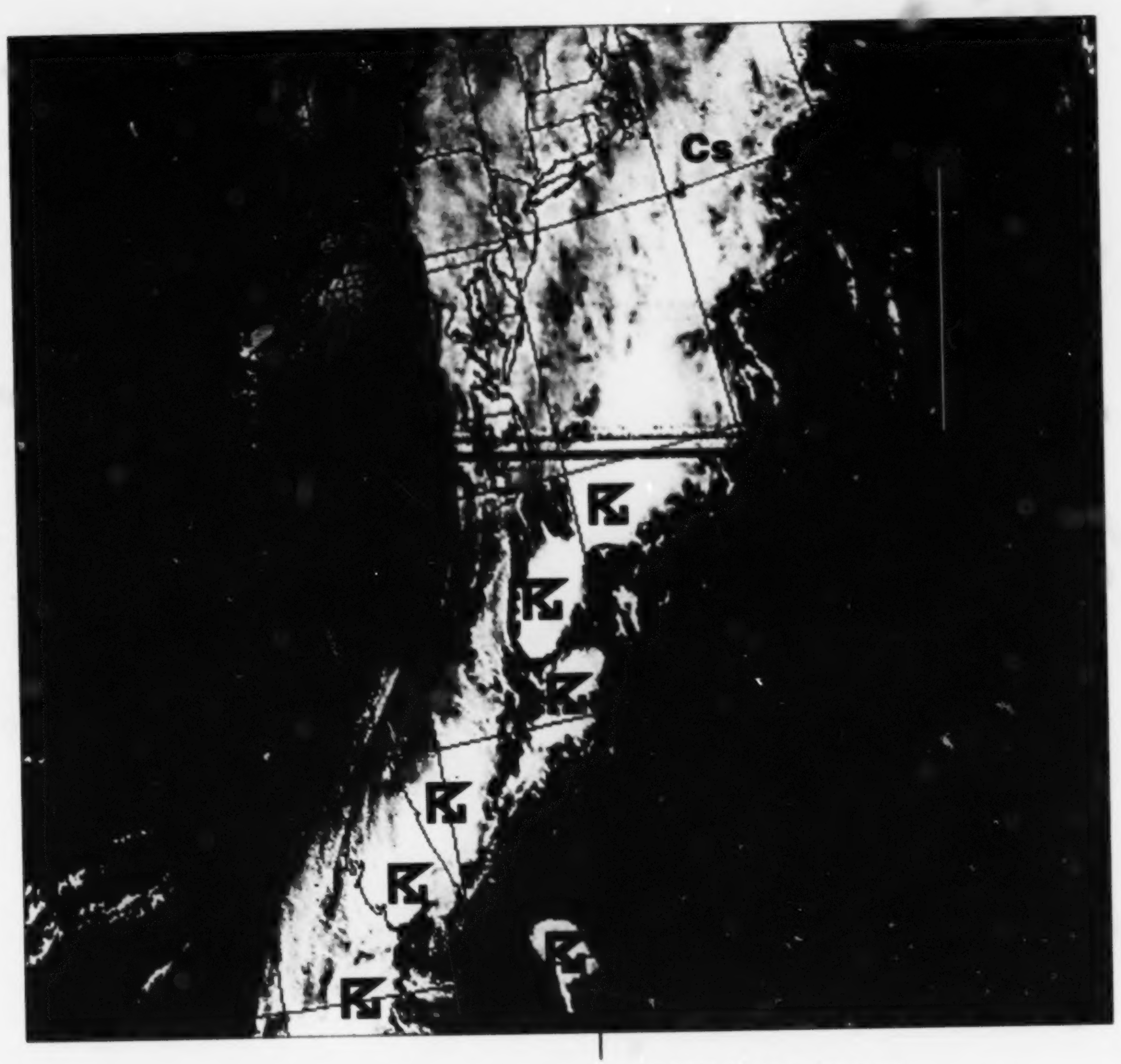


figure 98i. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
infrared image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution,
Albert Einstein Planetarium



Ci on edges of thunderstorm

figure 98a. NOAA 10, March 29, 1994
image courtesy of G. Chester, Smithsonian Institution,
Albert Einstein Planetarium

visible image - counterpoint to image 2

Images on computer will more clearly display temperature gradients and facilitate assessment of the infrared image.

SEASONAL MIGRATION OF THE ITCZ

Authors:
Mary Ann Bailey, Crossland High School, Temple Hills, Maryland
Terrence Nixon, Maryland Science Center, Baltimore, Maryland
Sandra Steele, Pikesville High School, Baltimore, Maryland
Sushmita Vargo, Washington International School, Washington, DC

Grade Level: 9–12

Objectives:
Students will be able to:
1. Identify the ITCZ on a satellite image,
2. Describe the fluctuation of the ITCZ, and
3. Hypothesize why the ITCZ shifts in position.

Relevant Disciplines:
Earth and space science, meteorology, geography

Time Requirement:
One class period

Image Format:
GOES

Prerequisite Skills:
Students should have knowledge and understanding of the following:
1. Latitude
2. Global wind patterns
3. Process of cloud formation
4. Seasonal shifts in the sun's direct rays

Vocabulary:
cloud, convection, convergence, equator, intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ), latitude, thunderstorm, the Tropic of Cancer, the Tropic of Capricorn

Materials:
1. GOES infrared images showing the ITCZ at different times of the year
2. World map
3. Blank transparencies
4. Colored transparency pens
5. Rulers
6. Paper towels
7. Water

Activities

1. Organize the class into groups of two for a pair-share activity.
2. Review the global wind patterns by asking students what they would expect to see on a satellite image at areas of convergence and divergence.
3. Distribute to each group of two the following materials: GOES image and two blank transparencies, world map, two different colored transparency pens, work sheet. Alternating groups should have GOES images for opposite seasons of the year.
4. Direct the students to complete steps #1–3 on their worksheet.
5. Pair each group with another group that has a GOES image for the opposite season of the year.
6. Complete steps #4 and #5 of the procedure with the class.

Extension:
Compare seasonal rainfall data for cities in the ITCZ.

OBSERVING THE ITCZ

Pair-Share Worksheet

Objectives:
1. Review the location of major lines of latitude.
2. Locate the intertropical convergence zone by observing where and when thunderstorms occur in the tropics.

Materials:
(per groups of two)
1. GOES image and two transparencies
2. World map
3. Two colored transparency pens

Procedure:
1. Label one transparency sheet #1 and the other #2

2. On the transparency sheet labeled #1, use one colored transparency pen to do the following:
   a. Draw lines to identify and then label the equator, the Tropic of Cancer, and the Tropic of Capricorn. Be sure to move transparency sheet #2 out of the way when your marking on sheet #1.
   b. Mark the location of the compass points (N, S, E, W).
   c. Mark your geographical location (home) with an "x."

3. Answer the following questions:
   a. What latitude receives direct sunlight all year?
   b. What impact will this heating have on the surface air?
   c. What will happen to this air?
   d. Is this air moist or dry? Explain why.
   e. On the satellite image, what cloud patterns do you observe in the area of the ITCZ?
   f. Does the position of the ITCZ change over a year? If so, within which latitudes is it usually located?

4. Label the ITCZ on transparency sheet #2 using a different color transparency pen.

5. Work with a group that has a different GOES image from yours to answer the following questions:
   a. Compare your image and your conclusions. Do you see any similarities? Differences?
   b. Suggest reasons for the similarities and/or differences

6. Choose a spokesperson from your group of four to explain your conclusions to the class.

Key, Question 3, a–f, page 282

Pair-Share Worksheet

3a. the tropical latitudes, especially 0°

3b. Year-round direct heating of the equatorial regions causes the air to expand over the equatorial regions and the warmed air to rise.

3c. When the moist air reaches the "ceiling" of the troposphere (imposed by the stratosphere), it will be forced to diverge—moving poleward. As it moves away from the equator, the air cools—becoming more dense and sinks back toward Earth.

3d. moist—as a result of strong surface evaporation

3e. tall thunderstorms, that is, cumulonimbus clouds

3f. yes, 10°N–10°S

THE INTERTROPICAL CONVERGENCE ZONE (ITCZ)

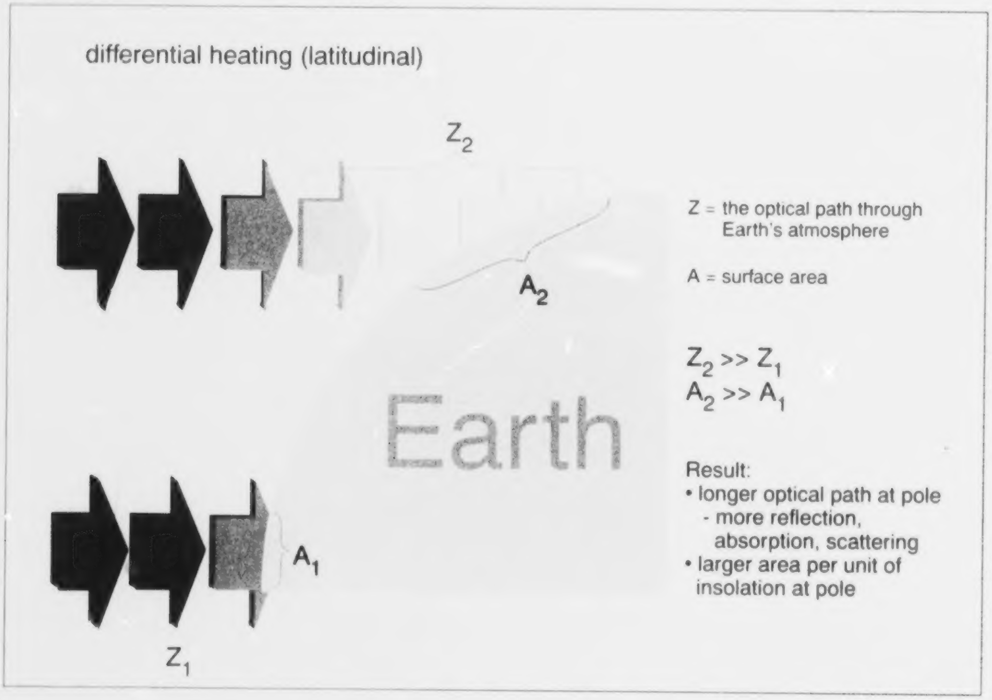
Background

William F. Ryan, University of Maryland, College Park, Department of Meteorology

The general circulation of the atmosphere—the average motion of the winds around the globe—is driven by the differential heating of the Earth. In the simplest terms, excess heating near the equator causes the air to expand or swell over the equatorial regions. Upward motion associated with this heating is typically concentrated in a relatively narrow band named the **Inter-Tropical Convergence Zone** (ITCZ). The satellite signature of the ITCZ is a band of clouds, usually tall thunderstorms (cumulonimbus), that circles the globe near the equator. The position of the ITCZ varies seasonally, moving northward during the northern summer and moving south during the northern winter.

The ITCZ forms as a result of moist air rising under the influence of strong surface heating. Upward motion along the ITCZ is limited to approximately 15 kilometers by the presence of the stratosphere.

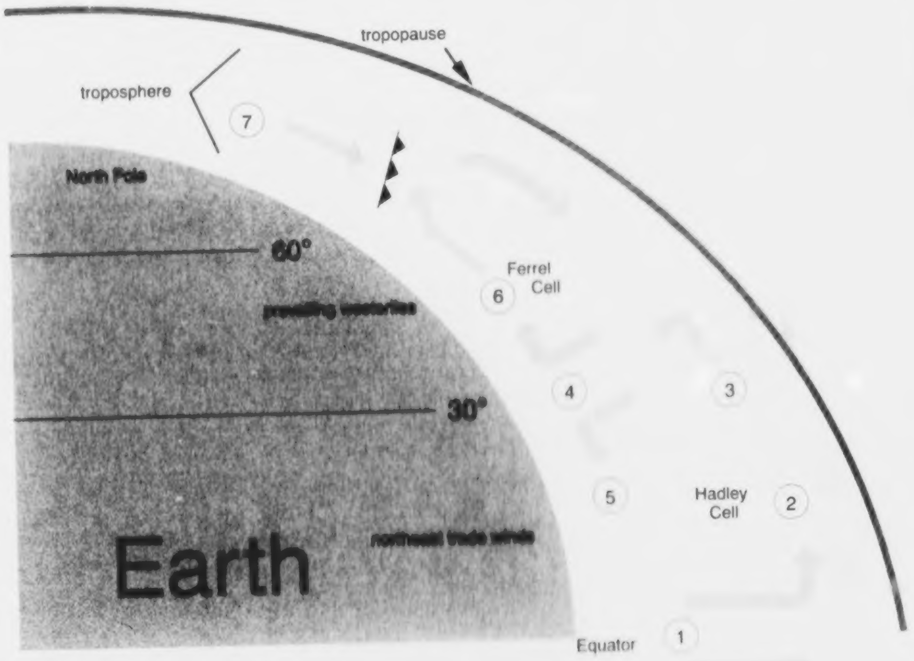
figure 99


differential heating (latitudinal)
Z_2
A_2
Earth
A_1
Z_1
Z = the optical path through Earth's atmosphere
A = surface area
$Z_2 >> Z_1$
$A_2 >> A_1$
Result:
• longer optical path at pole
- more reflection, absorption, scattering
• larger area per unit of insolation at pole

The stratosphere, which is kept very warm by its abundance of ozone efficiently absorbing solar radiation, acts as a lid on the lowest portion of the atmosphere—the troposphere. For practical purposes, all the weather that we experience occurs in the troposphere.

The air that rises in the vicinity of the ITCZ must spread out, or diverge, at the top of the troposphere. We might initially believe that the Earth has a one-cell circulation in which the air lifted at the ITCZ travels north until it reaches the cold polar regions and then sinks. This would be a direct way to restore the system to balance. However, due to complex effects, the circulation associated with the differential heating of the atmosphere is not a simple one-cell circulation from equator to pole. Instead, a more complex multi-cell structure acts to transport heat energy from the equator to the poles. A simplified version of the Earth's general circulation is shown in figure 100, the ITCZ is located at point 1.

figure 100.



How is energy transported poleward?

Simplified View of General Circulation

The rising air near the ITCZ ① diverges at the top of the troposphere and some portion travels north ②. As the air moves north it radiates energy into space and cools. As it cools it becomes more dense and sinks ③. The area of sinking motion, or subsidence, occurs near 30°N. A region with strong subsidence is typically very clear and warm with light winds. The subsiding air reaches the surface and branches outward ④ with the northern branch traveling north ⑥ and the southern branch traveling south to complete Hadley cell circulation ⑤. The northern branch collides with cold, dense polar air moving south ⑦. This area, marked by the cold front symbol (▲▲▲) is often the location of frontal zones and cyclonic disturbances.

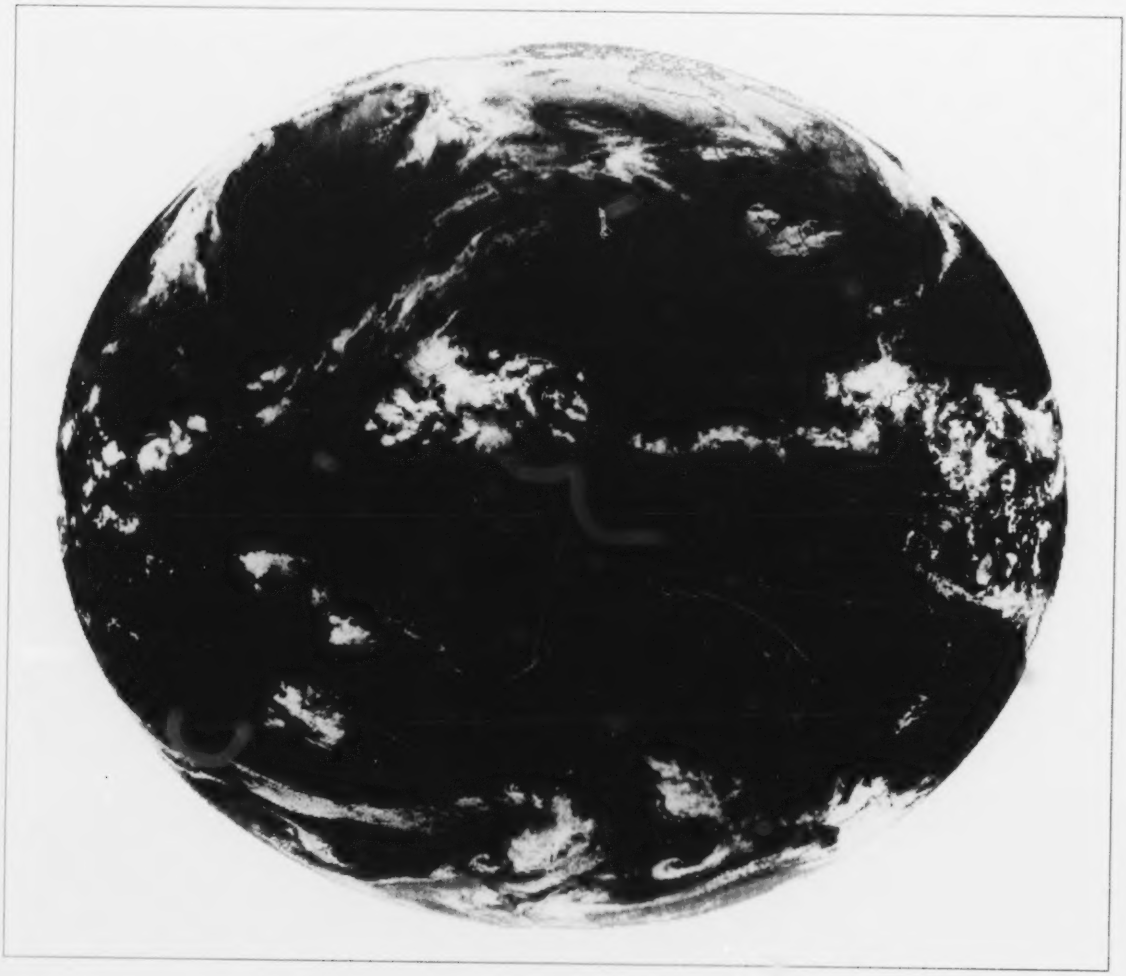


figure 101. GOES infrared image, November 24, 1994
image courtesy of SSEC, University of Wisconsin-Madison

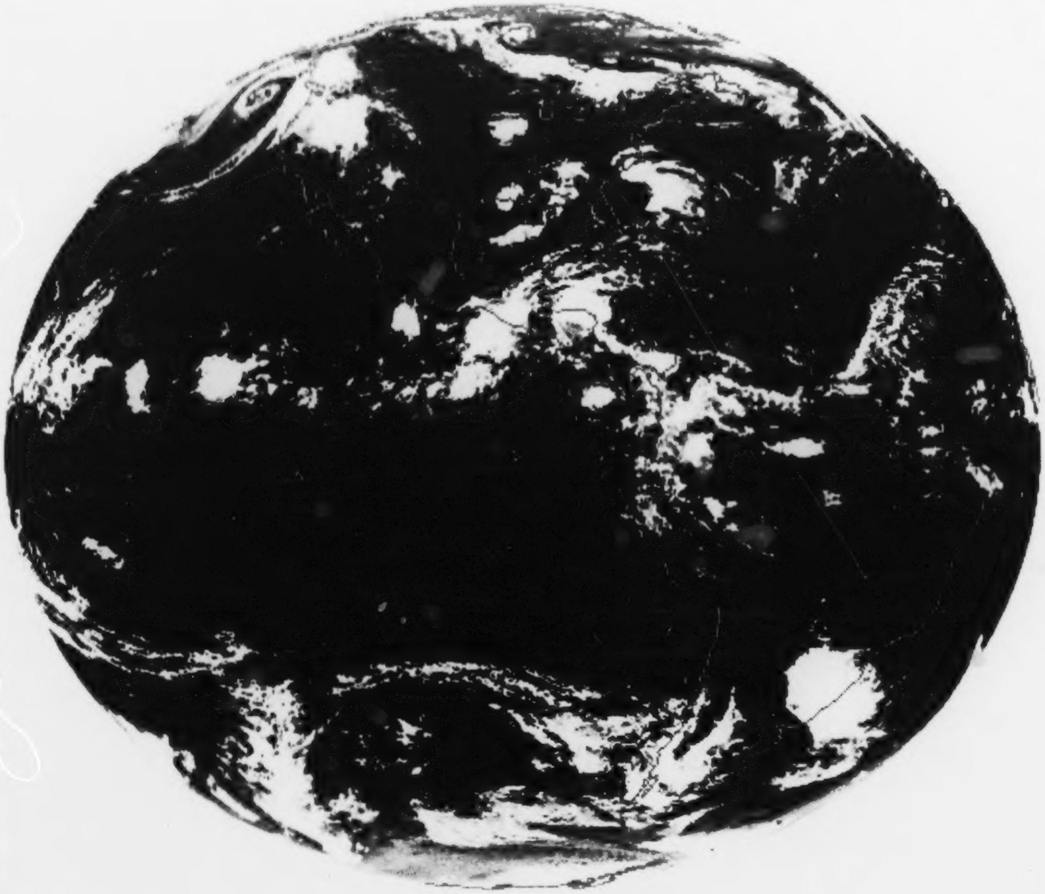


figure 102. GOES infrared image, May 31, 1994
image courtesy of SSEC, University of Wisconsin-Madison

USING WEATHER SATELLITE IMAGES TO ENHANCE A STUDY OF THE CHESAPEAKE BAY

Authors:
Donald Allen, Hancock High School, Hancock, Maryland
Dale E. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

Grade Level: 9–12

Objectives:

Students will be able to:

1. Demonstrate an understanding of the relationship between environmental parameters of an ecosystem and organism behavior,
2. Demonstrate the ability to use basic math functions,
3. Identify various geographic features of the eastern U.S. using weather satellite images, and
4. Explain the differences in land and water surface temperatures obtained from weather satellite images.

Rationale:

To show students how weather satellite images can be used in studying various environmental interactions.

Relevant Disciplines:

Biology, Earth science, environmental science, mathematics, English, social studies

Time Requirement:

2–3 class periods

Image Format:

APT (infrared), GOES

Prerequisite Skills:

1. Students should be familiar with using metric units.
2. Students should have some experience using information obtained from weather satellite images.
3. Students should be able to calculate area and find the average of a data set.
4. Students should have a basic understanding of Polar-orbiting and GOES satellites and the images they produce.
5. Students should have a basic understanding of energy absorption and emission by land and water.
6. Students should have a basic understanding of the properties of water.
7. Students should be familiar with the Gulf Stream.

Vocabulary:

albedo, APT, ecosystem, geosynchronous, GOES, infrared, NOAA, parameter, salinity, sun synchronous, water properties (heat capacity, specific heat)

Materials:

1. Metric rules
2. Cloud identification chart
3. Balance
4. Scissors
5. Colored pencils
6. String
7. Student activity answer sheet
8. Spring and fall satellite images of the eastern U.S. for each pair of students
9. Supplementary satellite images of the eastern U.S.
10. Map of the eastern U.S.
11. Map of the Chesapeake Bay drainage area for each student
12. 3 maps of the Chesapeake Bay for each student
13. Copies of "Blue Crab" and "Striped Bass" articles for each student
14. Cloud chart

Activities

note: The day before this lesson is to be started, distribute the GOES weather satellite images and the cloud identification charts. Discuss with the class the basic features illustrated in these images and the properties of water. The distinction between visible and infrared images should be made at this time.

Warm-Up:

As a class, have students identify the major tributaries of the Chesapeake Bay on their individual maps.

note: It is suggested that a wall map of the eastern U.S. be available to help the students identify the major tributaries of the Bay.

Students should work in pairs for the remaining activities

1. Using the map on page 294, calculate the area of the Chesapeake Bay watershed.

2. Using one of the maps of the Chesapeake Bay, calculate the surface area of the Bay.

note: One possible way to calculate the area of the Bay is to weigh the piece of paper the bay map is on. Have students cut out the outline of the Bay and weigh this piece of paper. Calculate the area of the Bay using the following formula.

$$\frac{\text{area of whole piece of paper}}{\text{mass of whole piece of paper}} = \frac{\text{area of the Bay}}{\text{mass of cut-out peice of paper}}$$

or

Students could follow the perimeter of the Bay with a peice of string, reshape it into a rectangle, and then determine the Bay's area.

Have students explore other ideas they may have.

3. Using the satellite images containing temperature readings, calculate the average temperature of the land surface, the surface of the Chesapeake Bay, and the Atlantic coast water surface.

4. Using the information from the salinity charts, the article on the blue crab, and the satellite images with temperature readings:
   - Color the area on the Chesapeake Bay map where you would expect to find blue crabs in the early spring;
   - Using a different color, indicate where the blue crabs would be found in the fall; and
   - Make a color key on your map.

5. Repeat step FOUR for the striped bass population, replacing the blue crab article with the article on the striped bass.

Extension:

1. Determine the basic cloud types from the satellite images you have been given. Use a cloud chart and briefly discuss the possible weather conditions associated with cloud type.

2. Write a letter of request seeking more information on the blue crab, striped bass, or other threatened species living in the Chesapeake Bay.

References:

Chase, Valerie. *The Changing Chesapeake.*
Chesapeake Bay: *Introduction to an Ecosystem.* U.S. EPA
Lee and Taggart. Adapted from *"A Satellite Photo Interpretation Key."*
Blue Crab. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.
Striped Bass. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Additional Resources:

Berman, Ann E. *Exploring the Environment Through Satellite Imagery*
Chesapeake Bay Restoration: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service,
"Mission to Planet Earth." *Aviation Week & Space Technology*
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Education Affairs Division
Reports To The Nation On Our Changing Planet, The Climate System. UCAR

A STUDY OF THE CHESAPEAKE BAY

name ________________________
period ________________________
date ________________________

Activity Sheet

Please answer all of the following, except number three, with complete sentences.

1. What is the area of the Chesapeake Bay drainage area (km^2)?

2. What is the area of the Chesapeake Bay (km^2)?

3. Average the following temperatures obtained from satellite images:

	spring	fall
land surface		
Chesapeake bay		
Atlantic Coast		

4. Explain you and your partner's selection of locations with blue crab in spring and fall (the areas you colored in). Be sure to consider salinity and temperature differences in your answer.

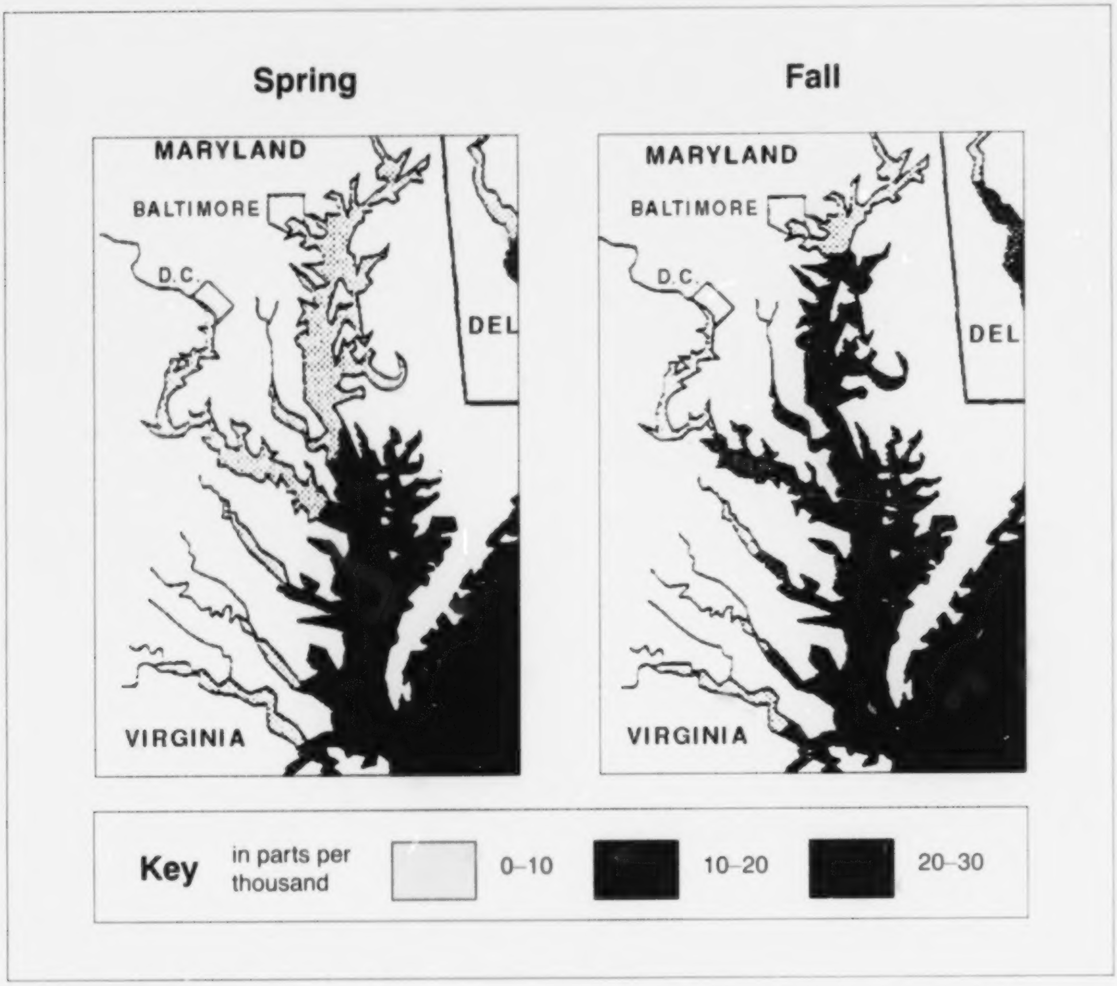
5. Explain you and your partner's selection of locations with striped bass for spring and fall (the areas you colored in). Be sure to consider salinity and temperature differences in your answer.

6. Discuss why the Chesapeake Bay has a greater temperature gradient between land and water surfaces in the fall than in the spring.

7. Typically, deeper water is cooler than shallow water. Why then, do the surface temperatures of coastal waters get warmer farther from shore, as indicated on the weather satellite images?

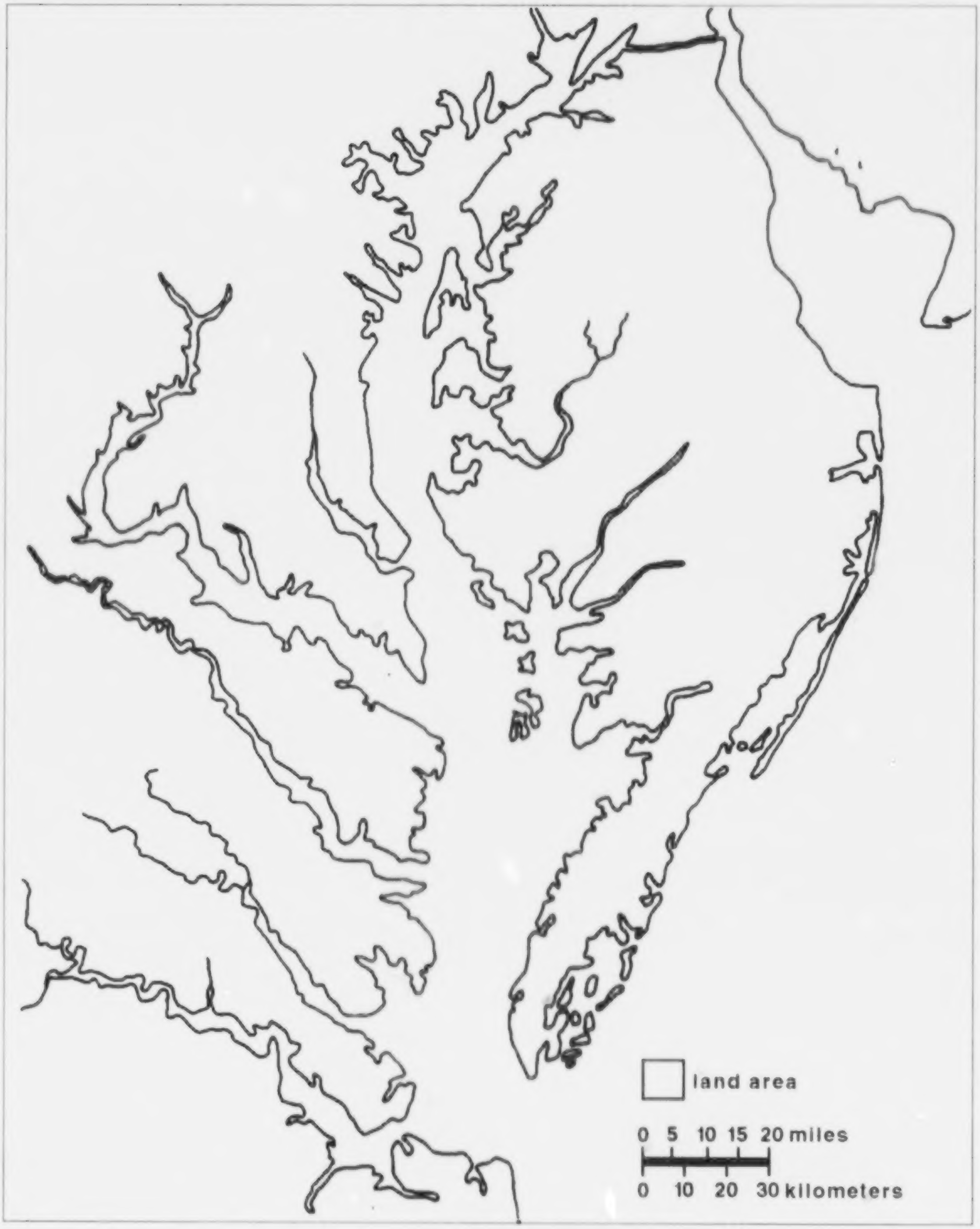
8. What possible explanations may account for the readings of -1° C for land surface temperature on the fall weather satellite image?

CHESAPEAKE BAY SALINITY

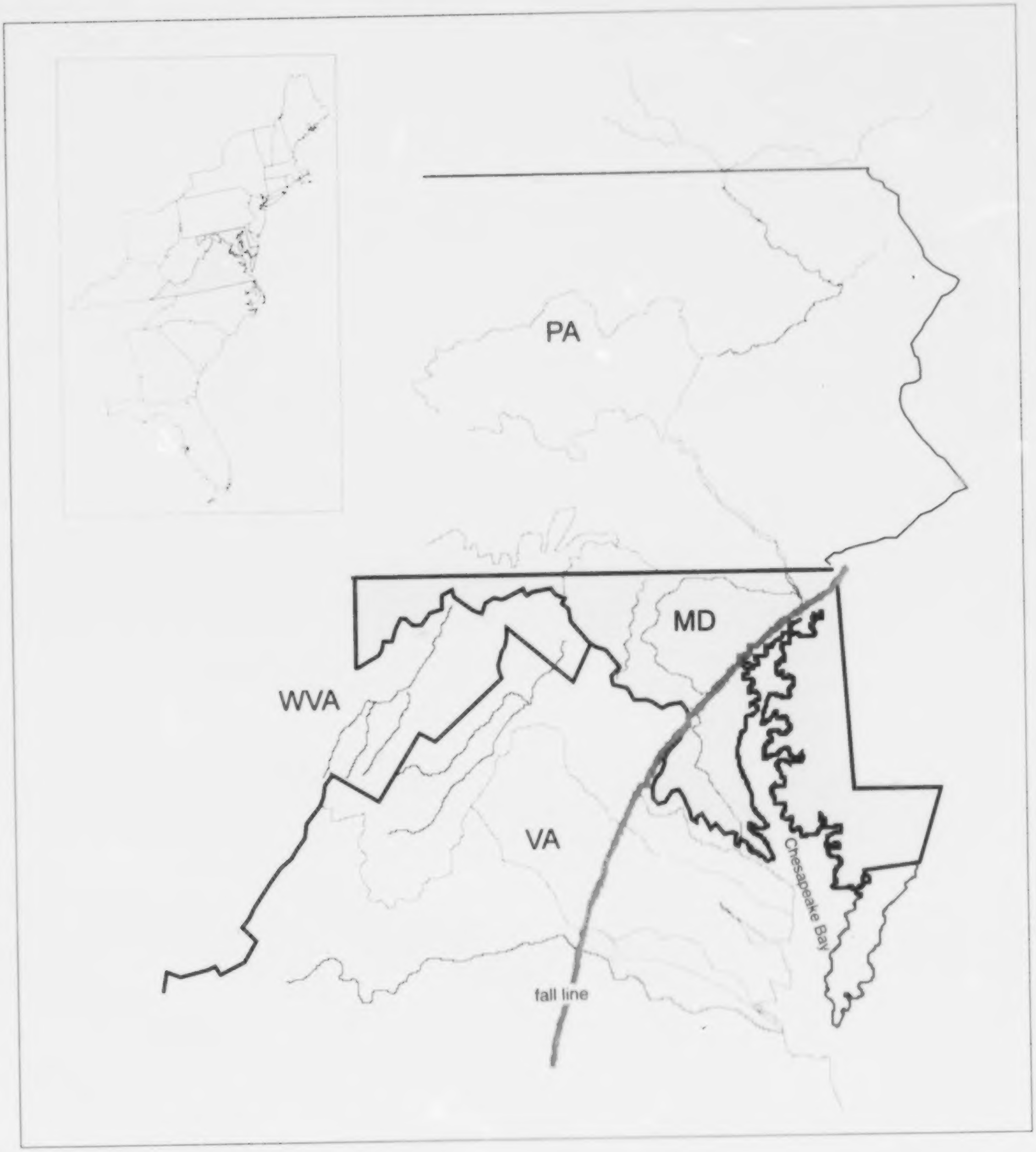

Spring
Fall
MARYLAND
BALTIMORE
D.C.
DEL
VIRGINIA
MARYLAND
BALTIMORE
D.C.
DEL
VIRGINIA
Key
in parts per thousand
0–10
10–20
20–30

Salinity: Spring and Fall: Higher river flows in spring (left) push back the ocean's saltier influence. In autumn, drier weather diminishes river flow and the ocean marches up the estuary. Adapted from Cronin, *The Biology of the Estuary*, and White, *Chesapeake Bay: A Field Guide*.

MAP OF THE CHESAPEAKE BAY


land area
0 5 10 15 20 miles
0 10 20 30 kilometers

EAST COAST MAP


PA
MD
WVA
VA
Chesapeake Bay
fall line

313

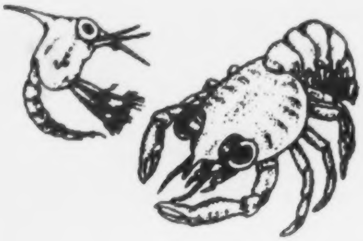
BLUE CRAB (CALLINECTES SAPIDUS)

The Bay's Best

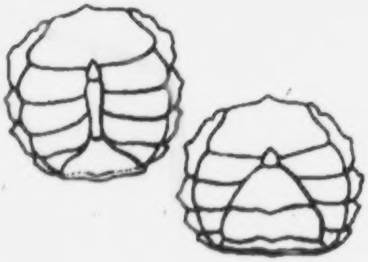
One can hardly say Chesapeake Bay without a picture of the blue crab coming to mind. This pugnacious creature has been the honored center of attention at many feasts over the years. Close your eyes and you can almost smell the spicy seasoning. Commercial crabbers harvest roughly 80 million pounds annually and recreational crabbers take nearly as much. Blue crabs have a place of importance in the ecosystem. They help regulate the abundance of benthic (bottom) populations by feeding upon living and dead organisms. They serve as food for cownose rays, striped bass and bluefish. When small, or in its softshelled stage (after molting), the crab is a source of food for wading birds and some mammals.

Life History

The blue crab (Callinectes sapidus) is a crustacean, one of a large group of animals characterized by a hard external shell and many jointed appendages. Other familiar crustaceans include lobsters, cray-fish, and shrimp. Blue crabs belong to a group known as "swimming crabs," identified by the paddle-like back legs. The scientific name Callinectes is a Greek word meaning beautiful swimmer. The second part of the blue crab's scientific name, sapidus, is Latin, meaning tasty or savory. Blue crabs are omnivorous, meaning that they will eat just about anything, dead or alive, including other crabs. Living or decaying vegetation also comprises part of their diet.

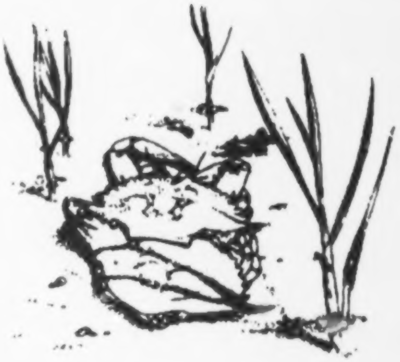

Zoea and Megalops

The shell of the adult crab is dark green on top and white underneath. A deep blue coloring on the top of the large claw gives this crab the common name "blue crab." A crab's sex can be determined by the shape of the abdomen or "apron" on the underside of the crab. A male crab has an apron which is shaped like an inverted "T." An adult female's is broad and rounded, while an immature female's is more triangular. Red tips on the claws also indicate that the crab is a female. A female carrying a cluster of orange eggs beneath her apron is known as a "sponge crab" and is nearing spawning time.


Male and Female

A crab increases in size through periodic molting or shedding of its shell. The hard shell is incapable of expanding and must be shed in order for the new, soft, slightly larger shell to be exposed. The crab pumps water into its body to enlarge the new shell and within a few hours, the shell hardens. In its first stage of life, the microscopic young blue crab is known as a "zoea" and lives a planktonic or free-floating existence. After molting about seven times, the zoea reaches a second larval stage known as a "megalops," looking like a cross between a crab and a lobster. After one more molt, however, the "first crab," no bigger than a "BB " is revealed. The "first crab" begins migrating from its birthplace in the southernmost part of the estuary to tidal rivers and throughout the Bay.

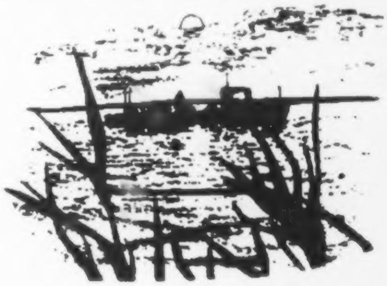
In 12 to 18 months, the juvenile crab reaches maturity and measures about 5 inches from point to point across the back. The mating of the crab starts as the male crab struts about, posturing with his claws and walking on tiptoes. At the end of the courtship, the female turns her back to the male and may try to back underneath him. The male crawls on top and cradles her between his walking legs until she molts, at which time mating occurs. Cradling insures proper timing for mating and protection of the female while she is soft and vulnerable during and after molting. After the female's shell hardens again, the crab couple go their separate ways. The male crabs remain in the fresher reaches of the Bay and its tributaries until fall, then move to deeper water. The female crabs migrate to spawning areas near the mouth of the Chesapeake Bay by the end of fall where the eggs will hatch the following summer.



Shedding Blue Crab

Crabs and Watermen

Blue crabs provide a commercial resource that many watermen and seafood enterprises depend on for their livelihood. Starting in late April and often continuing through December, watermen set out in the pitch-black morning in search of the blue crab. As dawn breaks, the watermen, clad in oilskin aprons and rubber gloves, mark the beginning of a new day by kicking their hydraulic "pot-pullers" into motion. With gaffs in hand, they pull in the crab pots filled with the adult female that prevail in the southern Bay. Moving to deeper waters the watermen harvest the larger male crabs. As winter approaches, the blue crabs conceal themselves in the bottom mud. In the southern Bay, the most determined watermen then resort to dredging the bottom for the succulent treasure because scarcity brings higher prices.



Watermen

Resource at Risk

Starting in the 1930's, the harvest of crabs steadily increased for many years, due in part to increased fishing. In 1970, however, a downward trend began and the blue crab catch dropped throughout the Bay. In 1980, the trend again changed and the blue crab harvest increased. No one knows for certain what conditions influence a record-setting year or a poor-catch year. The temporary bounty of this species does not indicate that it or the Bay has no problems.

Biologists are now studying the blue crab to understand how its numbers are affected by a deteriorating Bay environment. One factor which has been found to have a definite impact on the crab's habitat is nutrient pollution. High discharges or runoff of phosphates and nitrates from sewage plants and farm fields causes overfertilization of water which, in turn, leads to massive algal blooms. When these free-floating, microscopic plants die, they decompose, leaving the water low in dissolved oxygen. Areas of low dissolved oxygen are increasing in the Bay. When water containing a low amount of dissolved oxygen is pushed toward shore by winds, crabs will avoid it, even to the extent of running onto land, a phenomenon known as a "crab war."

The blue crab population is not in serious jeopardy at this time, as are populations of American shad and oyster. This treasure of blue crabs, however, may suffer adverse consequences if overharvesting occurs or the quality of its water habitat deteriorates further.

For more information on Chesapeake Bay restoration, contact:

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Chesapeake Bay Estuary Program
180 Admiral Cochrane Drive, Suite 535
Annapolis, MD 21401
(301) 224-2732

Blue Crab Facts

- Other common names for the blue crab include edible crab, sally crab (young females), sook (adult females), and jimmy, jimmy dick, or channeler (large male crabs).
- Female blue crabs mate at the time of their final molt from the immature to the adult stage, and then migrate toward the lower Bay.
- The female blue crab stores the male's sperm in specialized sacs, where it can survive for up to a year before fertilization takes place.
- The female crab's orange egg mass may contain 2 million eggs!
- Out of this amazing number of eggs, less than one percent will reach maturity.
- All Maryland blue crabs begin their lives in Virginia. The larvae are carried out of the bay by surface currents soon after hatching. Salinities on the continental shelf that range from 28 to 34 parts per thousand are optimum for the tiny larvae. After 6 weeks or so, megalopae return to the Bay.
- After reaching maturity, crabs live an average of l year and rarely more than 2 years.
- While they are in their vulnerable softshell stage, blue crabs find protection in underwater grass beds or in shallow water from predators such as fish, cownose rays, and even other blue crabs.
- The soft-shell crab industry began in Crisfield, Maryland in the 1870's.
- More blue crabs are harvested from Chesapeake Bay than anywhere else.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

The Chesapeake Bay is the largest estuary in North America. Its waters provide food and habitat for an abundance of fish and wildlife. It serves as a highway for commerce, a playground, a storehouse of food and a home for the 13.6 million people who live in its vast watershed. But in recent years the Chesapeake has become less able to support the fish and wildlife it once did. Increasing amounts of excess nutrients, sediment, and toxic substances are causing serious ecological problems in the Bay. Studies show alarming declines in species of fish and wildlife and in the habitat available to them.

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service is one of many Federal, State, and local agencies and private organizations engaged in the Chesapeake Bay restoration program to reverse the damage already done, to arrest further degradation and to restore the Bay—as nearly as time, technology and resources allow— to its former productivity.

As one of the primary Federal stewards of the nation's living natural resources, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service provides leadership in habitat and wetlands protection, fish and wildlife research, technical assistance, and in the conservation and protection of migratory birds, anadromous fishes certain marine mammals, and threatened and endangered species. The Service also manages more than 450 National Wildlife Refuges and 70 National Fish Hatcheries across the country, including more than a dozen in the Bay area.

Take Pride in Chesapeake Bay!

STRIPED BASS
(MORONE SAXATILIS)

Resource at Risk

Since colonial days, East Coast fisherman have delighted in the striped bass, a migratory fish known for its size and fighting ability. Striped bass, often called rockfish in Chesapeake Bay, have long been an important commercial and game fish from North Carolina to Maine. During the 1970s and 1980s, striped bass declined alarmingly, especially in the Chesapeake, once the spawning and nursery, ground for nearly 90 percent of the Atlantic population.

From a record commercial catch of 14.7 million pounds in 1973, the harvest dropped to 1.7 million pounds just 10 years later. Sport fishermen report an equally severe drop in their harvest. The decline translated into a loss of about 7,000 jobs and $220 million in 1980.

Causes for the decline were numerous and interwoven. They included overfishing, pollution, and the degradation or loss of habitat. Recently, due to improved management techniques, a hatchery, program and increased public awareness, the striper population has improved.

Life History

The silvery, striped bass gets its name from the 7 or 8 dark, continuous lines along the sides of its body. Most striped bass weighing more than 30 pounds are female. The fish can weigh up to 100 pounds and reach nearly five feet in length!

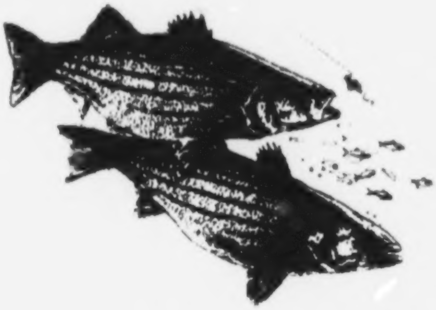
Striped bass spawn in fresh water but spend most of their adult lives in the ocean. On the Atlantic coast they range from the St. Lawrence River in Canada to Florida's St. Johns River, although they are most prevalent from Maine to North Carolina.

After about 3 years, at the juvenile stage, the females begin to migrate to the ocean where they mature. The males tend to remain in the estuary longer than the females. After 5 to 7 years, females return to spawn for the first time. It takes several years for spawning females to reach full productivity. An average 6 year-old female produces half a million eggs while a 15 year-old can produce three million.

When water temperature begins to rise in the spring, mature fish begin their spawning runs. Most Atlantic Coast striped bass spawn in freshwater rivers and streams of Chesapeake Bay. Other important areas include the Hudson River, Delaware River and rivers along the North Carolina coast.

Once the female deposits her eggs, they are fertilized by milt (sperm) ejected from the males. Because they are only semibuoyant, the eggs require enough water flow to stay suspended for 2 or 3 days until they hatch.

Larval striped bass obtain nutrients from the yolk sac for about 5 days after hatching. The larvae are particularly vulnerable to pollution, starvation, and predators during this stage.



Cause for Concern

The decline of Atlantic striped bass was so alarming that Congress enacted an Emergency Striped Bass Act in 1979. Under the Act, a study was initiated to assess the size of the migratory stock, investigate the causes of decline, calculate its economic importance and recommend measures for restoration.

From this research, scientists from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, state agencies and universities discovered new information about striped bass to assist them in restoration. Careful assessment of the present stock showed that, because of overfishing, the striped bass population was much more susceptible to natural stresses and pollution. They also discovered that fluctuation of water temperatures at spawning grounds is the most significant natural stress the fish face.

Research conducted in the Chesapeake's Nanticoke and Choptank Rivers indicated that highly acidic rain reacts with aluminum in the soil, causing it to dissolve in the water The combination of high acidity and aluminum is lethal to newly hatched stripers. Larval striped bass are also very susceptible to toxic pollutants like arsenic, copper, cadmium, aluminum, and malathion, a commonly used pesticide. Studies showed that chlorination of effluent from sewage plants and electric power stations adversely affects zooplankton, leading: ding to starvation of newly hatched striped bass that feed on it.

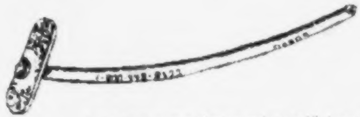
The study team also concluded that reducing fishing pressure would have an immediate positive effect by enabling females with eggs to spawn. An Atlantic Stares Marine Fishery Commission management plan, based party on recommendations of this study. set size and pound limits to reduce the catch.

In 1985, Maryland imposed a total moratorium on striped bass. Virginia followed by banning striped bass fishing in spawning areas. Four years later. Virginia also imposed a total ban on striped bass fishing. However. fishery managers knew that harvest restrictions alone would not permanently restore striped bass to the Bay.

Bringing the Striper Back

Under the Emergency Striped Bass Restoration Act, Congress designated the Fish and Wildlife Service as the lead federal agency to determine the cause of the fishery's decline. Striped bass restoration began in 1980. Water quality problems on spawning grounds were evaluated. By 1985, a coast-wide striped bass tagging and hatchery program was initiated to determine the rates of exploitation and natural morality, and determine if hatchery-reared fish could supplement wild stocks in severely depleted rivers.

Fishery managers and biologists from the Fish and Wildlife Foundation, National Marine Fisheries Service, state agencies from Massachusetts to North Carolina and universities continue to participate in the striped bass tagging program. A central database, designed and managed by the Service, stores stocking information, migrarory data from tag returns and other information upon which management decisions are based.



Anchor or "spaghetti" tags are inserted into juvenile striped bass.

Since 1985, more than 190,000 hatchery-reared and wild striped bass have been tagged with external anchor or "spaghetti" tags. Anglers returned more than 30,000 of these tags by 1993. In addition, all hatchery-reared striped bass, more than 9 million fish in all, are tagged with tiny micro-encoded pieces of wire that anglers cannot see but researchers can read with specialized equipment. These hatchery-reared striped bass provide managers with information about population dynamics, growth and migratory patterns.

In 1988, hatchery fish comprised nearly 50 percent of Maryland, land juvenile striped bass in some rivers like the Patuxent. Today, as hoped, wild fish far outnumber hatchery fish. Evaluations continue on the potential contribution of hatchery fish to depleted stocks.

During the years of the moratorium in Maryland, fishery managers continued to monitor striped bass populations in Chesapeake Bay. In particular, the juvenile index survey was closely watched. Conducted annually since 1954, this survey of the young-of-the-year reflects the success of spawning. The striped bass management plan set a goal for loosening restrictions based on this index. The juvenile indices averaged from 1987 to 1989 met the management plan goal.

In 1989, both Virginia and Maryland lifted their moratoriums on striped bass. Limited commercial and recreational striped bass fishing resumed.

The Future of the Fishery

Striped bass stocks continue to gradually increase. The 1993 juvenile index was the highest since the survey first began. Besides the young-of-the-year index, managers have noted an increase in adult striped bass and in the proportion of spawning females, age 8 or older. This information is critical to establishing fishing seasons, minimum fish lengths, daily catch limits and harvest quotas.

Since Chesapeake Bay is the primary, spawning and nursery area for 70–90 percent of Atlantic stock of striped bass, restoration depends on protecting and improving habitat and water quality. We have much to gain from restoring striped bass and Chesapeake Bay; we have much more to lose if we decline the challenge. Through harvest restrictions, pollution control, stocking and commitment, we can restore the striped bass to Chesapeake Bay.

For more information contact:

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Chesapeake Bay Estuary Program
177 Admiral Cochrane Drive
Annapolis, MD 21401
(410) 224-2732

Striped Bass Facts

- 70–90 percent of the striped bass in Atlantic coast waters spawn in Chesapeake Bay tributaries.
- At one time striped bass were used to fertilize fields, so great were their numbers.
- Maximum weight recorded for a striped bass is 125 pounds; age is 31 years.
- Older striped bass produce more eggs than younger fish and the eggs are of higher quality.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

The Chesapeake Bay is the largest estuary in North America. Its waters provide food and habitat for a great variety of fish and wildlife. It serves as a highway for commerce, a playground, a storehouse of food, and a home for the 13.6 million people who live in its vast watershed. But in recent years the Chesapeake has become less able to support the fish and wildlife it once did. Increasing amounts of nutrients, sediment, and toxic substances are causing serious ecological problems in the Bay. Studies show alarming declines in populations of fish and wildlife and in the habitat available to them.

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service is one of many federal, state, and local agencies and private organizations engaged in the Chesapeake Bay restoration. Nationally, the Service provides leadership in habitat and wetlands protection, fish and wildlife research, technical assistance, and in the conservation and protection of migratory, birds, anadromous fishes, certain marine mammals, and threatened and endangered species.

The Service also manages more than 500 national wildlife refuges and 75 national fish hatcheries across the country, including more than a dozen in the Bay area.

figure 103. NOAA 12, Chesapeake Bay on April 20, 1994
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

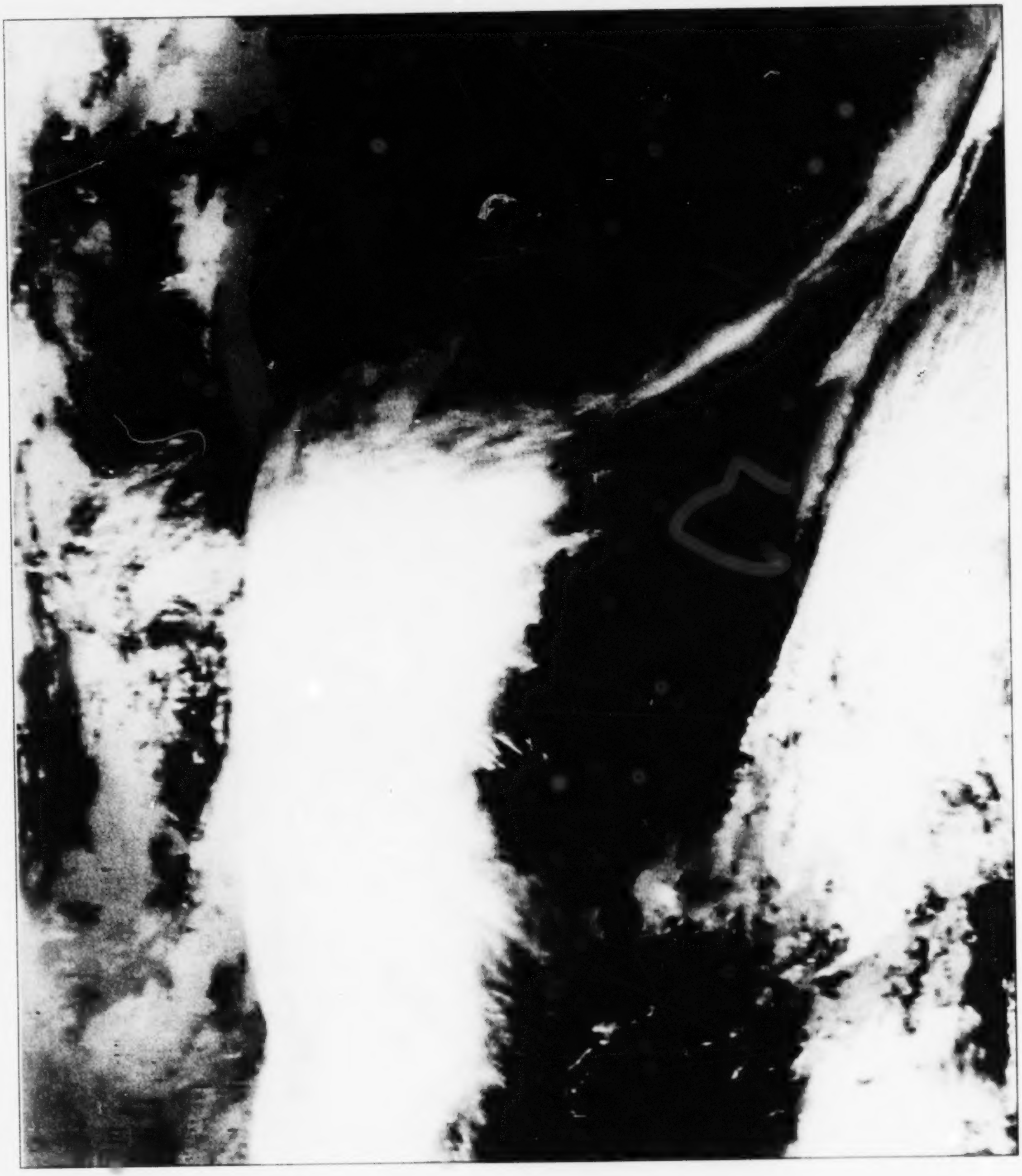


figure 104. NOAA 12, Chesapeake Bay on May 3, 1994
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

13
16
12
11
11
11
12
13
16
13
11
17
14
14
18
16

figure 104a. NOAA 12, Chesapeake Bay on May 3, 1994, with temperatures
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

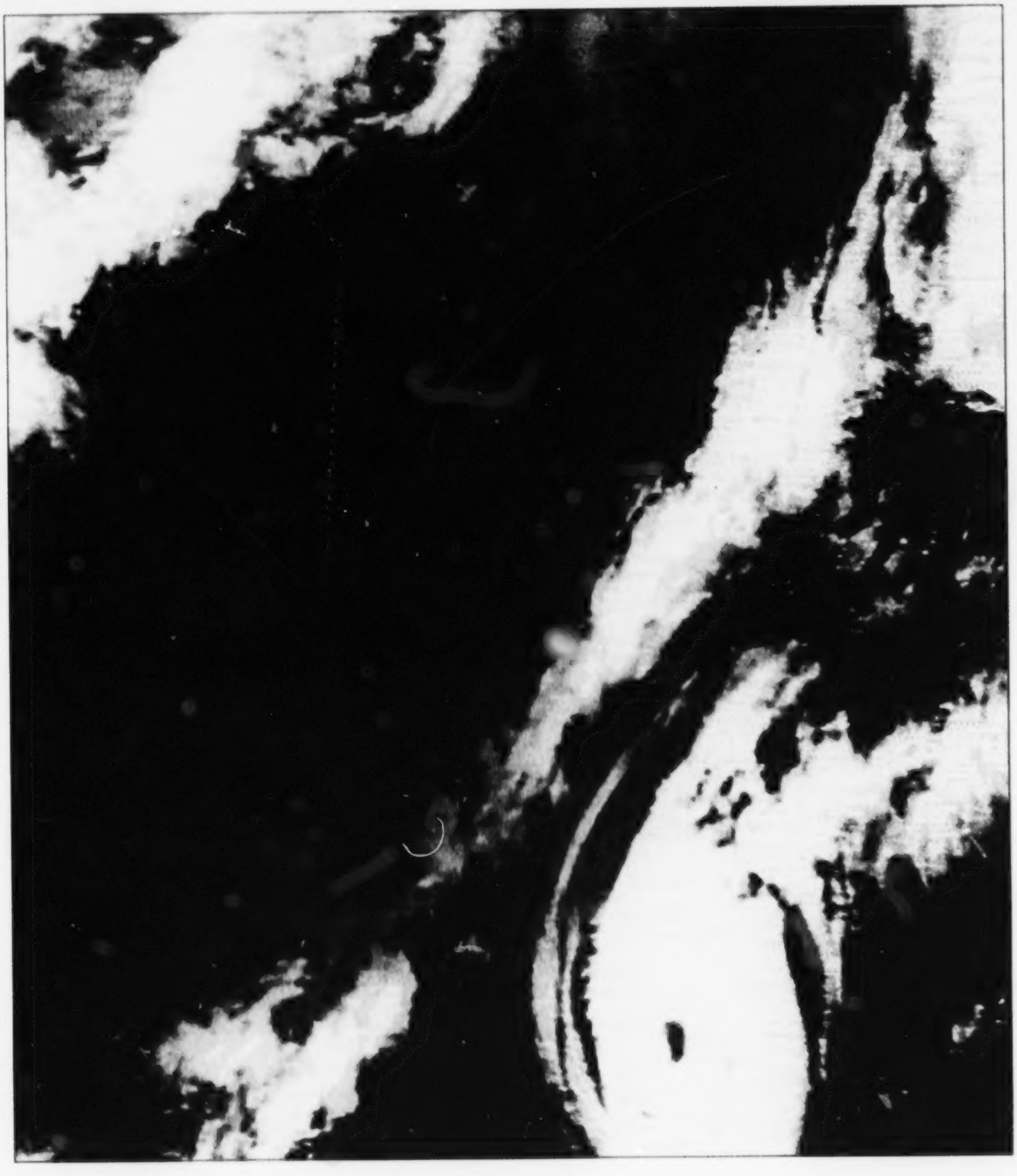


figure 105. NOAA 12, Chesapeake Bay on September 1, 1993
image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

Chesapeake Bay
Long Island

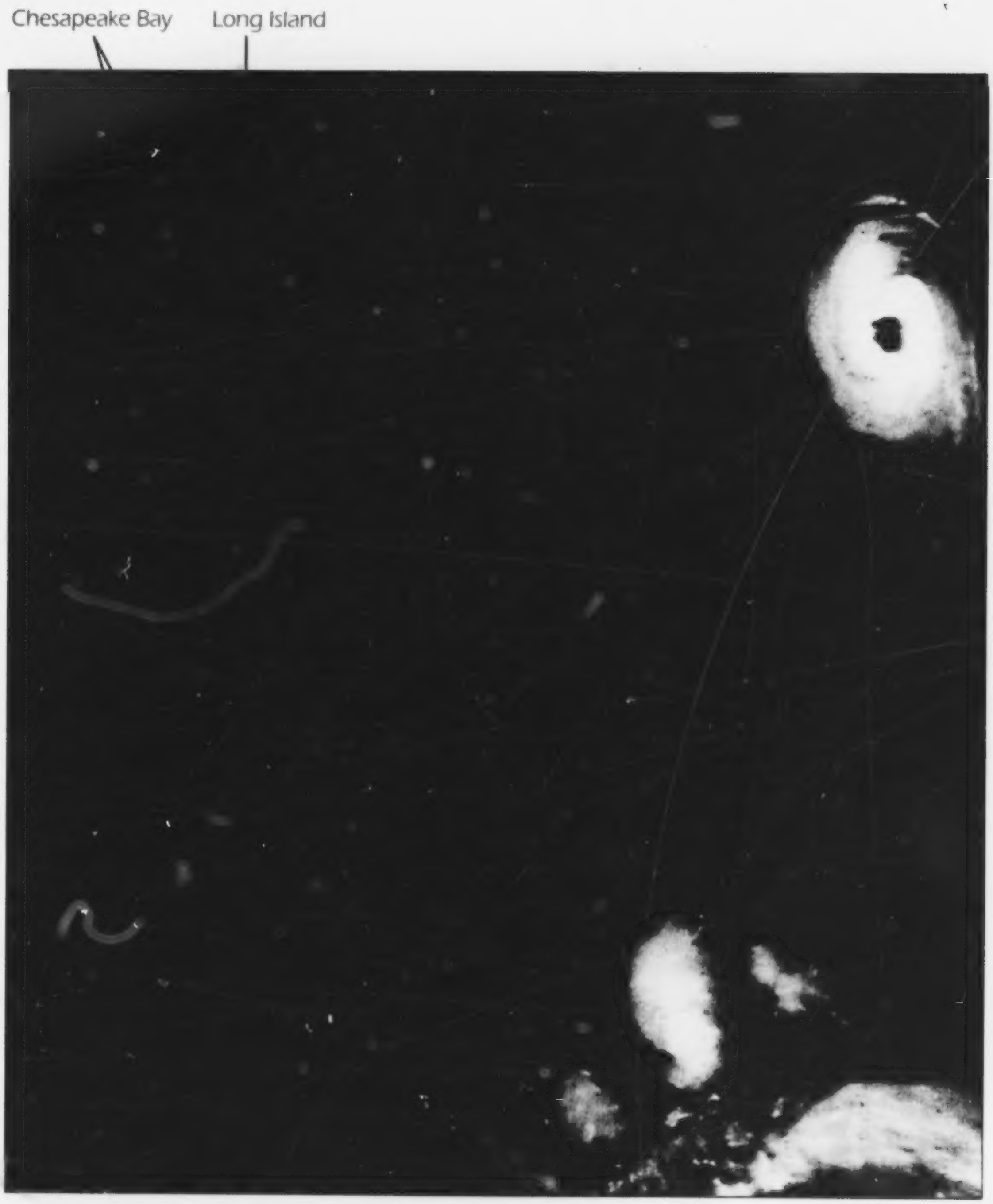


figure 106. NOAA 12, Chesapeake Bay on November 7, 1994, showing hurricane image courtesy of D. Peters, Linganore High School, Frederick, Maryland

GLOSSARY

GLOSSARY

adiabatic
Process without transfer of heat, compression results in warming, expansion results in cooling.

advection
Horizontal transfer of any atmospheric property by the wind.

air mass
Large body of air, often hundreds or thousands of miles across, containing air of a similar temperature and humidity. Sometimes differences between masses are hardly noticeable, but if colliding air masses have very different temperatures and humidity values, storms can erupt.

air pressure
The weight of the atmosphere over a particular point, also called barometric pressure. Average air exerts approximately 14.7 pounds (6.8 kg) of force on every square inch (or 101,325 newtons on every square meter) at sea level. See *millibar.*

albedo
The ratio of the outgoing solar radiation reflected by an object to the incoming solar radiation incident upon it.

alto
From the Latin *altum* (height), the prefix is used to describe some middle height clouds. See *clouds.*

apogee
The point on an orbital path where the satellite is farthest from the Earth's center.

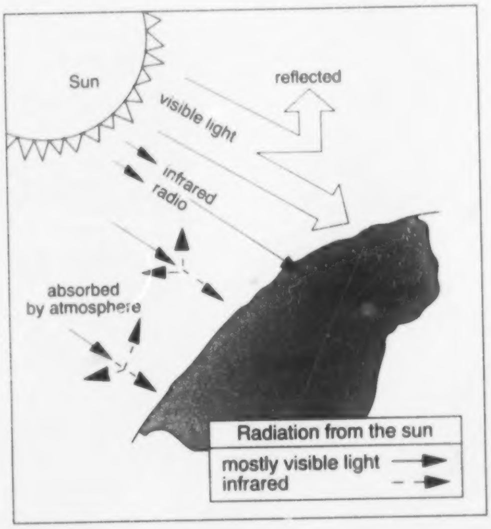

Sun
reflected
visible light
infrared
radio
absorbed by atmosphere
Radiation from the sun
mostly visible light
infrared

figure 107. albedo

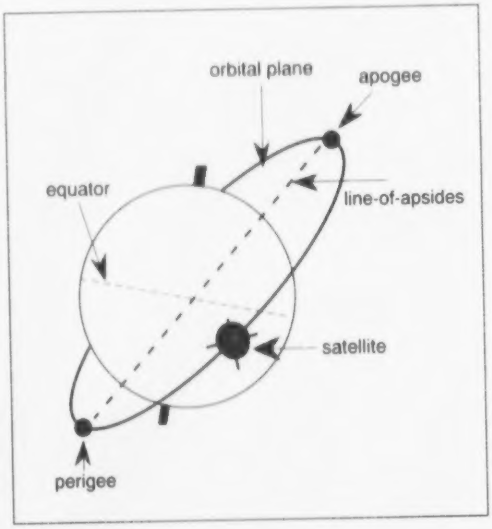

orbital plane
apogee
equator
line-of-apsides
satellite
perigee

figure 108. apogee

APT, Automatic Picture Transmission
System developed to make real-time reception of satellite images possible whenever an APT-equipped satellite passes within range of an environmental satellite ground station. APT images are transmitted by U.S. polar-orbiting TIROS-N/NOAA satellites which orbit 500–900 miles above the Earth and offer both visible and infrared images.

argument of perigee (ω)
One of six *Keplerian elements*, it describes the rotation of the satellite on the orbit. The argument of *perigee* is the angle from the *ascending node* to perigee. The angle is measured from the center of the Earth. For example, when $\omega = 0$ degrees, *apogee* would occur at the same place as the descending node.

ascending node
The point in an orbit (longitude) at which a satellite crosses the equatorial plane from south to north.

azimuth
The angle measured in the plane of the horizon from true north clockwise to the vertical plane through the satellite.

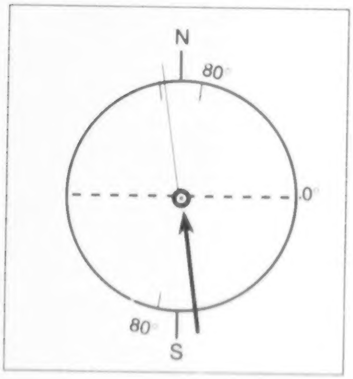


figure 109. ascending node

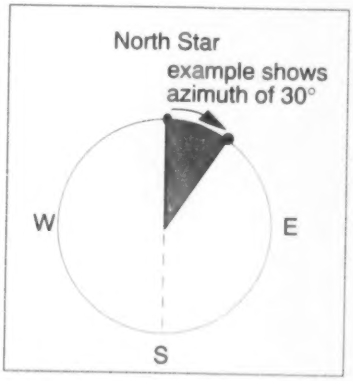


figure 110. azimuth

baroclinic
Instability in the atmosphere arising from a meridional temperature gradient. Extratropical cyclones are associated with strong baroclinicity.

bit
A contraction of "binary digit." The basic element of a two-element (binary) computer language.

byte
A unit of eight bits of data or memory in computer systems.

catalog (object) number
A five-digit number assigned to a cataloged orbiting object. This number is found in the NASA Satellite Situation Report and on the *NASA Prediction Bulletins*.

centrifugal
An apparent force present in a rotating system which deflects an object outward from the axis of rotation.

cirrus
See *cloud*.

Clarke Belt
A belt 22,245 miles (35,800 kilometers) directly above the equator where a satellite orbits the Earth at the same speed the Earth is rotating. Science fiction writer and scientist Arthur C. Clarke wrote about this belt in 1945, hence the name.

cloud
A visible mass of water droplets or crystals suspended in the atmosphere above Earth's surface. Clouds form in areas where air rises and cools. The condensing water vapor forms small droplets of water(0.012 mm) that, when combined with billions of other droplets, form clouds. Clouds can form along warm and cold fronts, where air flows up the side of the mountain and cools as it rises higher into the atmosphere, and when warm air blows over a colder surface, such as a cool body of water.

Clouds fall into two general categories: sheet-like or layer-looking stratus clouds (stratus means layer) and cumulus clouds (cumulus means piled up). These two cloud types are divided into four more groups that describe the cloud's altitude.

High clouds form above 20,000 feet in the cold region of the troposphere, and are denoted by the prefix CIRRO or CIRRUS. At this altitude water almost always freezes so clouds are composed of ice crystals. The clouds tend to be wispy, are often transparent, and include cirrus, cirrocumulus, and cirrostratus.

Middle clouds form between 6,500 and 20,000 feet and are denoted by the prefix ALTO. They are made of water droplets and include altostratus and altocumulus.

cloud groups and abbreviations

high clouds	*low clouds*
cirrus (Ci)	stratus (St)
cirrostratus (Cs)	stratocumulus (Sc)
cirrocumulus (Cc)	nimbostratus (Ns)
middle clouds	*vertical clouds*
altostratus (As)	cumulus (Cu)
altocumulus (Ac)	cumulonimbus (Cb)

figure 111.

Low clouds are found up to 6,500 feet and include stratocumulus, nimbostratus, and stratus clouds. Nimbostratus clouds are low, thick, dark gray clouds that produce steady rain or snow. They are actually the lowering and thickening of altostratus clouds, and are composed of water droplets and ice crystals. When stratus clouds contact the ground they are called fog. Vertical clouds, such as cumulus, rise far above their bases and can form at many heights. Cumulonimbus clouds, or thunderheads, can start near the ground and soar up to 75,000 feet.

cloud deck
See *satellite signature*.

cloud shield
Vernacular term for cloudy area associated with a weather disturbance such as an extratropical cyclone or hurricane. In the case of the extratropical cyclone, the cloud shield is typically a *comma* form.

cold front
See *front*.

comma cloud
The shape of the cloud pattern associated with mature mid-latitude cyclones.

convection
The rising of warm air and the sinking of cool air. Heat mixes and moves air. When a layer of air receives enough heat from the Earth's surface, it expands and moves upward. Colder, heavier air flows under it which is then warmed, expands and rises. The warm rising air cools as it reaches higher cooler regions of the atmosphere and begins to sink. Convection produces local breezes, winds, and thunderstorms.

convergence
Over a period of time, more air flows into a given region than flows out of it.

coordinated universal time (UTC)
Also known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) and Zulu time, it is the local time at zero degrees longitude at the Greenwich Observatory, England. UTC uses a 24-hour clock, i.e., 2:00 pm is 1400 hours, midnight is 2400 or 0000 hours.

Coriolis effect
An apparent force present in a rotary system such as the Earth.

crest
The highest part of a wave. Radiant energy and weather features can be described mathematically as waves.

culmination
The point at which a satellite reaches its highest position or elevation in the sky relative to an observer. Also known as the closest point of approach.

cumulonimbus
See *cloud*.

cumulus
See *cloud*.

decay or period decay
The tendency of a satellite to lose orbital velocity due to the influences of atmospheric *drag* and gravitational forces. A decaying object eventually impacts the surface of the Earth or burns up in the atmosphere. This parameter directly affects the satellite's *mean motion*. It is a real number measured in terms of revolutions per day per day (REV/DAY/DAY).

declination
The angular distance from the equator to the satellite measured positive north and negative south.

density

$$\frac{\text{mass of a substance}}{\text{volume occupied by a substance}}$$

Usually expressed in grams per cubic centimeter or kilograms per cubic meter.

dew point
The temperature to which air must be cooled for saturation to occur, exclusive of air pressure or moisture content change. At that temperature dew begins to form, and water vapor condenses into liquid.

drag
A retarding force caused by the Earth's atmosphere. Drag will act opposite to the vehicle's instantaneous velocity vector with respect to the atmosphere. The magnitude of the drag force is directly proportional to the product of the vehicle's cross-sectional area, its drag coefficient, its velocity, and the atmospheric density, and inversely proportional to its mass. The effect of drag is to cause the orbit to decay, or spiral downward. A satellite of very high mass and very low cross-sectional area, and in a very high orbit, may be very little affected by drag, whereas a large satellite of low mass, in a low altitude orbit may be affected very strongly by drag. Drag is the predominant force affecting satellite lifetime.

eccentricity (e)
One of six *Keplerian elements,* it describes the shape of an orbit. In the Keplerian orbit model, the satellite orbit is an ellipse, with eccentricity defining the shape of the ellipse. When $e = 0$, the ellipse is a circle. When e is very near 1, the ellipse is very long and skinny.

eccentricity

$e = 0$ = > circular orbit

$0 < e < 1$ = > elliptical orbit

$e = 1$ = > parabolic orbit

$e > 1$ = > hyperbolic orbit

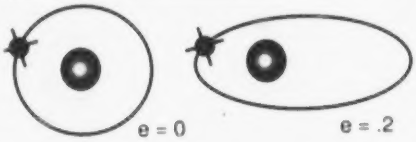


figure 112. eccentricity

ecosystem
Entity including living and non-living parts that interact to produce a stable system through the cyclic exchange of material.

eddy
A small volume of fluid, embedded within a larger fluid, that exhibits motion different from the average motion of the fluid. An example of eddy motion are the circular swirls observed in rapid river flow.

electromagnetic spectrum
The entire range of radiant energies or wave frequencies from the longest to the shortest wavelengths—the categorization of solar radiation. Satellite sensors collect this energy, but what the detectors capture is only a small portion of the entire electromagnetic spectrum. The spectrum usually is divided into seven sections: radio, microwave, infrared, visible, ultra-violet, x-ray, and gamma-ray.

element set
Specific information used to define and locate a particular satellite. See *Keplerian elements*.

ephemeris
A series of points which define the position and motion of a satellite.

epoch
A specific time and date which is used as a point of reference; the time at which an element set for a satellite was last updated.

epoch day
Epoch specifies the day and fraction of day for the particular description of a satellite orbit. This number defines both the *Julian day* (whole number part of the value) and the time of day (fractional part of the value) of the data.

epoch year
Epoch specifies the day and fraction of day for the particular description of a satellite orbit. This number defines the year that the *epoch day* describes.

erosion
The wearing away of the Earth's surface by any natural process, such as rain, wind, waves, and floods.

equator
An imaginary circle around the Earth that is everywhere equally distant (90°) from the North Pole and the South Pole. The equator is a great circle and defines 0° latitude.

extratropical cyclone
A closed circulation—characteristic of non-tropical regions in the northern hemisphere—which rotates counter clockwise about a center of low pressure.

Ferrel cell
The middle cell of the three-cell general circulation model. In the Northern Hemisphere, the Ferrel cell exhibits downward motion at roughly 20°–30° north, and upward motion at roughly 40°–50° north.

forecast
prediction

front
A boundary between two different air masses. The difference between two air masses sometimes is unnoticeable. But when the colliding air masses have very different temperatures and amounts of water in them, turbulent weather can erupt.

A cold front occurs when a cold air mass moves into an area occupied by a warmer air mass. Moving at an average speed of about 20 mph, the heavier cold air moves in a wedge shape along the ground. Cold fronts bring lower temperatures and can create narrow bands of violent thunderstorms. In North America, cold fronts form on the eastern edges of high pressure systems.

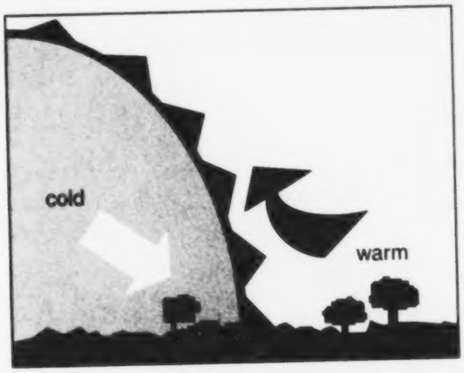


figure 113. warm front

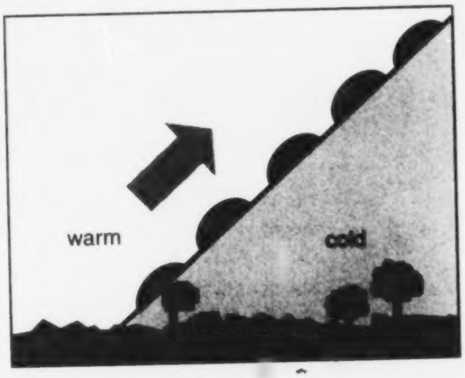


figure 114. cold front

A warm front occurs when a warm air mass moves into an area occupied by a colder air mass. The warm air is lighter, so it flows up the slope of the cold air below it. Warm fronts usually form on the eastern sides of low pressure systems, create wide areas of clouds and rain, and move at an average speed of 15 mph.

When a cold front follows and then overtakes a warm front (warm fronts move more slowly than cold fronts) lifting the warm air off the ground, an occluded front forms.

A front that is nearly stationary with winds blowing almost parallel and from opposite directions on each side of the front is a stationary front.

geostationary
Describes an orbit in which a satellite is always in the same position (appears stationary) with respect to the rotating Earth. The satellite travels around the Earth in the same direction, at an altitude of approximately 35,790 km (22,240 statute miles) because that produces an orbital period equal to the period of Earth's rotation (actually 23 hours, 56 minutes, 04.09 seconds).

Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellite (GOES)
NASA-developed, NOAA-operated series of satellites that:

- provide continuous day and night weather observations;
- monitor severe weather events such as hurricanes, thunderstorms, and flash floods;
- relay environmental data from surface collection platforms to a processing center;
- perform facsimile transmissions of processed weather data to low-cost receiving stations;
- monitor the Earth's magnetic field, the energetic particle flux in the satellite's vicinity, and x-ray emissions from the sun.

GOES observes the U.S. and adjacent ocean areas from geostationary vantage points approximately 35,790 km (22,240 miles) above the equator at 75° west and 135° west. GOES satellites have an equatorial, Earth-synchronous orbit with a 24-hour period, a resolution of 8 km, an IR resolution of 4 km, and a scan rate of 1864 statute miles in about three minutes.

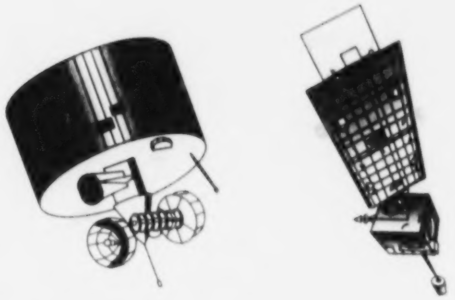


figure 115. GOES 7 (left) and GOES 8 (right)

The transmission of processed weather data (both visible and infrared) by GOES is called weather facsimile (WEFAX). GOES WEFAX transmits at 1691+ MHz and is accessible via a ground station with a satellite dish antenna.

geostrophic wind (Vg)
Horizontal wind velocity present when the Coriolis force is balanced by the pressure gradient force. This is approximately true of air flow above the Earth's surface.

geosynchronous
Synchronous with respect to the rotation of the Earth. See *geostationary.*

Hadley cell
Single-cell model of circulation that assumes Earth is uniformly covered with water, that the Sun is always directly over the equator, and that the Earth does not rotate. Circulation consists of a closed loop with rising air over the equator and sinking air over the poles.

horse latitudes
Latitudes 30°–35°N (or south) over the oceans, characterized by light winds and warm, dry conditions.

hydroscopic
Water-attracting.

inclination (*i*)
One of the six *Keplerian elements*, it indicates the angle of the *orbit plane* to the central body's equator. The *orbital plane* always goes through the center of the Earth but may be tilted at any angle relative to the equator. Inclination is the angle between the equatorial plane and the orbital plane measured counterclockwise at the *ascending node*. A satellite in an orbit that exactly matches the equator has an inclination of 0°, whereas one whose orbit crosses the Earth's poles has an inclination of 90°. Because the angle is measured in a counterclockwise direction, it is quite possible for a satellite to have an inclination of more than 90°. An inclination of 180° would mean the satellite is orbiting the equator, but in the opposite direction of the Earth's rotation. Some sun-synchronous satellites that maintain the same ground track throughout the year have inclinations of as much as 98°. U.S. scientific satellites that study the sun are placed in

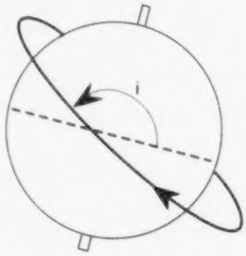


figure 116. inclination

orbits closer to the equator, frequently at 28° inclination. Most weather satellites are placed in high-inclination orbits so they can oversee weather conditions worldwide.

infrared radiation (IR)
Infrared is electromagnetic radiation whose wavelength spans the region from about 0.7 to 1000 micrometers (longer than visible radiation, shorter than microwave radiation). In the far infrared, emissions from the Earth's atmosphere and surface offer information about atmospheric and surface temperatures and water vapor and other trace constituents in the atmosphere. Since IR data are based on temperatures rather than visible radiation, the data may be obtained day or night.

insolation
The rate of solar radiation reaching the surface of the Earth.

international designator
An internationally agreed upon naming convention for satellites. Contains the last two digits of the launch year, the launch number of the year and the piece of the launch, i.e., A-indicates payload, B-the rocket booster, or second payload, etc.

Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ)
Area near the equator where the northeast trade winds converge with the southeast trade winds. Narrow bands of thunderstorms and persistent cloudiness typifies this area.

isobars
Lines of equal pressure, usually a feature of surface weather maps.

jet stream
Ribbons of strong winds found in the upper troposphere.

Julian day
Calendar system that consecutively numbers days from the beginning of the year. January 1 has a Julian count of 1, February 28 is 59. This number may range from 1.0 to 366.999999999 (on leap years).

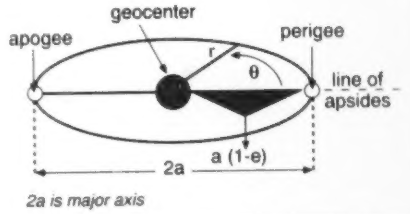
Keplerian elements
(aka orbital elements)
Also called classical elements, satellite elements, *element set*, etc. Includes the *catalog number* (*epoch year*, day, and fraction of day); period of *ascending node, mean anomaly, mean motion;* revolution number at *epoch*; and *element set* number.

knot
Unit of speed of one nautical mile (6076.1 feet) per hour.

figure 117.

Keplerian elements

a	semi-major axis, gives the size of the orbit
e	eccentricity, gives the shape of the orbit
i	inclination angle, gives the angle of the orbit plane to the central body's equator
Ω	right ascension of the ascending node, which gives the rotation of the orbit plane from reference axis
ω	argument of perigee gives the rotation of the orbit in its plane
θ	true anomaly gives the location of the satellite on the orbit



latitude
The angle between a perpendicular at a location, and the equatorial plane of the Earth. Latitude is measured in degrees north or south of the equator (the equator is 0°, the North and South Poles are 90° N and 90° S, respectively).

latitudinal temperature gradient
See *temperature gradient*.

line-of-apsides
(aka major axis of the ellipse)
The straight line drawn from the *perigee* to the *apogee*. See figure 108.

line-of-nodes
The line created by the intersection of the equatorial plane and the *orbital plane*.

longitude
The angular distance from the Greenwich (zero degree) meridian, along the equator.

loop
A series of images connected to form a movie-like view of the atmosphere.

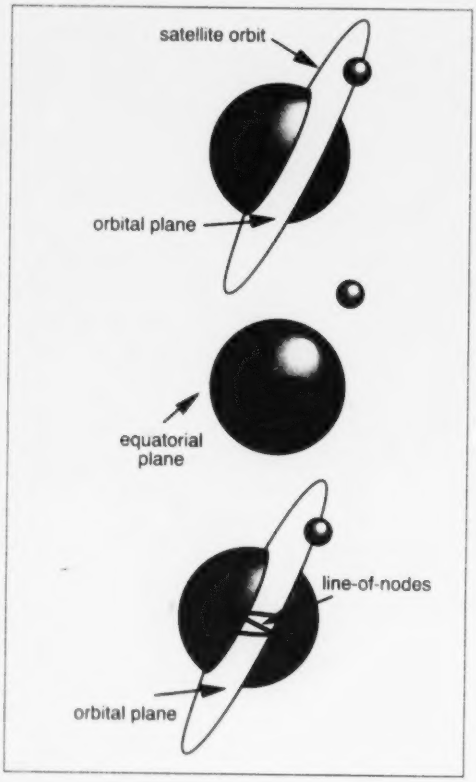


figure 118. lines-of-nodes

mean anomaly
Specifies the mean location (true anomaly specifies the exact location) of a satellite on an orbit ellipse at a particular time, assuming a constant *mean motion* throughout the orbit. Epoch specifies the particular time at which the satellite's position is defined, while mean anomaly specifies the location of a satellite at epoch. Mean anomaly is measured from 0° to 360° during one revolution. It is defined as 0° at perigee, and hence is 180° at apogee.

mean motion
The averaged speed of a satellite in a non-circular orbit (i.e., *eccentricity* > 0). Satellites in circular orbits travel at a constant speed. Satellites in non-circular orbits move faster when closer to the Earth, and slower when farther away. Common practice is to compute the mean motion (average the speed), which is measured in revolutions per day. The number may be greater than 0.0 and less than 20.0.

meridional flow
Airflow in the north-south direction, that is motion along meridians.

mesoscale
Scale of atmospheric motion that covers the range from a few kilometers to several hundred kilometers—in the horizontal. Examples of meteorological effects that occur in the mesoscale are: squall lines, tornadoes, and sea breeze fronts.

mid-latitude
Region of the Earth between 30°–50° latitude.

millibars (mb)
One thousandth of a bar, a unit of atmospheric pressure. The average atmospheric pressure at sea level is 1.01325 bars or 1013.25 mb.

National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA)
U.S. Civilian Space Agency created by Congress. Founded in 1958, NASA belongs to the executive branch of the Federal Government.

NASA's mission to plan, direct, and conduct aeronautical and space activities is implemented by NASA Headquarters in Washington, D.C., and by ten major centers spread throughout the United States. Dozens of smaller facilities, from tracking antennas to Space Shuttle landing strips to telescopes are located around the world. The agency administers and maintains these facilities; builds and operates launch pads; trains astronauts; designs aircraft and spacecraft; sends satellites into Earth orbit and beyond; and processes, analyzes, and distributes the resulting data and information.

NASA Prediction Bulletin
Report published by NASA Goddard Space Flight Center providing the latest orbital information on a particular satellite. This report gives information in 3 parts:
1. the two line orbital elements,
2. longitude of the south to north equatorial crossings, and
3. longitude and heights of the satellite crossings for other latitudes

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)
NOAA was established in 1970 within the U.S. Department of Commerce to ensure the safety of the general public from atmospheric phenomena and to provide the public with an understanding of the Earth's environment and resources. NOAA includes the National Ocean Service, the National Marine Fisheries Service, the NOAA Corps (operates ships and flies aircraft), and the Office of Oceanic and Atmospheric Research. NOAA has two main components: the National Weather Service (NWS) and the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service (NESDIS).

nimbostratus
See *cloud*.

occlusion or occluded front
In a mature cyclonic disturbance, occlusion occurs when the cold front overtakes the leading warm front. The warm air that was ahead of the cold front is lifted above the surface by the cool, dense air associated with the front. On weather maps, the occlusion is denoted by a line that contains both warm and cold front symbols on the same side.

orbital plane
An imaginary gigantic flat plate containing an Earth satellite's orbit. The orbital plane passes through the center of the Earth.

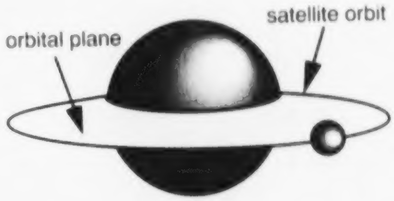


figure 119. orbital plane

parameter
An arbitrary constant used as a reference for determining other values.

perigee
The point in the satellite's orbit where it is closest to the surface of the Earth. See figure 108.

polar orbit
An orbit with an orbital inclination of near 90°, where the satellite ground track will cross both polar regions once during each orbit. The term is used to describe the near-polar orbits of spacecraft such as the USA's NOAA/TIROS satellite.

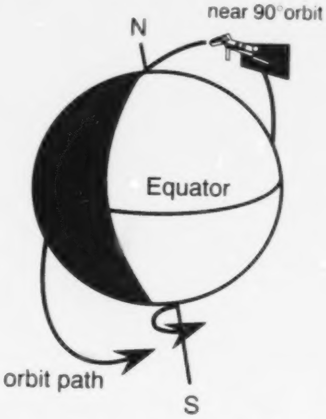


figure 120. polar orbit

precipitation
Moisture that falls from clouds. Although clouds appear to float in the sky, they are always falling, their water droplets slowly being pulled down by gravity. Because their water droplets are so small and light, it can take 21 days to fall 1,000 feet and wind currents can easily interrupt their descent.

Liquid water falls as rain or drizzle. All raindrops form around particles of salt or dust. (Some of this dust comes from tiny meteorites and even the tails of comets.) Water or ice droplets stick to these particles, then the drops attract more water and continue getting bigger until they are large enough to fall out of the cloud. Drizzle drops are smaller than raindrops.

In many clouds, raindrops actually begin as tiny ice crystals that form when part or all of a cloud is below freezing. As the ice crystals fall inside the cloud, they may collide with water droplets that freeze onto them (when the water vapor changes directly into ice—without becoming liquid first—it is called deposition). The ice crystals continue to grow larger, until large enough to fall from the cloud. They pass through warm air, melt, and fall as raindrops.

When ice crystals move within a very cold cloud (10 °F and -40 °F) and enough water droplets freeze onto the ice crystals, snow will fall from the cloud. If the surface temperature is colder than 32 °F, the flakes will land as snow.

Precipitation Weights:

one raindrop	.000008 lbs
one snowflake	.0000003 lbs
one cumulus cloud	10,000,000 lbs
one thunderstorm	10,000,000,000 lbs
one hurricane	10,000,000,000,000 lbs

pressure gradient force (PGF)
Forces exerted by differences in pressure within a fluid. In the atmosphere, the force is directed from high pressure regions toward low pressure regions.

radiation
Energy transfer in the form of electromagnetic waves or particles that release energy when absorbed by an object.

radiosonde
A balloon-borne instrument that measures pressure, temperature, and moisture in the atmosphere, and transmits these data back to Earth.

remote sensing
Remote-sensing instruments work by sensing radiation that is naturally emitted or reflected by the Earth's surface or from the atmosphere, or by sensing signals transmitted from a satellite and reflected back to it. In the visible and near-infrared regions, surface chemical composition, vegetation cover, and biological properties of surface matter can be measured. In the mid-infrared region, geological formations can be detected due to the absorption properties related to the structure of silicates.

resolution
The ability to separate observable quantities. In the case of imagery, it describes the area represented by each picture element (pixel) of an image. The smaller the area represented by a pixel, the more detailed the image.

retrograde orbit
Satellite motion which is opposite in direction to the rotation of the Earth.

revolution number
The number of revolutions the satellite has completed at the *epoch* time and date. This number is entered as an integer between 1 and 99999.

ridge
An area of relatively high atmospheric pressure generally associated with a clockwise (anticyclone) curvature of the troposphere.

ridge axis
A line perpendicular to the center, or area of maximum curvature, of a ridge.

right ascension of ascending node (Ω)
One of the six *Keplerian elements*, it indicates the rotation of the orbit plane from some reference point. Two numbers orient an *orbital plane* in space; *inclination* is the first, this is the second.

After specifying inclination, an infinite number of orbital planes are possible. The intersection of the equatorial plane and the orbital plane (see diagram, line-of-nodes) must be specified by a location on the equator that fully defines the orbital plane. The line of nodes occurs in two places. However, by convention, only the ascending node (where the satellite crosses the equator going from south to north) is specified. The descending node (where the satellite crosses the equator going from north to south) is not. Because the Earth spins, conventional latitude and longitude points are not used to separate where the lines of node occur. Instead, an astronomical coordinate system is used, known as the right-ascension/declination coordinate system, which does not spin with the Earth. Right ascension of the ascending node is an angle, measured at the center of the Earth, from the vernal equinox to the ascending node. For example, draw a line from the center of the Earth to the point where the satellite crossed the equator (going from south to north). If this line points directly at the vernal equinox, then $\Omega = 0°$. Ω is a real number with a range of degrees 0.0 to 360.0 degrees.

salinity
A concentration (as in a solution) of salt.

satellite imagery
Pictorial representation of data acquired by satellite systems, such as direct readout images from environmental satellites. An image is not a photograph. An image is composed of two-dimensional grids of individual picture elements (pixels). Each pixel has a numeric value that corresponds to the radiance or temperature of the specific ground area it depicts.

satellite signature
The cloud shape, or cloud deck associated with a particular weather phenomena, as observed by satellite. For example, the comma cloud is the characteristic signature for an extratropical cyclone.

satellite situation report
Report published by NASA Goddard Space Flight Center listing all known man-made Earth orbiting objects. The report lists the *catalog number, international designator,* name, country origin, launch date, orbital period, *inclination,* beacon frequency, and status (orbiting or *decayed*).

stationary front
See *front.*

stratus
See *cloud.*

subsidence
Descending air motion.

subtropical latitudes
Region of the Earth between roughly 20°–35° latitude.

sun-synchronous
Describes the orbit of a satellite that provides consistent lighting of the Earth-scan view. The satellite passes the equator and each latitude at the same time each day. For example, a satellite's sun-synchronous orbit might cross the equator twelve times a day, each time at 3:00 p.m. local time. The orbital plane of a sun-synchronous orbit must also precess (rotate) approximately one degree each day, eastward, to keep pace with the Earth's revolution around the sun.

synoptic scale
Scale of atmospheric motion that covers the range of hundreds of kilometers to several thousand kilometers in the horizontal. An example of synoptic scale meteorological phenomena are: extratropical cyclones and high pressure systems. Compare with *mesoscale.*

temperature
A measure of the heat energy in a substance. The more heat energy in the substance, the higher the temperature. The Earth receives only one two-billionth of the energy the sun produces. Much of the energy that hits the Earth is reflected back into space. Most of the energy that isn't reflected is absorbed by the Earth's surface. As the Earth's surface warms, it also warms the air above it.

temperature gradient
Rate of change of temperature. In this text, the gradient is assumed to be horizontal.

thunderstorm
Local storm resulting from warm humid air rising in a continually unstable environment. Air may start moving upward because of unequal surface heating, the lifting of warm air along a frontal zone, or diverging upper-level winds (these diverging winds draw air up beneath them).

The scattered thunderstorms that develop in the summer are called air-mass thunderstorms because they form in warm, maritime tropical air masses away from weather fronts. More violent severe thunderstorms form in areas with a strong vertical wind shear that organizes the updraft into the mature stage, the most intense stage of the thunderstorm. Severe thunderstorms can produce large hail, forceful winds, flash floods, and tornadoes.

trade winds
Persistent winds that blow toward the *ITCZ* at an angle determined by the Coriolis force.

tropical cyclone
Closed circulation's that rotate counter-clockwise in the Northern Hemisphere around low pressure centers and originate over the tropical oceans. This category includes tropical depressions, tropical storms, and hurricanes.

tropopause
Marks the limit of the troposphere and the beginning of the stratosphere.

troposphere
The lowest layer of the atmosphere, extending from the surface of Earth to 10–15 kilometers above.

trough
An area of lower pressure. On weather charts, a trough is the southern most portion of a wave.

trough axis
A line perpendicular to the center, or area of maximum curvature, of a trough.

true anomaly
One of six *Keplerian elements,* it locates a satellite on an orbit. True anomaly is the true angular distance of a satellite (planet) from its *perigee* (perihelion) as seen from the center of the Earth (sun).

velocity
Rate of motion; speed in a particular direction.

vernal equinox
Also known as the first point of Aries, it is the point where the Sun crosses the Earth's equator going from south to north in the spring. This point in space is essentially fixed and represents the reference axis of a coordinate system used extensively in astronomy and astrodynamics.

visible
That part of the electromagnetic spectrum to which the human eye is sensitive, between about 0.4 and 0.7 micrometers.

warm front
See *front*.

warm sector
Region bounded by cold front to west, warm to the north and east, and characterized by fair weather with warm and moist conditions.

wavelength
The physical distance of one wave repeat.

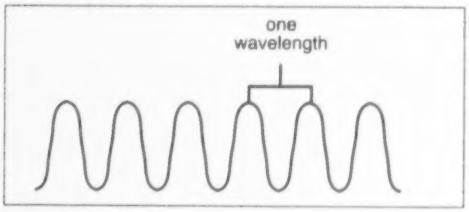

one wavelength

figure 121.

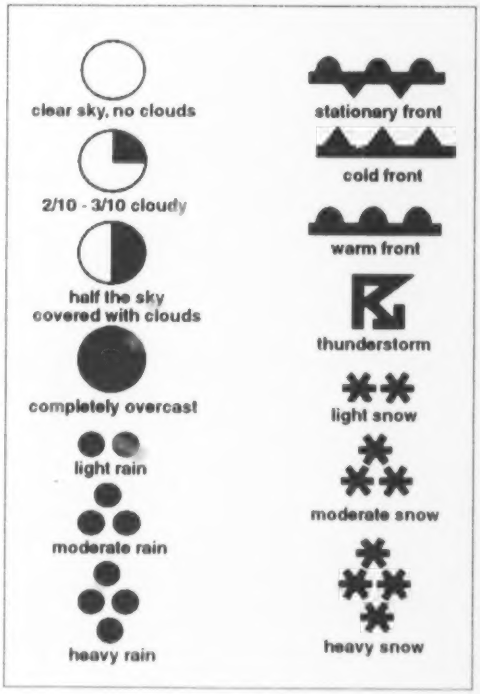

clear sky, no clouds
2/10 - 3/10 cloudy
half the sky covered with clouds
completely overcast
light rain
moderate rain
heavy rain
stationary front
cold front
warm front
thunderstorm
light snow
moderate snow
heavy snow

figure 122. weather symbols

weather symbols
Symbols used in the text are illustrated in the chart.

wind
A motion of the air, especially a noticeable current of air moving in the atmosphere parallel to the Earth's surface. Winds are caused by pressure differences—as modified by such effects as the Coriolis force, the condensation of water vapor, the formation of clouds, the interaction of air masses and frontal systems, friction over land and water, etc. Large scale pressure differences are driven by unequal heating and cooling of the Earth and atmosphere due to absorbed, incoming solar radiation and infrared radiation lost to space.

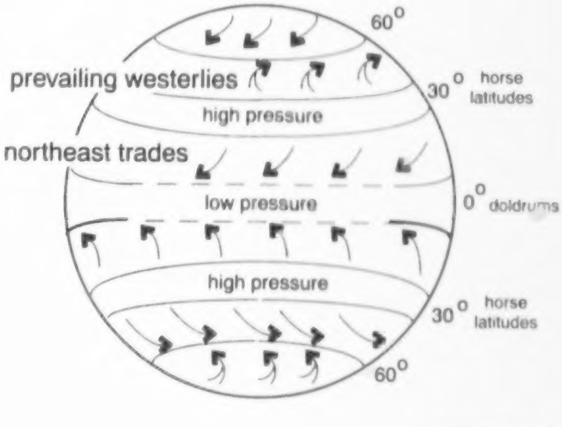

60°
prevailing westerlies
30° horse latitudes
high pressure
northeast trades
low pressure
0° doldrums
high pressure
30° horse latitudes
60°

figure 123.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

TEACHER'S GUIDE BIBLIOGRAPHY

Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment*, Fourth and fifth editions. St. Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Company, 1991.

Allaby, Ailsa and Michael Allaby. *The Concise Oxford Dictionary of Earth Sciences*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1991.

Baker, D. James. Planet Earth, *The View From Space*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1990.

Christianson, Gale E. *In the Presence of the Creator, Issac Newton and His Genius*. New York, New York: The Free Press, a division of Macmillan, Inc., 1984.

Colliers Encyclopedia, vol. 14. New York, New York: P.F. Collier, Inc., 1993.

Elachi, Charles. *Introduction to the Physics and Techniques of Remote Sensing*. New York: Wiley-Interscience Publication, 1987.

Encyclopedia Americana, International Edition, volume 20. Danbury, Connecticut: Grolier, Inc., 1993.

Gurney, R.J., J.L. Foster, and C.L. Parkinson, eds. *Atlas of Satellite Observations Related to Global Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1993.

Haynes, Robert. *Sentinels in the Sky: Weather Satellites*. Washington, DC: National Aeronautics and Space Administration, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. NF-152(s).

Hill, Janice. *Weather From Above*. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1991.

Houghton, J.T., G.J. Jenkins, and J.J. Ephraums, eds. *Climate Change, The IPCC Scientific Assessment*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

Koestler, Arthur. *The Watershed*. Garden City, New York: Anchor Books, Doubleday and Company, Inc., 1960.

Narlikar, Jayant V. *The Lighter Side of Gravity*. San Francisco: W.H. Freeman and Company, 1982.

NASA's Mission To Planet Earth, Earth Observing System. Washington, DC: NASA-PAM-552.

NASA, *Astro-1 Teacher's Guide With Activities: Seeing in a New Light*. #EP274, January 1990.

New Encyclopedia Britannica, vols. 6 and 24, 15th edition. Chicago: Encyclopedia Britannica, Inc., 1994.

1990 OIES Global Change Institute. *Modeling the Earth System*. Ojima, Dennis, ed.

Boulder, Colorado: UCAR/Office for Interdisciplinary Earth Studies, 1992.

Summers, R. Joe. *Educator's Guide For Building and Operating Environmental Satellite Receiving Stations*. Washington, DC: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 1991.

Tannenbaum, Beulah and Myra Stillman. *Issac Newton, Pioneer of Space Mathematics*. New York: Whittlesey House, a division of McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1959.

Webster's New Universal Unabridged Dictionary. Second edition. New York: New World Dictionaries/Simon and Schuster, 1983.

Williams, Jack. *The Weather Book*. 1st edition. "USA TODAY." New York: Vintage Books, April 1992.

MID-LATITUDE WEATHER SYSTEMS BIBLIOGRAPHY

Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment*, fifth edition. St. Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Company, 1991.
[Excellent introductory text (high school senior level)]

Anthes, R.A., J.J. Cahir, A.B. Fraser, and Hans A. Panofsky. *The Atmosphere*, 3rd. edition. Columbus, Ohio: Merril Publishing, 1981.

Bohren, Craig F. *Clouds in a Glass of Beer: Simple Experiments in Atmospheric Physics.* New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1987.
[A good source of classroom experiments as well as good descriptions of atmospheric phenomena]

Kessler, Edwin. *Thunderstorm Morphology and Dynamics*, 2nd. edition. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press, 1986.

Kocin, Paul J. and L.W. Uccellini. *Snowstorms Along the Northeastern Coast of the United States: 1955 to 1985*. Boston: American Meteorological Society, 1990.
[All you need to know about winter storms]

Ludlam, F.H. *Clouds and Storms: The Behavior and Effects of Water in the Atmosphere.* Boston: The Pennsylvania State University Press (through AMS, Boston), 1980.
[Technically demanding but very complete survey of clouds]

Ludlum, D.M. *The Audobon Society Field Guide to North American Weather.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1991.
[Excellent basic resource book with great cloud photographs]

Newton, C. and E.O. Holopainen, eds. *Extratropical Cyclones: The Erik Palmen Memorial Volume*. Boston: American Meteorological Society, 1990.

Ray, Peter S., ed. *Mesoscale Meteorology and Forecasting*. Boston, American Meteorological Society, 1986

Rogers, R.R. *A Short Course in Cloud Physics* (3rd. edition). Oxford, England: Pergamon Press, 1989

Wallace, J.M. and P.V. Hobbs. *Atmospheric Science: An Introductory Survey.* Orlando: Academic Press, 1991.
[Standard introductory college text]

ACTIVITIES BIBLIOGRAPHY

Ahrens, Donald C. *Meteorology Today: An Introduction to Weather, Climate, and the Environment,* 4th ed. St. Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Company, 1991.

Berman, Ann E. *Exploring the Environment Through Satellite Imagery.* Tri-Space, Inc. McLean, Virginia, 1991.

Blue Crab. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. U.S. Government Printing Office, April 1991, #1991-0-501-106.

Chase, Valerie. *The Changing Chesapeake.* Baltimore, Maryland: National Aquarium, 1991.

Chesapeake Bay: Introduction to an Ecosystem. Washington, DC: U.S. EPA, January 1982.

Dvorak, Vernon F. *Tropical Cyclone Intensity Analysis Using Satellite Data, NOAA Technical Report NESDIS 11.* Washington, DC: Satellite Applications Laboratory, September 1984, reprinted October 1985.

Lee and Taggart. Adapted from "A Satellite Photo Interpretation Key." Air Weather Service Technical Report, #196, July 1967, pp. 33–37.

Loebl, Thomas S. *View From Low Orbit.* Hubbardstown, Massachusetts: Imaging Publications.

"Mission to Planet Earth." *Aviation Week & Space Technology.* March 13, 1989.

NASA, *Astro 1-Seeing in a New Light, Teachers Guide with Activities.* # EP274, January 1990.

Reports To The Nation On Our Changing Planet, The Climate System, Volume 1. Boulder Colorado: UCAR Office for Interdisciplinary Earth Studies and the NOAA Office of Global Programs, Winter 1991.

Risnychok, Noel T. *"Hurricane!" A Familiarization Booklet.* National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce, 1990.

Striped Bass. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. U. S. Government Printing Office, September 1992.

Williams, Jack. *The Weather Book.* 1st ed. "USA TODAY." New York: Vintage Original, April 1992.

ACTIVITIES - OTHER RESOURCES

Chesapeake Bay Restoration: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Chesapeake Bay Estuary Program, 180 Admiral Cochrane Drive, Suite 535, Annapolis, MD 21401.

For Spacious Skies. Sky Watcher's Cloud Chart. Lexington, MA: For Spacious Skies, 1988.

Summary of Forecast Rules by Cloud Types. Lexington, MA: For Spacious Skies, 1988.

Mason, David K. DTA *(Dave's.TGA Animation Program)* 1.8f, January 30, 1992, *Animate*. 1992. Copyright ©David K. Mason, 1991, 1992.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Education Affairs Division, 1852 Connecticut Avenue NW, Suite 329, Washington DC 20235.

Skywatchers Cloud Chart
Bushnell Spectacu-Learn Skywatcher's Weather Set
300 North Lone Hill Avenue
San Dimas, CA 91773
(800) 423-3537

INDEX

INDEX

- active instrumentation, 70
- adiabatic, 48-49, 311
  - assumption, 49
  - diagram, 48
  - lapse rates, 48, 49
- Advanced TIROS-N (ATN) 84-86, 91
  - description, 84
  - diagram, 85
  - elements, 86
- Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR), 86, 94
- advection, 46, 311
- advection fog, 46
- air parcel, 44
- albedo, 95, 311
  - diagram, 95
- altimeter, 70
- American Meteorological Society, 134
- American Radio Relay League, 117, 134
- American Weather Observer, 134
- Amsat, 134
- antenna, 119-121
  - diagram, 119
  - omnidirectional, 119
  - quadrifilar helix, 119
  - Yagi, 120
- apogee, 111, 311
  - diagrams, 111, 112
- APT, see *Automatic Picture Transmission*
- argument of perigee, 111
  - diagram, 112
- AskEric, 134, 141
- atmosphere
  - diagram, 19, 22
  - general circulation, 22, 25
- Automatic Picture Transmission (APT), 71, 84, 91, 92, 94, 95, 96, 150, 215, 312
  - background, 215
  - frequencies, 96
- ballistic coefficient, 113
- baroclinic, 23, 312
  - instability, 23, 24
  - stability, 23
- baroclinic theory, 31
- Bergen School, 24
- binary, 62, 208
- Bird Dog, 116
- bit, 203, 208, 312
- Bjerknes, Jacob, 24
- Bjerknes, Vilhelm, 24
- Blue Crab (Callinectes Sapidus), 296-298
- BoarderTech Bulletin Board, 115-116, 125
- Brahe, Tycho, 109
- buoyancy, 47, 49
  - diagram, 47
- byte, 203, 208, 312
- Ce (see, *centrifugal force*)
- Celestial RCP/M, 115, 125
- cells, 20
  - Ferrel, 20, 22
  - Hadley, 20, 22
- centrifugal force (Ce), 27-30, 313
  - diagram, 29
- Charney, Jules, 25
- Chesapeake Bay, 296, 298-303
  - activity, 288
  - images, 304-308
  - maps, 293-295
- cirroform, 51
- Clarke Belt, 313
- Clausius-Clapeyron equation, 44
  - diagram, 44
- cloud, 49-50, 54, 313
  - abbreviations,
  - activities, 171, 183, 190
  - background, 192
  - classification, 198
    - activity, 193, 242
  - formation, 44, 49
  - formation diagram, 46-47
  - types, 54
    - altocumulus, 54, 192
    - altostratus, 192
    - cirrocumulus, 54
    - cirrus, 39, 51, 192, 200
    - comma, 22, 54
      - diagram, 13
    - cumulonimbus, 18, 54, 192, 201
    - cumulus, 54, 192, 199, 201
    - stratiform, 26
    - stratocumulus, 54
    - stratus, 54, 192, 200
- cloud condensation nuclei (CNN), 47
- cloud deck, 39, 48
- cloud features, 44, 246-248
- cloud formation, 44
  - diagram, 46-47
- cloud shield, 55, 314

coastal storms 57
coaxial cable, 121-122
    diagram, 122
comma cloud, 15, 22, 25, 27, 29, 44, 54, 314
    diagram, 13
    image, 15, 40, 41
Communications Subsystem, 82
compressed file, 62
condensation, 44-46, 48
contrails, 46
convection, 35, 47, 314
    clouds, 59
convergence, 47-48, 314
Coriolis Effect, 21, 27-29, 314
    diagram, 21
cyclone, 13, 14, 31, 34, 37
    associated clouds, 51
    diagram, 36, 37
    extratropical, 9, 12-14, 16, 24, 27, 29, 31, 36-38
    image, 23, 42, 43
    tropical, 13
cyclone cloud shield, 55
cyclonic circulation, 35
cyclonic disturbance, 22, 29, 32, 55
Data Collection System (DCS), 78
Datalink Remote Bulletin Board System, 115, 125
Defense Meteorological Satellite Program (DMSP), 73
dew point, 45-47, 315
dew point temperature, 45
    diagram, 45
differential heating,17, 19, 284
    diagram, 17
direct readout, 2, 92-94, 150
    channels, diagram, 94
    equipment vendors, 136
    uses of, 5, 93
Direct Sounder Broadcast (DBS), 84
divergence, 36
    diagram, 36
downconverter, 121
drag, 315
Earth Observing System (EOS), 3
Earth Probes, 4
Earth rotation, 20
Earth station, 117
eccentricity, 111, 315
    diagram, 315
ecosystem, 315
eddy, 25, 315
Educational Center for Earth Observation Systems, 135
Educational Resources Information Center (see, *AskERIC*)
electromagnetic radiation, 69, 70
electromagnetic spectrum, 69, 95, 235, 316
    diagram, 69
electromagnetic waves, 69, 71, 95
electronic bulletin boards, 115
Eliassen, Arnt, 25
emissivity, 69
energy imbalance, 17
environmental lapse rate, 192
environmental satellites, 2, 92
  (also see, *Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellites, TIROS-N*)
    diagram, 9
    frequencies, 96
    of other nations, 99
    types, 9, 72
ephemeris data, 112-113, 116
    diagram, 113
equatorial plane, 72
exosphere, 19
    diagram, 19
feedhorn, 119, 121
Ferrel cell, 19, 20, 22
    diagram, 19, 20
Ferrel, William, 20
file transfer protocol (ftp), 61, 141, 143
First Law of Thermodynamics, 48
fog, 46, 54, 199
forecast, 26, 97, 98
    activity, 161, 274
    impacts of, 98
    satellite-delivered weather, diagram, 97
Franklin, Ben, 67
freezing rain, 57
frequency, 69
friction, 27, 29, 31
    diagram, 31
frontal zone, 30, 31
fronts, 14, 24-26, 42, 316
    activities, 223, 265
    boundaries, 14, 43
    cold, 14, 24, 26, 37, 38
    diagram, 27
    polar, 20
    stationary, 25, 33, 37
    warm, 14, 24, 26, 37

Galilei, Galileo, 67, 107
gamma-ray waves, 235
general circulation (see, atmosphere)
geostationary, 9, 119, 317
  (also, see environmental satellites, types)
    coverage, diagram, 83
    paths, 150
Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellites (GOES), 9, 74-82, 91, 96, 121, 258, 317
    background, 258
    comparison with polar-orbiting satellite, 91
    coverage, 83
    frequencies, 96
    GOES 7, 74-78
      GOES diagram, 75
      GOES elements, 76-78
      GOES image, 10, 12, 286, 287
    GOES I-M satellite, 79-82
      GOES I-M diagram, 79
      GOES I-M elements, 79-82
GMS, 74
Globe Program, The 126
geostrophic wind assumption, 27-28, 318
    diagram, 28
glossary, 311-326
gopher, 143
gradient wind, 30
    diagram, 30
gravitational constant (G), 107
Greenwich Mean Time, 63
ground station, 117, 119, 150
    components, 119
    configuraton, diagram, 119
Hadley cell, 19-20, 22, 318
    diagram, 19, 20
Hadley, George, 20
heat energy, 17, 19, 20
heat island, 215
hertz (HZ), 71, 96
Hertz, Heinrich, 71
heterogeneous field of view, 50-51
High Resolution Picture Transmission (HRPT), 84, 94, 96
horizontal divergence, 29
    diagram, 30
horse latitudes, 20, 318
hurricane, 13, 59, 259
    activity, 257
    analysis chart, 264
    background, 259
    image, 60
hygroscopic, 47
hypertext, 144
imager, 70, 258
inclination angle, 111
infrared imagery, 49, 50, 95, 192
    activity, 190, 233
infrared waves, 235
INSAT, 99
interference, 122
International Weather Watchers, 135
Internet, 12, 31, 61, 134-135, 140-145
Internet Society, 135, 141
Inter-Tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ), 17-21, 35, 284
    activity, 280
    background, 284
isobars, 14, 27, 29, 319
ITCZ, see *Intertropical Convergence Zone*
jet, 33
jet core, 34
jet streak, 34-37, 43, 63
    diagram, 35
jet stream, 22, 33-37, 55, 63
    diagram, 33, 35
Kepler, Johannes, 109
Kepler's Three Laws of Motion, 109-110
Keplerian Elements, 111-112, 115, 125, 319
latent heat of condensation, 49
latitudinal temperature gradient, 33
lifting, 46
line of apsides, 111
login, 61
Loop, 63, 320
    activity, 255
low pressure, 27, 37
MAPS-NET, 2
mass mixing ratio, 44
McMurdo, Antarctica, 72
meridional flow, 20, 320
mesoscale, 14, 57, 320
Mesoscale Convective Complex (MCC), 57
    diagram, 58
Mesoscale Convective Systems (MCS), 57
mesosphere, 19
    diagram, 19
meteorological satellites (see, environmental satellites)

- METEOR, 99, 112
- meteorograph, 31
- METEOSAT, 74, 121
- METSAT (see, U.S. Operational Meteorological Satellite Program)
- mget, 62
- microwaves, 235
- mid-latitude cyclone (see, extratropical)
- millibars, 44, 321
- Mission to Planet Earth (MTPE), 3
- mixing cloud, 46
- model, 3, 16
- momentum, 108
  - change of, 108, 321
- National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), 73, 92
  - NASA Education Satellite Videoconference Series, 128
  - NASA Goddard Space Flight Center (GSFC), 73
  - NASA Prediction Bulletin, 321
  - NASA Spacelink, 116, 125, 128
  - NASA Teacher Resources, 129-131
    - Central Operation of Resources for Educators (CORE), 129
    - Regional Teacher Resource Centers (RTRCs), 129-132
  - NASA Television, 129
- National Air and Space Museum, 126
- National Center for Atmospheric Research (NCAR), 126
- National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service (NESDIS), 73, 97
- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), 73, 92, 112, 132-133, 321
- National Weather Service (NWS), 97
  - River Forecast Centers, 139
  - Weather Forecast Office Locations, 137-139
- Newton, Sir Isaac, 107
- Newton's Laws, 28, 107-108
  - of Motion, 108
  - of Universal Gravitation, 107
- noise, 59, 188
- northeaster, 55
- northern mid-latitudes, 9
- occlusion, 25, 321
  - occlusion stage, 25
- orbit, 105, 110
  - diagram, 110, 111, 112
  - paths, 150
- orbital data, 112-116
- orbital elements, 113
- Orbital Information Groups (OIG), 114
- orbital mechanics, 105
- ozone, 18
- parabolic reflector, 121
- partial pressure, 44
- passive instrumentation, 70
- perigee, 111, 322
- PGF, see pressure gradient force
- photons, 235, 236
- pixel, 92, 192, 203, 267
- polar front theory, 24-31
  - diagram, 24
- polar jet stream, 31, 34
- polar-orbiting satellite, 9, 16, 72, 91, 92, 94, 96, 119
  - comparison with GOES satellite, 91
  - coverage, diagram, 90
  - frequencies, 96
  - image, 11,12
  - other nations, 99
  - paths, 150
- polarization, 69
- precipitation, 322
- prevailing westerlies, 20, 21
  - diagram, 31
- pressure, 29
  - high, 29
  - low, 29
  - trough, 25
- pressure gradient force (PGF), 27, 29, 322
- radio frequency (RF), 122
- radio frequency, 71
  - diagram, 71
  - signals, 71
  - spectrum, 71
- radio meteorograph, 25
- radio waves, 235
- radiometer, 70
- radiosonde, 25, 31, 323
- Red Cross, 123
- relative humidity, 46
- remote sensing, 2, 26, 65, 67, 323
- resolution, 12, 92, 323
- ridge, 13, 28- 29, 37, 323
- ridge axis, 13, 323
- right ascention of the ascending node, 111, 323

- satellite, 9
- satellite image (also see *GOES image, polar-orbiting image*), 150, 324
  - simulating, 203-204
- satellite signature, 13, 324
- satellite tracking programs, 116
- saturation, 44
- saturation pressure (es), 44-46
- scatterometer, 70
- Science Content Standards, 1
- sea surface temperature (SST), 47
- Sea-Viewing Wide Field Sensor (SeaWiFS), 4
- semi-major axis, 111
- sensors, 70
- short wave trough, 32-34, 37
  - diagram, 32
- sleet, 57
- small scale disturbances, 32
- snowfall, 57
- solar radiation, 18, 95
- sounder, 70, 258
- Space Environment Monitor (SEM), 258
  - GOES-7, 78
  - GOES I-M, 82
- Spacelink (see, *NASA Spacelink*)
- stationary polar front (see, *fronts*)
- stratosphere, 18, 19, 33, 285
  - diagram, 19
- storm surge, 259
- storm tide, 259
- stetching pixels, 192, 198
- Striped Bass (Morone Saxatlis), 300-302
  - Emergency Striped Bass Act, 301
- subgeostrophic, 29
- subtropical jet, 34
- super high frequency (SHF), 71
- supergeostrophic, 29
- surface cyclone, 35
- surface low pressure, 32- 35
  - diagram, 32
- synoptic scale, 14
- temperature, 45-46
- temperature gradient, 22, 37, 43, 55, 325
- thermal emissions, 95
- thunderstorm 26, 39, 51, 54, 57, 325
  - activity, 242
  - reference sheet, 245
- TIROS-N, 68, 84, 85-89
  - TIROS-N elements, 85-89
- TOPEX/POSEIDON, 3
- topographic lifting, 47
- tornado, 14, 57
- Total Ozone Mapping Spectrometer (TOMS), 4
- trade winds, 21, 325
- tropical latitudes, 17
- Tropical Rainfall Measuring Mission (TRMM), 4
- tropopause, 33, 35-37, 325
- troposphere, 18, 19, 33, 35-37, 50, 325
  - diagram, 19
- trough 13, 28-29, 31-32, 37, 325
  - diagram, 32
- trough axis, 13, 325
- true anomaly, 111, 325
- Two-line Orbital Elements (TLE's), 114
- ultra high frequency (UHF), 71
- ultraviolet rays, 235
- University Corporation for Atmospheric Research (UCAR), 127
- University of Maryland, Department of Meteorology, 2, 7
- UNIX, 61
- upper air charts, 63
- upper air soundings, 30
- Upper Atmosphere Resarch Satellite (UARS), 3, 72
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, 126
- U.S. Department of Energy, 126
- U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 127
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 298-299, 302-303
- U.S. Geological Survey, 127
- U.S. Government Printing Office, 127
- U.S. Operational Meteorological Satellites (METSAT) Program, 73
- Vg (see, geostrophic wind)
- vapor pressure, 45-46
- vendors, direct readout equipment, 136
- velocity, 29, 325
- very high frequency (VHF), 71
- Visible-infrared Spin Scan Radiometer (VISSR) Atmospheric Sounder (VAS), 78
- visible images, 50, 95
- visible light waves, 235
- WWW (see, World Wide Webb)
- warm sector, 14, 326
- water vapor, 44-48
- water vapor pressure, 45
- wave, 13, 17, 24
  - motion, 13, 17
  - pattern, 37

  structure, 13
  theory, 25
  train, 33
wavelengths, 69, 326
Weather Channel, The, 135
Weather Facsimile (WEFAX), 71, 74, 78, 150, 258
Weather Forecast Office (see *National Weather Service*)
weather satellites (see, *environmental satellites*)
weather symbols, 24, 326
  activity, 151
  chart, 153, 156
WEFAX, see *Weather Facsimile*
winds
  easterly, 22
  trade winds, 21
  westerly, 22, 31
World Wide Webb, 144
Wright, Wilbur, 67
X-rays, 235

★ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1995 – 387 - 250 / 37853

WEATHER SYSTEMS AND SATELLITE IMAGERY

ENVIRONMENTAL SATELLITES

ORBITS

GROUND STATION SET-UP

RESOURCES

ACTIVITIES

GLOSSARY

BIBLIOGRAPHY

INDEX

MTPE

MISSION TO PLANET EARTH